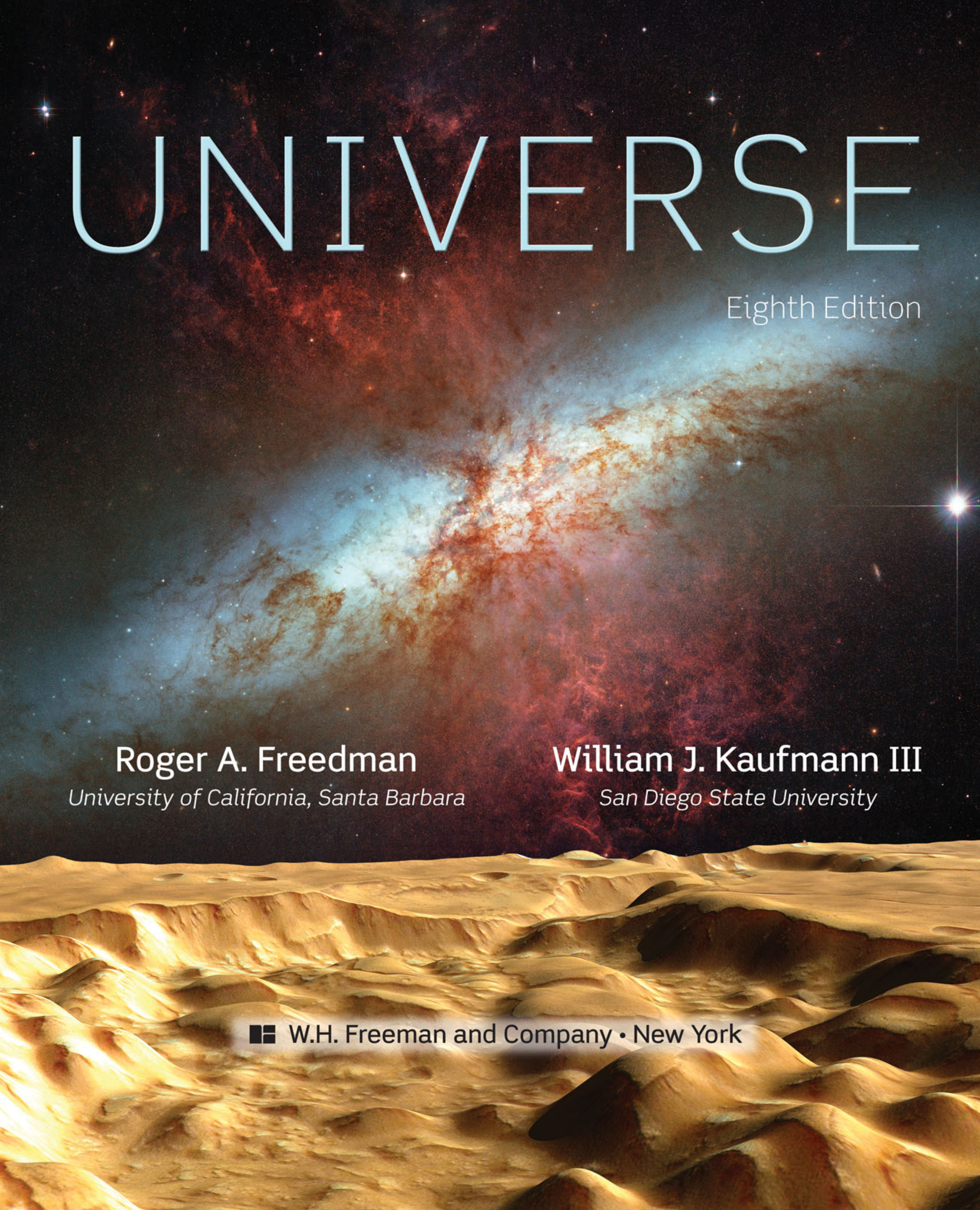

Roger A. Freedman
William J. Kaufmann III
Eighth Edition
UNIVERSE

This page intentionally left blank


UNIVERSE
Eighth Edition

This page intentionally left blank



UNIVERSE

Eighth Edition

Roger A. Freedman
University of California, Santa Barbara

William J. Kaufmann III
San Diego State University

W.H. Freeman and Company • New York

Publisher: Clancy Marshall
Acquisitions Editor: Valerie Raymond
Development Editor: David Chelton
Project Editor: Kerry O'Shaughnessy/Matrix Publishing Services
Media and Supplements Editor: Amy Thorne
Marketing Manager: Anthony Palmiotto
Design Manager: Diana Blume
Production Coordinator: Paul W. Rohloff
Senior Illustration Coordinator: Bill Page
Illustrations: Imagineering Media Services
Photo Editor: Bianca Moscatelli
Photo Researcher: Elyse Rieder
Editorial Assistant: Whitney Clench
Composition: Matrix Publishing Services
Printing and Binding: RR Donnelley

Guest Essay Photo Credits

p. 20, Don Fukuda/National Optical Astronomy Observatories; p. 44, courtesy of James Randi; p. 63, courtesy of Mark Hollabaugh; p. 208, courtesy of Geoff Marcy; p. 299, courtesy of John Grotzinger; p. 401, courtesy of Scott S. Sheppard; p. 718, courtesy of Robert Kirshner; p. 745, courtesy of John Ruhl; p. 763, courtesy of Lisa Plaxco.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2007924136
ISBN-13: 978-0-7167-8584-2
ISBN-10: 0-7167-8584-6

Printed in the United States of America

First printing, 2007

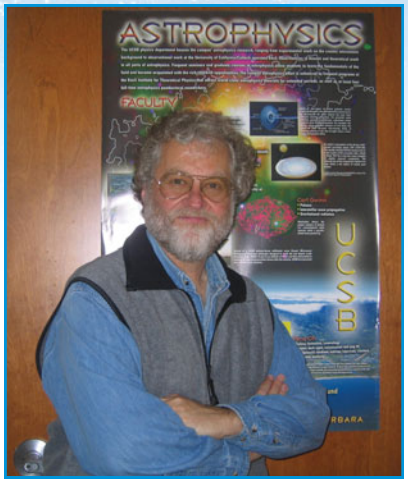
W. H. Freeman and Company
41 Madison Avenue
New York, NY 10010

www.whfreeman.com

To Lee Johnson Kaufmann and
Caroline Robillard-Freedman,
strong survivors

and to the memory of
S/Sgt. Ann Kazmierczak Freedman, WAC

About the Authors



Roger A. Freedman is on the faculty of the Department of Physics at the University of California, Santa Barbara. He grew up in San Diego, California and was an undergraduate at the University of California campuses in San Diego and Los Angeles. He did his doctoral research in nuclear theory and its astrophysical applications at Stanford University under the direction of Professor J. Dirk Walecka. Dr. Freedman came to UCSB in 1981 after three years of teaching and doing research at the University of Washington.

Dr. Freedman holds a commercial pilot's license, and when not teaching or writing he can frequently be found flying with his wife, Caroline. He has flown across the United States and Canada.

William J. Kaufmann III was the author of the first four editions of *Universe*. Born in New York City on December 27, 1942, he often visited the magnificent Hayden Planetarium as he was growing up. Dr. Kaufmann earned his bachelor's degree *magna cum laude* in physics from Adelphi University in 1963, a master's degree in physics from Rutgers in 1965, and a Ph.D. in astrophysics from Indiana University in 1968. At 27 he became the youngest director of any major planetarium in the United States when he took the helm of the Griffith Observatory in Los Angeles. During his career he also held positions at San Diego State University, UCLA, Caltech, and the University of Illinois. Throughout his professional life as a scientist and educator, Dr. Kaufmann worked to bridge the gap between the scientific community and the general public to help the public share in the advances of astronomy. A prolific author, his many books include *Black Holes and Warped Spacetime, Relativity and Cosmology, The Cosmic Frontiers of General Relativity, Exploration of the Solar System, Planets and Moons, Stars and Nebulas, Galaxies and Quasars,* and *Supercomputing and the Transformation of Science*. Dr. Kaufmann died in 1994.

Contents Overview

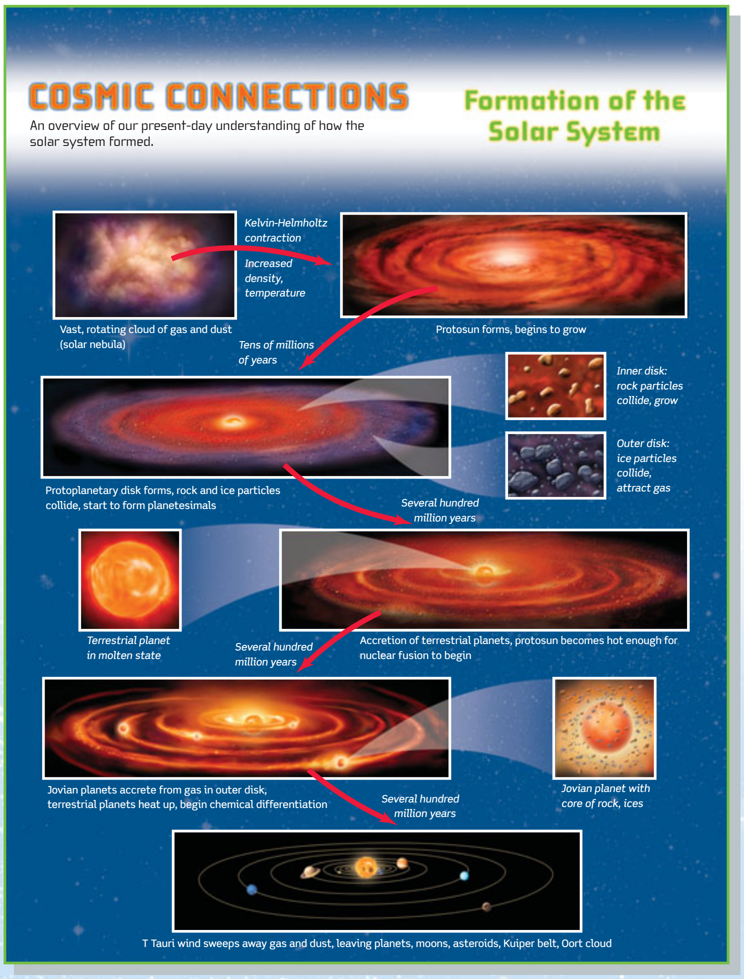
Contents

This page intentionally left blank

Preface

Astronomy is one of the most dynamic and exciting areas of modern science. Recent discoveries have shown us previously unseen worlds in the frigid outer depths of our solar system, given us insight into the dramatic ways in which the most massive stars can collapse into black holes, and allowed us to see the universe as it was more than thirteen billion years ago. But studying astronomy is much more than just learning a collection of amazing facts: It is also discovering the nature of the scientific way of knowing and understanding how scientists work and think.

Bill Kaufmann wrote the first four editions of *Universe* with the goal of giving students real insight into the nature of science. Since taking over stewardship of *Universe* in 1996, I've continued Bill's program and added an additional goal of helping students develop problem-solving skills. With these goals in mind, I've introduced some new features to this Eighth Edition while strengthening well-received features from earlier editions.



New features of the Eighth Edition help students focus on key topics

Students need to find specific topics when studying for exams or doing homework. They also benefit from reminders of what the key topics are within a section of the book. New features of the Eighth Edition that identify the key topics are designed to help students with both of these.

New COSMIC CONNECTIONS figures summarize key ideas visually

Many students learn more through visual presentations than from reading long passages of text. To help these students I've added large figures, called ***Cosmic Connections,*** to most chapters in the Eighth Edition. These give an overview or summation of a particular important topic in a chapter. Subjects range from the variety of modern telescopes to the formation of the solar system; from the scale of distances in the Universe to the life cycles of stars; and from the influence of gravitational tidal forces to the evolution of the Universe after the Big Bang. The *Cosmic Connections* figures also convey some of the excitement and adventure that lead students to study astronomy in the first place.

7-5 Small chunks of rock and ice also orbit the Sun

In addition to the eight planets, many smaller objects orbit the Sun. These fall into three broad categories: asteroids, which are rocky objects found in the inner solar system; trans-Neptunian objects, which are found beyond Neptune in the outer solar system and contain both rock and ice; and comets, which are mixtures of rock and ice that originate in the outer solar system but can venture close to the Sun.

The smaller bodies of the solar system contain important clues about its origin and evolution

New "Motivation Statements" connect detailed discussion to the broader picture

As students read a science text, they often wonder "What is the key idea? How does it relate to the discussion on previous pages? What motivated scientists to make these observations and deductions?" To address these questions, I've added to each section a free-standing **Motivation Statement—**a brief sentence that shows students how that section's material fits in with the larger picture of astronomy presented in the chapter. Some statements deal with the scientific method. Others compare topics in one section with those in another section or chapter; still other statements give a quick summary of a section's conclusion.

Streamlined coverage of planets focuses the student on comparative planetology and highlights the interplay of planetary surfaces and atmospheres

Two chapters on comparative planetology were introduced in the Seventh Edition: Chapter 7, *Our Solar System*, and Chapter 8, *The Origin of the Solar System*. I've revised and updated these chapters with the latest information, including the new official distinctions between planets and dwarf planets. In addition, I've combined the chapters on Mercury, Venus, and Mars into a single Chapter 11 on the terrestrial planets to emphasize their similarities to Earth and to each other, and I've added comparative planetology figures to several other chapters. As in previous editions, each planet's surface and atmosphere are discussed in tandem, where other texts address them separately. This underscores their interrelationships and builds a deeper understanding of the planets' overall characteristics.

Fifty years ago, astronomers knew precious little about the worlds that orbit the Sun. Even the best telescopes provided images of the planets that were frustratingly hazy and indistinct. Of asteroids, comets, and the satellites of the planets, we knew even less.

Today, our knowledge of the solar system has grown exponentially, due almost entirely to robotic spacecraft. (The illustration shows an artist's impression of one such robotic explorer, the *Mars Reconnaissance Orbiter* spacecraft, as it approached Mars in 2006.) Spacecraft have been sent to fly past all the planets at close range, revealing details unimagined by astronomers of an earlier generation. We have landed spacecraft on the Moon, Venus, and Mars and dropped a probe into the immense atmosphere of Jupiter. This is truly the golden age of solar system exploration.

In this chapter we paint in broad outline our present understanding of the solar system. We will see that the planets come in a variety of sizes and chemical compositions. There is also rich variety among the moons of the planets and among smaller bodies we call asteroids, comets, and trans-Neptunian objects. We will investigate the nature of craters on the Moon and other worlds of the solar system. And by exploring the magnetic fields

Learning Goals

By reading the sections of this chapter, you will learn

7-1 The important differences between the two broad categories of planets: terrestrial and Jovian

7-2 The similarities and differences among the large planetary satellites, including Earth's Moon

7-3 How the spectrum of sunlight reflected from a planet reveals the composition of its atmosphere and surface

7-4 Why some planets have atmospheres and others do not

(Mercury: NASA; Venus: NASA/JPL, MIT, and USGS; Mars: NASA, J. Bell/Cornell University, and M. Wolff/SSI)

These images show the three planets that share the inner solar system with our Earth. All three have solid surfaces, and, in principle, a properly protected astronaut could stand on any of them. The differences between these three worlds, however, are pronounced.

Mercury is small, airless, and extensively cratered. It is also mysterious: Half of its surface has never been viewed at close range, and it has a perplexing and unexpected magnetic field. It also rotates in a manner unique in the solar system, spinning three times on its axis for every two orbits around the Sun.

Venus is nearly the same size as Earth, but it is shrouded by a perpetual cloud cover that hides its surface from view. To penetrate the clouds and learn what lies beneath, two advanced technologies were needed: radar, which allowed astronomers to "see" through the clouds, and unmanned spacecraft, which orbited Venus at close range and even landed on its surface. The false-color topographic map shown here reveals that Venus has no true continents but merely highlands (shown in red) that rise gently above the planet's lower-lying areas (shown in blue). We have also learned that Venus's atmosphere is thick and searing hot, and that its clouds contain droplets of corrosive sulfuric acid.

Mars has captivated the popular imagination like no other planet. But rather than being the abode of warlike aliens, Mars proves to be an enigmatic world. Some parts of its surface are drier than any desert on Earth, while other locations show evidence of having been underwater for extended periods. Our challenge is to understand how these three nominally Earthlike worlds evolved to be so unique and so different than our own Earth.

Learning Goals

By reading the sections of this chapter, you will learn

11-1 What astronomers have learned by observing the terrestrial planets from Earth

11-2 The radically different ways in which Mercury, Venus, and Mars rotate on their axes

11-3 The outstanding features of Mercury, and why its magnetic field came as a surprise

11-4 How the advent of the space age transformed our understanding of Venus and Mars

11-5 How geologic activity took a very different form on Venus than on Earth, and why it essentially stopped on Mars

11-6 The key differences among the atmospheres of Earth, Venus, and Mars

11-7 How the atmospheres of Earth, Venus, and Mars evolved to their present states

11-8 The evidence that there was once liquid water on Mars

11-9 What we know about the two small satellites of Mars

255

An expanded program of explanatory art

Many new figures in the Eighth Edition continue the practice of adding balloon captions to help students interpret complex figures. Many photos also contain brief labels to point out the most important relevant features.

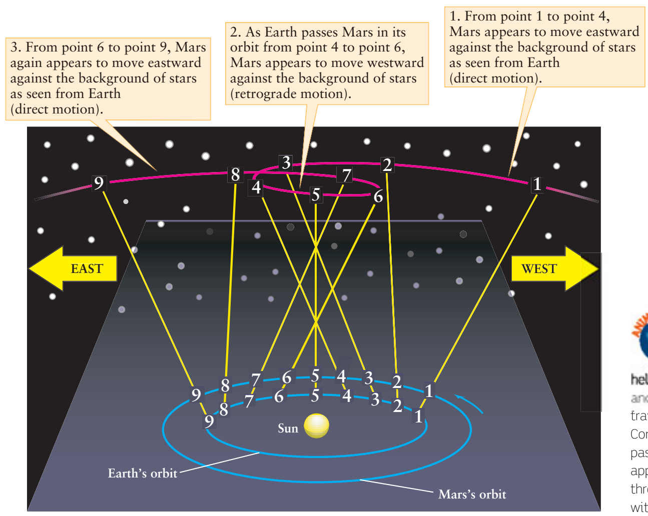


Figure 4-5

A Heliocentric Explanation of Retrograde Motion In the heliocentric model of Aristarchus, the Earth and the other planets orbit the Sun. The Earth travels around the Sun more rapidly than Mars. Consequently, as the Earth overtakes and passes this slower-moving planet, Mars appears for a few months (from points 4 through 6) to fall behind and move backward with respect to the background of stars.

Up-to-date information shows the cutting edge of astronomy

I've brought *Universe* up to date with the latest astronomical discoveries, ideas, and images. These include:

- New material on using transits to study extrasolar planets (Chapter 8)

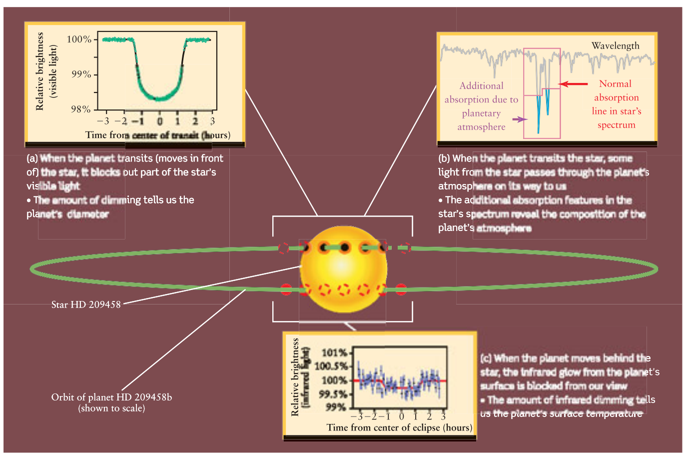


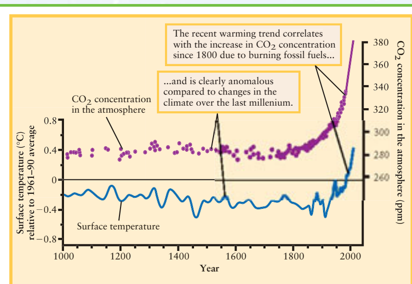
Figure 8-18

A Transiting Extrasolar Planet If the orbit of an extrasolar planet is nearly edge-on to our line of sight, like the planet that orbits the star HD 209458, we can learn about the planet's **(a)** diameter, **(b)** atmospheric composition, and **(c)** surface temperature. (S. Seager and C. Reed, *Sky and Telescope*; H. Knutson, D. Charbonneau, R. W. Noyes (Harvard-Smithsonian CfA), T. M. Brown (HAO/NCAR), and R. L. Gilliland (STScI); A. Feild (STScI); NASA/JPL-Caltech/D. Charbonneau, Harvard-Smithsonian CfA)

- Updated discussion of global climate change, including historical data on global temperatures and CO_2 concentrations (Chapter 9)
- New information on the history of Martian water from the *Mars Exploration Rovers* (Chapter 11)
- *Cassini* observations of the moons of Saturn (Chapter 13)
- New discoveries about trans-Neptunian objects (Chapter 15)
- Updated information about hypernovae and the origin of gamma-ray bursts (Chapter 20)
- Chandra X-Ray Observatory images revealing the presence of supermassive black holes in galaxies (Chapter 24)
- Observations of the infrared background due to the first stars (Chapter 27)

Figure 9-30

Atmospheric CO_2 and Changes in Global Temperature This figure shows how the carbon dioxide concentration in our atmosphere (upper curve) and the Earth's average surface temperature (lower curve) have changed since 1000 A.D. The increase in CO_2 since 1800 due to burning fossil fuels has strengthened the greenhouse effect and caused a dramatic temperature increase. (Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change and Hadley Centre for Climate Prediction and Research, U.K. Meteorological Office)



45. Use the *Starry Night Enthusiast*™ program to examine the Jovian planets Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune. Select each of these planets from the **Solar System** submenu in the **Favourites** menu. If you desire, you can remove the image of the astronaut's feet by selecting **Feet** in the **View** menu. Position the mouse cursor over the planet and click and drag the image to examine the planet from different views. Describe each planet's appearance. Which has the greatest color contrast in its cloud tops? Which has the least color contrast? What can you say about the thickness of Saturn's rings compared to their diameter?

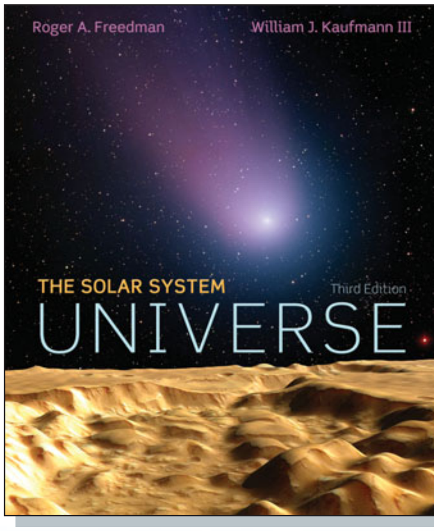
A revised selection of Observing Projects

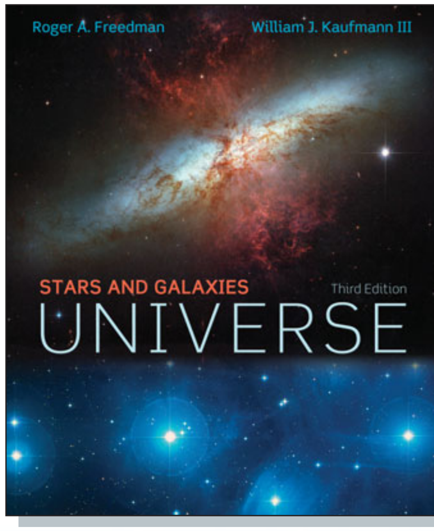
The CD-ROM that comes free (upon request) with this text contains the *Starry Night Enthusiast*™ planetarium software from Imaginova Inc. Every chapter of the Eighth Edition of *Universe* includes one or more Observing Projects that use this software package; many of these projects are new or revised. As in the Seventh Edition, many projects are accompanied by an *Observing Tips and Tools* box to provide help and guidance.

Additional features have been retained from previous editions

Three versions of the text meet the needs of different instructors

In addition to the complete 28-chapter version of *Universe,* two shorter versions are also available. *Universe: The Solar System,* Third Edition, includes Chapters 1-16 and 28; it omits the chapters on stars, stellar evolution, galaxies, and cosmology. *Universe: Stars and Galaxies,* Third Edition, includes Chapters 1-8 and 16-28; it omits the detailed chapters on the solar system but includes the overview of the solar system in Chapters 7 and 8.





CAUTION! The Jovian planets are sometimes called "gas giants." It is true that their primary constituents, including hydrogen, helium, ammonia, and methane, are gases under normal conditions on Earth. But in the interiors of these planets, pressures are so high that these substances are *liquids,* not gases. The Jovian planets might be better described as "liquid giants"!

Cautions—Confronting misconceptions

Many people think that the Earth is closer to the Sun in summer than in winter and that the phases of the Moon are caused by Earth's shadow falling on the Moon. However, these "common sense" ideas are incorrect (as explained in Chapters 2 and 3). Throughout *Universe,* paragraphs marked by the **Caution** icon alert the reader to conceptual pitfalls such as these.

ANALOGY To appreciate just how tiny the nucleus is, imagine expanding an atom by a factor of 10^{12} to a diameter of 100 meters, about the length of a football field. To this scale, the nucleus would be just a centimeter across—no larger than your thumbnail.

Analogies—Bringing astronomy down to Earth

When learning new astronomical ideas, it can be helpful to relate them to more familiar experiences on Earth. Throughout *Universe,* **Analogy** paragraphs make these connections. For example, the motions of the planets can be related to children on a merry-go-round, and the bending of light through a telescope lens is similar to the path of a car driving from firm ground onto sand.

Tools of the Astronomer's Trade and S.T.A.R.—A problem-solving rubric

All the worked examples in *Universe* (found in boxes called **Tools of the Astronomer's Trade**) follow a logical and consistent sequence of steps called S.T.A.R.: assess the Situation, select the Tools, find the Answer, and Review the answer and explore its significance. Feedback from instructors shows that when students follow these steps in their own work, they more rapidly become skillful problem solvers.

BOX 5-6 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Applications of the Doppler Effect

Doppler's formula relates the radial velocity of an astronomical object to the wavelength shift of its spectral lines. Here are two examples that show how to use this remarkably powerful formula.

EXAMPLE: As measured in the laboratory, the prominent H_α spectral line of hydrogen has a wavelength $\lambda_0 = 656.285$ nm. But in the spectrum of the star Vega (Figure 5-21), this line has a wavelength $\lambda = 656.255$ nm. What can we conclude about the motion of Vega?

Situation: Our goal is to use the ideas of the Doppler effect to find the velocity of Vega toward or away from Earth.

Tools: We use the Doppler shift formula, $\lambda/\lambda_0 = v/c$, to determine Vega's velocity v.

Answer: The wavelength shift is

$$\Delta\lambda = \lambda - \lambda_0 = 656.255 \text{ nm} - 656.285 \text{ nm} = -0.030 \text{ nm}$$

The negative value means that we see the light from Vega shifted to shorter wavelengths—that is, there is a blueshift. (Note that the shift is very tiny and can be measured only using specialized equipment.) From the Doppler shift formula, the star's radial velocity is

$$v = c\frac{\Delta\lambda}{\lambda_0} = (3.00 \times 10^5 \text{ km/s})\left(\frac{-0.030 \text{ nm}}{656.285 \text{ nm}}\right) = -14 \text{ km/s}$$

Review: The minus sign indicates that Vega is coming toward us at 14 km/s. The star may also be moving perpendicular to the line from Earth to Vega, but such motion produces no Doppler shift.

By plotting the motions of stars such as Vega toward and away from us, astronomers have been able to learn how the Milky Way Galaxy (of which our Sun is a part) is rotating. From this knowledge, and aided by Newton's universal law of gravitation (see Section 4-7), they have made the surprising discovery that the Milky Way contains roughly 10 times more matter than had once been thought! The nature of this unseen *dark matter* is still a subject of debate.

EXAMPLE: In the radio region of the electromagnetic spectrum, hydrogen atoms emit and absorb photons with a wavelength of 21.12 cm, giving rise to a spectral feature commonly called the *21-centimeter line*. The galaxy NGC 3840 in the constellation Leo (the Lion) is receding from us at a speed of 7370 km/s, or about 2.5% of the speed of light. At what wavelength do we expect to detect the 21-cm line from this galaxy?

Situation: Given the velocity of NGC 3840 away from us, our goal is to find the wavelength as measured on Earth of the 21-centimeter line from this galaxy.

Tools: We use the Doppler shift formula to calculate the wavelength shift $\Delta\lambda$, then use this to find the wavelength λ measured on Earth.

Answer: The wavelength shift is

$$\Delta\lambda = \lambda_0\left(\frac{v}{c}\right) = (21.12 \text{ cm})\left(\frac{7370 \text{ km/s}}{3.00 \times 10^5 \text{ km/s}}\right) = 0.52 \text{ cm}$$

Therefore, we will detect the 21-cm line of hydrogen from this galaxy at a wavelength of

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \Delta\lambda = 21.12 \text{ cm} + 0.52 \text{ cm} = 21.64 \text{ cm}$$

Review: The 21-cm line has been redshifted to a longer wavelength because the galaxy is receding from us. In fact, most galaxies are receding from us. This observation is one of the key pieces of evidence that the universe is expanding, and has been doing so since the Big Bang that took place almost 14 billion years ago.

The Heavens on the Earth—Revealing the universal applicability of the laws of nature

The **Heavens on the Earth** boxes illustrate how the same principles astronomers use to explain celestial phenomena can also explain everyday behavior here on Earth, from the color of the sky to why diet soft drink cans float in water.

BOX 4-3 The Heavens on the Earth

Newton's Laws in Everyday Life

In our study of astronomy, we use Newton's three laws of motion to help us understand the motions of objects in the heavens. But you can see applications of Newton's laws every day in the world around you. By considering these everyday applications, we can gain insight into how Newton's laws apply to celestial events that are far removed from ordinary human experience.

Newton's *first* law, or principle of inertia, says that an object at rest naturally tends to remain at rest and that an object in motion naturally tends to remain in motion. This explains the sensations that you feel when riding in an automobile. When you are waiting at a red light, your car and your body are both at rest. When the light turns green and you press on the gas pedal, the car accelerates forward but your body attempts to stay where it was. Hence, the seat of the accelerating car pushes forward into your body, and it feels as though you are being pushed back in your seat.

Once the car is up to cruising speed, your body wants to keep moving in a straight line at this cruising speed. If the car makes a sharp turn to the left, the right side of the car will move toward you. Thus, you will feel as though you are being thrown to the car's right side (the side on the outside of the turn). If you bring the car to a sudden stop by pressing on the brakes, your body will continue moving forward until the seat belt stops you. In this case, it feels as though you are being thrown toward the front of the car.

Newton's *second* law states that the net outside force on an object equals the product of the object's mass and its acceleration. You can accelerate a crumpled-up piece of paper to a pretty good speed by throwing it with a moderate force. But if you try to throw a heavy rock by using the same force, the acceleration will be much less because the rock has much more mass than the crumpled paper. Because of the smaller acceleration, the rock will leave your hand moving at only a slow speed.

Automobile airbags are based on the relationship between force and acceleration. It takes a large force to bring a fast-moving object suddenly to rest because this requires a large acceleration. In a collision, the driver of a car not equipped with airbags is jerked to a sudden stop and the large forces that act can cause major injuries. But if the car has airbags that deploy in an accident, the driver's body will slow down more gradually as it contacts the airbag, and the driver's acceleration will be less. (Remember that *acceleration* can refer to slowing down as well as to speeding up.) Hence, the force on the driver and the chance of injury will both be greatly reduced.

Newton's *third* law, the principle of action and reaction, explains how a car can accelerate at all. It is not correct to say that the engine pushes the car forward, because Newton's second law tells us that it takes a force acting from outside the car to make the car accelerate. Rather, the engine makes the wheels and tires turn, and the tires push backward on the ground. (You can see this backward force in action when a car drives through wet ground and sprays mud backward from the tires.) From Newton's third law, the ground must exert an equally large forward force on the car, and this is the force that pushes the car forward.

You use the same principles when you walk: You push backward on the ground with your foot, and the ground pushes forward on you. Icy pavement or a freshly waxed floor have greatly reduced friction. In these situations, your feet and the surface under you can exert only weak forces on each other, and it is much harder to walk.

Wavelength tabs—Astronomers observe the sky using many forms of light

Astronomers rely on special telescopes that are sensitive to nonvisible forms of light. To help students appreciate these different kinds of observations, all the images in *Universe* appear with wavelength tabs. The highlighted letter on each tab indicates whether the image was made with **R**adio waves, **I**nfrared radiation, **V**isible light, **U**ltraviolet light, **X** rays, or **G**amma rays.

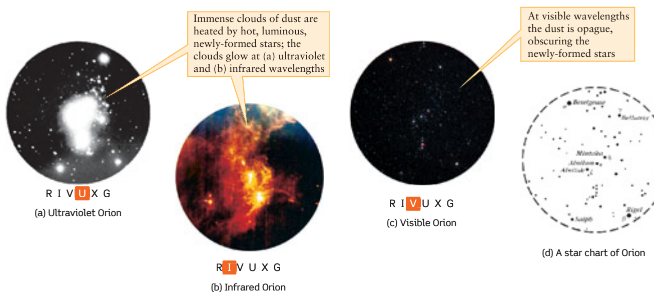


Figure 6-27

Orion Seen at Ultraviolet, Infrared, and Visible Wavelengths **(a)** An ultraviolet view of the constellation of Orion was obtained during a brief rocket flight in 1975. This 100-s exposure covers the wavelength range 125–200 nm. **(b)** The false-color view from the Infrared Astronomical Satellite displays emission at different wavelengths in different colors: red for 100-μm radiation, green for 60-μm radiation, and blue for 12-μm radiation. Compare these images with **(c)** an ordinary visible-light photograph and (d) a star chart of Orion. (a: G. R. Carruthers, Naval Research Laboratory; b: NASA; c: R. C. Mitchell, Central Washington University)

End-of-Chapter material has been revised and consolidated

Key Words

A list of Key words appears at the end of each chapter, along with the number of the page where each term is introduced.

Key Ideas

Students can get the most benefit from these brief chapter summaries by using them in conjunction with the notes they take while reading.

Questions

Items from these sections are designed to be assigned as homework or used as jumping-off points for class discussion. Some questions ask students to analyze images in the text or evaluate how the mass media portrays concepts in astronomy. Advanced questions are accompanied by a *Problem-Solving Tips and Tools* box to provide guidance. Web/eBook questions challenge students to work with animations and interactive modules on the Universe Web site or eBook (described below) or to research topics on the World Wide Web. Near the end of the book is a section of **Answers to Selected Questions.**

Key Words

active optics, p. 140
adaptive optics, p. 140
angular resolution, p. 139
baseline, p. 140
Cassegrain focus, p. 137
charge-coupled device (CCD), p. 142
chromatic aberration, p. 134
coma, p. 138
coudé focus, p. 137
diffraction, p. 139
diffraction grating, p. 143
eyepiece lens, p. 131
false color, p. 140
focal length, p. 130
focal plane, p. 131
focal point, p. 130
focus (of a lens or mirror), p. 130
imaging, p. 142
interferometry, p. 140
lens, p. 129
light-gathering power, p. 132
light pollution, p. 141
magnification (magnifying power), p. 132
medium (*plural* media), p. 130
Newtonian reflector, p. 136
objective lens, p. 131
objective mirror (primary mirror), p. 135
optical telescope, p. 129
optical window (in the Earth's atmosphere), p. 147
photometry, p. 142
pixel, p. 142
prime focus, p. 136
radio telescope, p. 144
radio window (in the Earth's atmosphere), p. 147
reflecting telescope (reflector), p. 135
reflection, p. 134
refracting telescope (refractor), p. 131
refraction, p. 130
seeing disk, p. 139
spectrograph, p. 143
spectroscopy, p. 143
spherical aberration, p. 137
very-long-baseline interferometry (VLBI), p. 146

Key Ideas

Refracting Telescopes: Refracting telescopes, or refractors, produce images by bending light rays as they pass through glass lenses.

• Chromatic aberration is an optical defect whereby light of different wavelengths is bent in different amounts by a lens.

• Glass impurities, chromatic aberration, opacity to certain wavelengths, and structural difficulties make it inadvisable to build extremely large refractors.

Reflecting Telescopes: Reflecting telescopes, or reflectors, produce images by reflecting light rays to a focus point from curved mirrors.

Charge-Coupled Devices: Sensitive light detectors called charge-coupled devices (CCDs) are often used at a telescope's focus to record faint images.

Spectrographs: A spectrograph uses a diffraction grating to form the spectrum of an astronomical object.

Radio Telescopes: Radio telescopes use large reflecting dishes to focus radio waves onto a detector.

• Very large dishes provide reasonably sharp radio images. Higher resolution is achieved with interferometry techniques that link smaller dishes together.

Transparency of the Earth's Atmosphere: The Earth's atmosphere absorbs much of the radiation that arrives from space.

• The atmosphere is transparent chiefly in two wavelength ranges known as the optical window and the radio window. A few wavelengths in the near-infrared also reach the ground.

Telescopes in Space: For observations at wavelengths to which the Earth's atmosphere is opaque, astronomers depend on telescopes carried above the atmosphere by rockets or spacecraft.

• Satellite-based observatories provide new information about the universe and permit coordinated observation of the sky at all wavelengths.

Questions

Review Questions

1. Describe refraction and reflection. Explain how these processes enable astronomers to build telescopes.
2. Explain why a flat piece of glass does not bring light to a focus while a curved piece of glass can.
3. Explain why the light rays that enter a telescope from an astronomical object are essentially parallel.
4. With the aid of a diagram, describe a refracting telescope. Which dimensions of the telescope determine its light-gathering power? Which dimensions determine the magnification?
5. What is the purpose of a telescope eyepiece? What aspect of the eyepiece determines the magnification of the image? In what circumstances would the eyepiece not be used?
6. Do most professional astronomers actually look through their telescopes? Why or why not?
7. Quite often advertisements appear for telescopes that extol their magnifying power. Is this a good criterion for evaluating telescopes? Explain your answer.

Robotic Geologists and the Search for Habitable Environments on Mars

by John Grotzinger

Scientists discover that which exists; engineers create that which never was.

Theodor von Kármán, founder of NASA's Jet Propulsion Lab

Humans are explorers by nature. The great quests of human history have presented grand challenges that by necessity have inspired creative design of ships of exploration. In the search to understand the history of water on Mars, and its potential role in enabling the evolution of life on the most Earthlike terrestrial planet, human imagination has been no less bridled. Since humans cannot yet travel to other planets, we have developed robots that can survive interplanetary travel and the harsh surface conditions on other planets. These robotic explorers are designed to act as geologists, which was the case for the 2004 *Mars Exploration Rover* mission.

In June 2003, two golf cart–sized rovers destined to land on the Martian surface were launched from Cape Canaveral, Florida, and began their 300-million-kilometer journey to the Red Planet. This mission succeeded beyond anyone's expectations, making 2004, 2005, and 2006 three of the greatest years in the history of space exploration. The *Mars Exploration Rovers*—*Spirit* and *Opportunity*—were designed to survive 3 months under the hostile Martian surface conditions and drive no farther than 300 m. Remarkably, at the time this article was written, each rover has operated for more than two and a half years, and driven a combined distance of more than 15 km! The rovers have had to survive nighttime temperatures below –150 °C, dust devils that could have tipped them over, global dust storms that diminished their solar power, and drives along rocky slopes of almost 30° and through piles of treacherous windblown sand and dust. The rovers have also discovered a treasure trove of geologic wonders. These discoveries include compelling evidence for water on the ancient Martian surface—a necessary condition for life, at least as it exists on Earth, and can be contemplated for Mars.

In particular, the rover *Opportunity* has discovered evidence from the Meridiani Planum area that water may have pooled in shallow lakes, known as playas, and infiltrated pores in sediments and soils to cause aqueous alteration. So we now know that water was present in the shallow subsurface environment and was at least intermittently present at the surface as shallow lakes and streams. But the evidence for water alone is not enough to demonstrate that life may have existed. One must also ask if the water would have had physical attributes that would have allowed life to develop.

Mars today is a forbidding place. Temperature and atmospheric pressure lie near the triple point of water—indeed, liquid water is not stable on the present-day Martian surface. The surface is also chemically harsh and subject to strong radiation. It is doubtful that organisms thrive today at the Martian surface. *Opportunity*'s discoveries indicate that surface environments may have, unfortunately, been biologically challenging for *most* of Mars's history. The salty and transient streams and lakes that covered Meridiani 3 to 4 billion years ago indicate that while chemical weathering and erosion provided many of the elements required for life, ambient environments were arid, acidic, and oxidizing. Terrestrial ecology suggests that microorganisms could survive many aspects of the inferred Meridiani environment, but habitability would depend critically on the time scale of sufficiently high water activity to support cell biology—a time scale that is currently unknown.

Whether Meridiani is broadly representative of the Martian surface 3 to 4 billion years ago is unknown, but remote sensing from orbiting spacecraft suggests that it could be. The sulfate minerals that are so widespread at Meridiani seem to be widespread in others areas of the planet, particularly the equatorial lowlands. However, there appear to be hints that other suites of minerals—some dominated by clays—may be associated with the oldest rocks on Mars. From an astrobiological perspective this is encouraging because it allows for less acidic conditions. All considered, the formerly water-drenched

John Grotzinger is a field geologist interested in the evolution of Earth's surficial environments and biosphere. He received a B.S. in geoscience from Hobart College in 1979, an M.S. in geology from University of Montana in 1981, and a Ph.D. in geology from Virginia Tech in 1985. He currently works as a geologist on the *Mars Exploration Rover* team. This mission is the first to conduct ground-based exploration of the bedrock geology of another planet, resulting in the discovery of sedimentary rocks formed in aqueous depositional environments.

(continued on the next page)

New Guest Essays

Several chapters in the Eighth Edition end with essays written by scientists involved with some of the recent discoveries described in the text. These include essays by John Grotzinger on the exploration of Mars; Scott Sheppard on Pluto and the Kuiper belt; and Kevin Plaxco on astrobiology. For a full list of essays, see the Contents Overview on pages viii–ix.

Media and Supplements Package

FOR STUDENTS

The eBook: Affordable, Innovative, Customizable

The *Universe,* Eighth Edition, eBook is a complete online version of the textbook. It provides a rich learning experience by taking full advantage of the electronic medium. The online eBook integrates all the existing media resources and adds such unique features as:

- Easy access from any Internet-connected computer via a standard Web browser
- Quick, intuitive navigation to any section of subsection, as well as any printed book page number
- Integration of all student Web site animated tutorials and activities
- In-text self-quiz questions and links to all glossary entries
- Text highlighting, bookmarking, and a powerful Notes feature that allows students to add notes to any page
- A full glossary and index
- Full-text search, including an option to also search the glossary and index

The eBook is available FREE with printed copies of the text (see the back cover for the ISBN) or can be purchased online at www.whfreeman.com/universe8e.

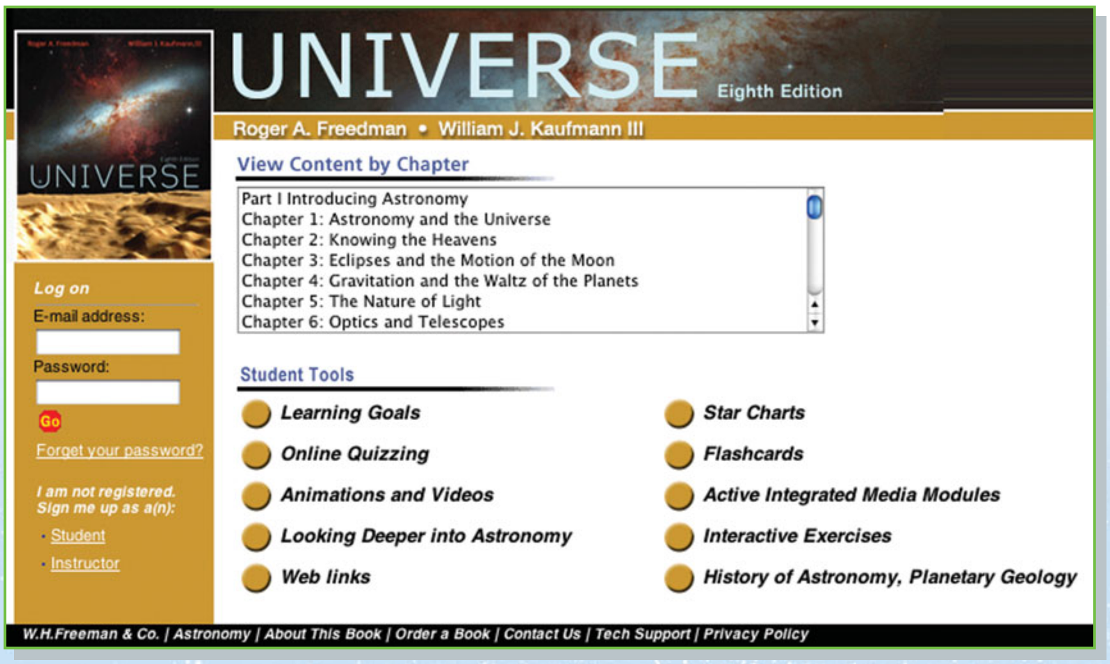
Starry Night Enthusiast™

Starry Night Enthusiast™ 5.8 is a brilliantly realistic planetarium software package. It is designed for easy use by anyone with an interest in the night sky. See the sky from anywhere on Earth or lift off and visit any solar system body or any location up to 20,000 light years away. View 2,500,000 stars along with more than 170 deep-space objects like galaxies, star clusters, and nebulae. You can travel 15,000 years in time, check out the view from the International Space Station, and see planets up close from any one of their moons. Included are stunning OpenGL graphics. You can also print handy star charts to explore outside. The *Starry Night Enthusiast* CD is available at no extra charge with the text upon request; see the back cover for the ISBN.

The Free Student Companion Web site

www.whfreeman.com/universe8e serves as a study guide and includes these features:

- **Learning Goals** for each chapter help students formulate study strategies
- **Online Quizzing** offer randomized questions and answers with instant feedback referring to specific sections in the text, to help students study, review, and prepare for exams. Instructors can access results through an online database or they can have them e-mailed directly to their accounts.
- **Animations and Videos,** both original and NASA-created, are keyed to specific chapters.
- **Web links** provide a wealth of online resources for the student.
- **Active Integrated Media Modules** take students deeper into key topics from the text. Topics include:
  - Determining Distances to the Stars and Beyond
  - Doppler Effect
  - Nearest Stars
  - Relativistic Redshift



- **Interactive Drag and Drop Exercises** based on text illustrations help students grasp the vocabulary in context.
- **Flashcard exercises** offer help with vocabulary and definitions
- **Looking Deeper** articles in PDF format extend topics discussed in the text. These include the search for gravitational waves, how to interpret the shapes of spectral lines, and discoveries about the inner core of the Earth.

Astronomy Portal

A powerful teaching and learning environment that combines three learning tools: the **Interactive eBook, Conceptual Learning Resources,** and the **Assignment Center** for homework and tutorials. These tools are unified within a proven and widely used course management system, creating a convenient and customizable system for instructors and students.

Observing Projects Using *Starry Night Enthusiast*™

ISBN 1-4292-0074-X, T. Alan Clark and William J. F. Wilson, University of Calgary, and Marcel Bergman.

Available for packaging with the text, and compatible with both PC and Mac, this book contains a variety of comprehensive lab activities for *Starry Night Enthusiast*™ 5.8.

FOR INSTRUCTORS

Instructor eBook

The *Universe,* Eighth Edition eBook offers instructors flexibility and customization options not previously possible with any printed textbook. Instructors have access to:

- **eBook Customization:** Instructors can choose the chapters that correspond with their syllabus, and students will get a custom version of the eBook with the selected chapters only.
- **Instructor Notes:** Instructors can create an annotated version of the eBook by adding notes to any page. When students in the instructor's course log in, they will see their instructor's notes.
- **Custom Content:** Instructor content can include text, Web links, and images, allowing instructors to place any content they choose exactly where they want it.

Instructor's Resource CD-ROM

ISBN 1-4292-0076-6

To help instructors create lecture presentations, course Web sites, and other resources, this CD-ROM contains the following resources:

- All images from the text
- Instructor's Manual
- Test Bank
- Online resources from the text's companion Web site

Instructor's Manual

ISBN 1-4292-0075-8, by Mark Hollabaugh, Normandale Community College.

This manual includes solutions to all end-of-chapter problems, detailed chapter outlines, and classroom-tested teaching hints and strategies. The extensive resource guide covers student and instructor reading materials, audiovisual material, and discussion/paper topics.

Test Bank CD-ROM

Windows and Mac versions on one disc, ISBN: 1-4292-0077-4; printed version ISBN 1-4292-0072-3, by T. Alan Clark and William J. F. Wilson, University of Calgary, and Thomas Krause, Towson University.

More than 3,500 multiple-choice questions are section-referenced. The easy-to-use CD-ROM version includes Windows and Mac versions on a single disc, in a format that lets you add, edit, resequence, and print questions to suit your needs.

Online Course Materials (WebCT, Blackboard)

As a service for adopters, we will provide content files in the appropriate online course format, including the instructor and student resources for this text. The files can be used as is or can be customized to fir specific needs. Course outlines, prebuilt quizzes, links, activities, and a whole array of materials are included.

PowerPoint Lecture Presentations

A set of online lecture presentations created in Powerpoint allows instructors to tailor their lectures to suit their own needs using images and notes from the textbook. These presentations are available on the instructor portion of the companion Web site.

Overhead Transparencies

ISBN 1-4292-0073-1

100 full-color transparencies of key illustrations, photos and tables from the text.

Acknowledgements

I would like to thank my colleagues who have carefully scrutinized the manuscript of this and earlier editions. *Universe* is a stronger and better textbook because of their conscientious efforts:

Richard Bowman, *Bridgewater College*
Richard A. Christie, *Okanagan College*
Eric Collins, California State University, *Northridge*
George J. Corso, *DePaul University*
Steven Desch, *Arizona State University*
James Dickinson, *Clackamas Community College*
Juhan Frank, *Louisiana State University*
Joshua Gundersen, *University of Miami*
Melinda Hutson, *Portland Community College*
Douglas R. Ingram, *Texas Christian University*
Adam G. Jensen, *University of Colorado, Boulder*
Darell Johnson, *Missouri Western State University*
Michael Joner, *Brigham Young University*
Lauren Jones, *Denison University*
Steve Kawaler, *Iowa State University*
William Keel, *University of Alabama*
Charles Kerton, *Iowa State University*
H. S. Krawczynski, *Washington University at St. Louis*
Lauren Likkel, *University of Wisconsin, Eau Claire*
Franck Marchis, *University of California, Berkeley*
Edward M. Murphy, *University of Virginia*
Donna Naples, *University of Pittsburgh*
Gerald H. Newsom, *The Ohio State University*
Brian Oetiker, *Sam Houston State University*
Ronald P. Olowin, *Saint Mary's College*
Michael J. O'Shea, *Kansas State University*
J. Douglas Patterson, *Johnson County Community College*
Charles Peterson, *University of Missouri*
Richard Rand, *University of New Mexico*
Frederick Ringwald, *California State University, Fresno*
Caroline Simpson, *Florida International University*
Larry K. Smith, *Snow College*
Charles M. Telesco, *University of Florida*

I'm particularly grateful to Neil Gehrels, John Grotzinger, Peter Leonard, Kevin Plaxco, Lisa Randall, and Scott Sheppard, whose new essays for this edition greatly expand its coverage, and to Bob Kirshner and Geoff Marcy, who were kind enough to update their essays from the Seventh Edition in light of recent developments.

Many others have participated in the preparation of this book and I thank them for their efforts. I am particularly grateful for the guidance I have received from Valerie Raymond, my gracious acquisitions editor; her talented assistant, Whitney Clench; and David Chelton, my insightful development editor. Amy Thorne, my media and supplements editor, supervised the creation of the superb Web site and eBook. Special thanks go to Kerry O'Shaughnessy, my project editor, who skillfully kept the book on track and on target; and to Paul Rohloff for coordinating the vast array of resources needed to produce a book such as this. Diana Blume deserves full credit for the stunningly beautiful cover design as well as the handsome look and feel of the book. I also thank Bill Page and Imagineering Media Services for coordinating and producing the excellent artwork, and extend my gratitude for Bianca Moscatelli for finding just the right photographs. Louise Ketz deserves a medal for wading through my prose and copyediting it into proper English.

On a personal note, I would like to thank my father, Richard Freedman, for first cultivating my interest in space many years ago, and for his personal contributions to the exploration of the universe as an engineer for the Atlas and Centaur launch vehicle programs. Most of all, I thank my charming wife, Caroline, for putting up with my long nights slaving over the computer!

Although I have made a concerted effort to make this edition error-free, some mistakes may have crept in unbidden. I would appreciate hearing from anyone who finds an error or wishes to comment on the text.

Roger A. Freedman
Department of Physics
University of California, Santa Barbara
Santa Barbara CA 93106
airboy@physics.ucsb.edu

To the Student

How To Get the Most From *Universe*

If you're like most students just opening this textbook, you're enrolled in one of the few science courses you'll take in college. As you study astronomy, you'll probably do relatively little reading compared to a literature or history course—at least in terms of the number of pages. But your readings will be packed with information, much of it new to you and (I hope) exciting. You can't read this textbook like a novel and expect to learn much from it. Don't worry, though. I wrote this book with you in mind. In this section I'll suggest how *Universe* can help you succeed in your astronomy course, and take you on a guided tour of the book and media.

Apply these techniques to studying astronomy

- **Read before each lecture** You'll get the most out of your astronomy course if you read each chapter *before* hearing a lecture about its subject matter. That way, many of the topics will already be clear in your mind, and you'll understand the lecture better. You'll be able to spend more of your listening and note-taking time on the more challenging ideas presented in the lecture.

- **Take notes as you read and make use of office hours** Keep a notebook handy as you read, and write down the key points of each section so that you can review them later. If any parts of the section don't seem clear on first reading, make a note of them, too, including the page numbers. Once you've gone through the chapter, re-read it with special emphasis on the ideas that gave you trouble the first time. If you're still unsure after the lecture, consult your instructor, either during office hours or after class. Bring your notes with you so your instructor can see which concepts are giving you trouble. Once your instructor has helped clarify things for you, revise your notes so you'll remember your new-found insights. You'll end up with a chapter summary in your own words. This will be a tremendous help when studying for exams!

- **Make use of your fellow students** Many students find it useful to form study groups for astronomy. You can hash out challenging topics with each other and have a good time while you're doing it. But make sure that you write up your homework by yourself, because the penalties for copying or plagiarizing other students' work can be severe in the extreme. Some students find individual assistance useful too. If you think a tutor will be helpful, link up with one early. Getting a tutor late in the course, in the belief that you'll be able to catch up with what you missed earlier on, is almost always a lost cause.

- **Take advantage of the Web site and eBook** Take some time to explore the *Universe* Web site (**www.whfreeman.com/universe8e**). There you'll find review materials, animations, videos, interactive exercises, flashcards, and many other features keyed to chapters in *Universe*. All of these features are designed to help you learn and enjoy astronomy, so make sure to take full advantage of them. Your instructor may also have asked you to purchase the eBook version of this textbook (www.ebooks.bfwpub.com), which combines the complete content of the book and the Web site in a convenient online format.
- **Try astronomy for yourself with your star charts** At the back of this book you'll find a set star charts for the each month of the year in the Northern Hemisphere. (For a set of Southern Hemisphere star charts, see the *Universe* Web site.) Star charts can get you started with your own observations of the universe. Hold the chart overhead in the same orientation as the compass points, with southern horizon toward the south and western horizon toward the west. (To save strain on your arms, you may want to cut these pages out of the book.) Depending on the version of this textbook that your instructor requested, this book may also include a CD-ROM with the easy-to-use *Starry Night Enthusiast*™ planetarium program, which you can use to view the sky on any date and time as seen from anywhere on Earth.

Before you study *Universe,* take this quiz

Universe has many features designed to help you succeed in your study of astronomy. To get the most from it, understanding these features and knowing how to use them are essential. To make sure that you do, first read through the Preface on the preceding pages. Then take this brief quiz. If you can answer all the questions, you're ready to begin studying astronomy! (You can check your answers on page Q-I.)

1. Which specially labeled paragraphs alert you to common misconceptions and conceptual pitfalls?
2. Which specially labeled paragraphs draw analogies between ideas in astronomy and aspects of everyday life?
3. In many chapters, in addition to the numbered sections, you will also find material set off in Boxes. Which type of Box provides extra help with solving mathematical problems? Which relates astronomical principles to phenomena here on Earth?
4. Throughout the book you will encounter icons labeled "Web Link," "Animation," "Video," "AIMM," or "Looking Deeper." Where should you look to find the information to which these icons refer?
5. Many of the figures in this book are accompanied by the letters R I V U X G, with one of the letters highlighted. For instance, Figure 6-32*a* on page 152 has the letters R I **V** U X G, while Figure 6-32*d* has R I V U **X** G. What is the significance of the highlighted letter?
6. Where can you find self-tests and review material for each chapter of *Universe*?
7. Refer to the Appendices at the back of this book. On which page(s) of *Universe* would you look to find the following? (a) the value of the Stefan-Boltzmann constant; (b) the average orbital speed of Mars; (c) the average distance from the center of the planet Saturn to its moon Titan; (d) the distance in light-years to the star Proxima Centauri.
8. Refer to the Index at the back of this book. On which page(s) of *Universe* would you find the following terms described? (a) spicule; (b) refraction; (c) tidal force; (d) aphelion.
9. Refer to the Answers to Selected Questions at the back of this book. What is the answer to Question 45 of Chapter 4? (**NOTE:** Your instructor may assign as

homework some of the questions whose answers can be found in the Answers to Selected Questions. If so, your instructor will expect you to write out and explain your calculations to show how this answer is obtained.)

10. Where in this book can you find star charts for each month of the year?

Here's the most important advice of all

I haven't mentioned the most important thing you should do when studying astronomy: Have fun! Of all the different kinds of scientists, astronomers are among the most excited about what they do and what they study. Let some of that excitement about the universe rub off on you, and you'll have a great time with this course and with this textbook.

In preparing this edition of *Universe,* I've tried very hard to make it the kind of textbook that a student like you will find useful. I'm very interested in your comments and opinions! Please feel free to send me e-mail or write me, and I will respond personally.

Best wishes for success in your studies!

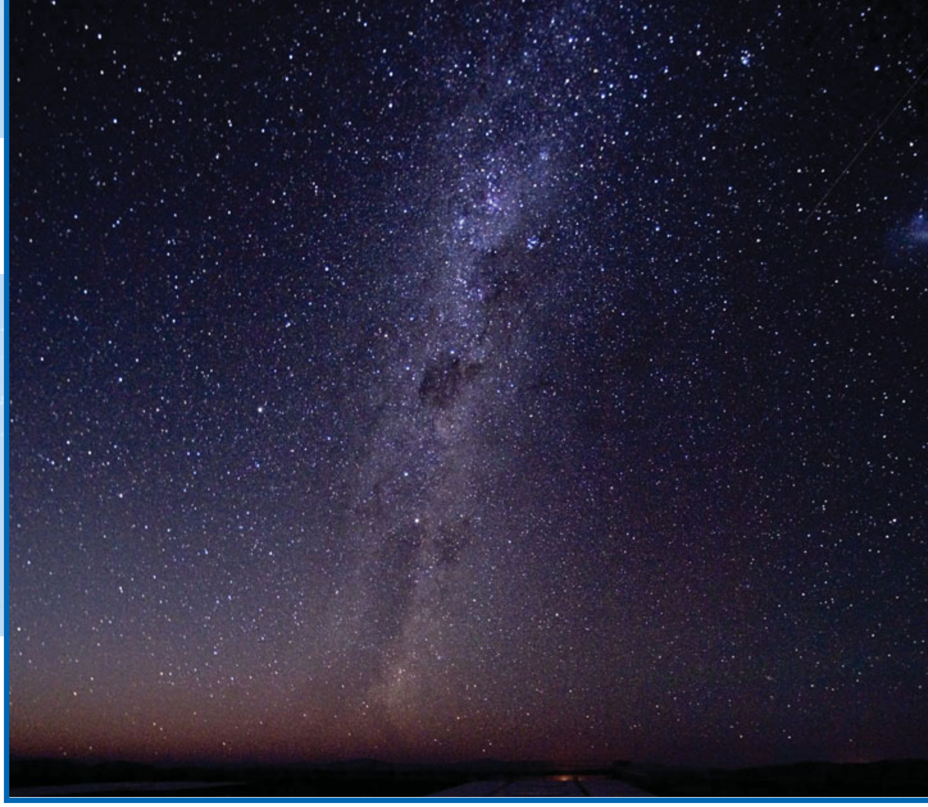
Roger A. Freedman
Department of Physics
University of California, Santa Barbara
Santa Barbara CA 93106
airboy@physics.ucsb.edu

This page intentionally left blank


UNIVERSE
Eighth Edition

This page intentionally left blank

1 Astronomy and the Universe



The night sky as seen from the European Southern Observatory in Chile. (Hännes Heyer, ESO) R I V U X G

Imagine yourself in the desert on a clear, dark, moonless night, far from the glare of city lights. As you gaze upward, you see a panorama that no poet's words can truly describe and that no artist's brush could truly capture. Literally thousands of stars are scattered from horizon to horizon, many of them grouped into a luminous band called the Milky Way (which extends up and down across the middle of this photograph). As you watch, the entire spectacle swings slowly overhead from east to west as the night progresses.

For thousands of years people have looked up at the heavens and contemplated the universe. Like our ancestors, we find our thoughts turning to profound questions as we gaze at the stars. How was the universe created? Where did the Earth, Moon, and Sun come from? What are the planets and stars made of? And how do we fit in? What is our place in the cosmic scope of space and time?

Wondering about the universe is a key part of what makes us human. Our curiosity, our desire to explore and discover, and, most important, our ability to reason about what we have discovered are qualities that distinguish us from other animals. The study of the stars transcends all boundaries of culture, geography, and politics. In a literal sense, astronomy is a universal subject—its subject is the entire universe.

1-1 To understand the universe, astronomers use the laws of physics to construct testable theories and models

Astronomy has a rich heritage that dates back to the myths and legends of antiquity. Centuries ago, the heavens were thought to be populated with demons and heroes, gods and goddesses. Astronomical phenomena were explained as the result of supernatural forces and divine intervention.

The course of civilization was greatly affected by a profound realization: *The universe is comprehensible.* This awareness is one of the great gifts to come to us from ancient Greece. Greek astronomers discovered that by observing the heavens and carefully reasoning about what they saw, they could learn something about how the universe operates. For example, as we shall see in Chapter 3, they measured the size of the Earth and were able to understand and predict eclipses without appealing to supernatural

Learning Goals

By reading the sections of this chapter, you will learn

1-1 What distinguishes the methods of science from other human activities

1-2 How exploring other planets provides insight into the origins of the solar system and the nature of our Earth

1-3 Stars have a life cycle—they form, evolve over millions or billions of years, and die

1-4 Stars are grouped into galaxies, which are found throughout the universe

1-5 How astronomers measure the positions and sizes of celestial objects

1-6 How to express very large or very small numbers in convenient notation

1-7 Why astronomers use different units to measure distances in space

1-8 What astronomy can tell us about our place in the universe forces. Modern science is a direct descendant of the intellectual endeavors of these ancient Greek pioneers.

The Scientific Method

Like art, music, or any other human creative activity, science makes use of intuition and experience. But the approach used by scientists to explore physical reality differs from other forms of intellectual endeavor in that it is based fundamentally on *observation, logic,* and *skepticism.* This approach, called the **scientific method,** requires that our ideas about the world around us be consistent with what we actually observe.

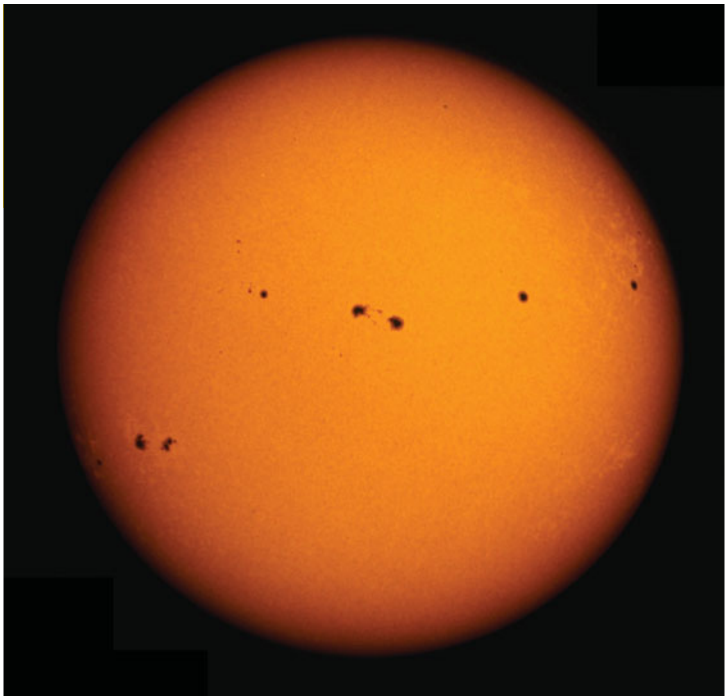
The scientific method goes something like this: A scientist trying to understand some observed phenomenon proposes a **hypothesis,** which is a collection of ideas that seems to explain what is observed. It is in developing hypotheses that scientists are at their most creative, imaginative, and intuitive. But their hypotheses must always agree with existing observations and experiments, because a discrepancy with what is observed implies that the hypothesis is wrong. (The exception is if the scientist thinks that the existing results are wrong and can give compelling evidence to show that they are wrong.) The scientist then uses logic to work out the implications of the hypothesis and to make predictions that can be tested. A hypothesis is on firm ground only after it has accurately forecast the results of new experiments or observations. (In practice, scientists typically go through these steps in a less linear fashion than we have described.)

Hypotheses, models, theories, and laws are essential parts of the scientific way of knowing

Scientists describe reality in terms of **models,** which are hypotheses that have withstood observational or experimental tests. A model tells us about the properties and behavior of some object or phenomenon. A familiar example is a model of the atom, which scientists picture as electrons orbiting a central nucleus. Another example, which we will encounter in Chapter 18, is a model that tells us about physical conditions (for example, temperature, pressure, and density) in the interior of the Sun (Figure 1-1). A well-developed model uses mathematics—one of the most powerful tools for logical thinking—to make detailed predictions. For example, a successful model of the Sun's interior should describe what the values of temperature, pressure, and density are at each depth within the Sun, as well as the relations between these quantities. For this reason, mathematics is one of the most important tools used by scientists.

A body of related hypotheses can be pieced together into a self-consistent description of nature called a **theory.** An example from Chapter 4 is the theory that the planets are held in their orbits around the Sun by the Sun's gravitational force (Figure 1-2). Without models and theories there is no understanding and no science, only collections of facts.

CAUTION! In everyday language the word "theory" is often used to mean an idea that looks good on paper, but has little to do with reality. In science, however, a good theory is one that explains reality very well and that can be applied to explain new observations. An excellent example is the theory of gravitation (Chapter 4), which was devised by the English scientist Isaac Newton in the late 1600s to explain the orbits of the six planets known at that time. When astronomers of later centuries discovered the planets Uranus and Neptune and the dwarf planet Pluto, they found that these planets also moved in accordance with Newton's theory. The same theory describes the motions of satellites around the Earth as well as the orbits of planets around other stars (see Chapter 8).



WEB LINK 1.1

Figure 1-1 R I V U X G

Our Star, the Sun The Sun is a typical star. Its diameter is about 1.39 million kilometers (roughly a million miles), and its surface temperature is about 5500°C (10,000°F). A detailed scientific model of the Sun tells us that it draws its energy from thermonuclear reactions occurring at its center, where the temperature is about 15 million degrees Celsius. (NSO/AURA/NSF)

An important part of a scientific theory is its ability to make predictions that can be tested by other scientists. If the predictions are verified by observation, that lends support to the theory and suggests that it might be correct. If the predictions are *not* verified, the theory needs to be modified or completely replaced. For example, an old theory held that the Sun and planets orbit around a stationary Earth. This theory led to certain predictions that could be checked by observation, as we will see in Chapter 4. In the early 1600s the Italian scientist Galileo Galilei used one of the first telescopes to show that these predictions were incorrect. As a result, the theory of a stationary Earth was rejected, eventually to be replaced by the modern picture shown in Figure 1-2 in which the Earth and other planets orbit the Sun.

An idea that *cannot* be tested by observation or experiment does not qualify as a scientific theory. An example is the idea that there is a little man living in your refrigerator who turns the inside light on or off when you open and close the door. The little

Figure 1-2

Planets Orbiting the Sun An example of a scientific theory is the idea that the Earth and planets orbit the Sun due to the Sun's gravitational attraction. This theory is universally accepted because it makes predictions that have been tested and confirmed by observation. (The Sun and planets are actually much smaller than this illustration would suggest.) (Detlev Van Ravenswaay/Science Photo Library)

man is invisible, weightless, and makes no sound, so you cannot detect his presence. While this is an amusing idea, it cannot be tested and so cannot be considered science.

Skepticism is an essential part of the scientific method. New hypotheses must be able to withstand the close scrutiny of other scientists. The more radical the hypothesis, the more skepticism and critical evaluation it will receive from the scientific community, because the general rule in science is that extraordinary claims require extraordinary evidence. That is why scientists as a rule do not accept claims that people have been abducted by aliens and taken aboard UFOs. The evidence presented for these claims is flimsy, secondhand, and unverifiable.

At the same time, scientists must be open-minded. They must be willing to discard long-held ideas if these ideas fail to agree with new observations and experiments, provided the new data have survived evaluation. (If an alien spacecraft really did land on Earth, scientists would be the first to accept that aliens existed—provided they could take a careful look at the spacecraft and its occupants.) That is why scientific knowledge is always provisional. As you go through this book, you will encounter many instances where new observations have transformed our understanding of Earth, the planets, the Sun and stars, and indeed the very structure of the universe.

Theories that accurately describe the workings of physical reality have a significant effect on civilization. For example, basing his conclusions in part on observations of how the planets orbit the Sun, Isaac Newton deduced a set of fundamental principles that describe how *all* objects move. These theoretical principles, which we will encounter in Chapter 4, work equally well on Earth as in the most distant corner of the universe. They represent our first complete, coherent description of the behavior of the physical universe. **Newtonian mechanics** had an immediate practical application in the construction of machines, buildings, and bridges. It is no coincidence that the Industrial Revolution followed hard on the heels of these theoretical and mathematical advances inspired by astronomy.

Newtonian mechanics and other physical theories have stood the test of time and been shown to have great and general validity. Proven theories of this kind are collectively referred to as the **laws of physics.** Astronomers use these laws to interpret and understand their observations of the universe. The laws governing light and its relationship to matter are of particular importance, because the only information we can gather about distant stars and galaxies is in the light that we receive from them. Using the physical laws that describe how objects absorb and emit light, astronomers have measured the temperature of the Sun and even learned what the Sun is made of. By analyzing starlight in the same way, they have discovered that our own Sun is a rather ordinary star and that the observable universe may contain billions of stars just like the Sun.

Technology in Science

An important part of science is the development of new tools for research and new techniques of observation. As an example, until fairly recently everything we knew about the distant universe was based on visible light. Astronomers would peer through telescopes to observe and analyze visible starlight. By the end of the nineteenth century, however, scientists had begun discovering forms of light invisible to the human eye: X rays, gamma rays, radio waves, microwaves, and ultraviolet and infrared radiation.

As we will see in Chapter 6, in recent years astronomers have constructed telescopes that can detect such nonvisible forms of light (Figure 1-3). These instruments give us views of the universe vastly different from anything our eyes can see. These new views have allowed us to see through the atmospheres of distant planets,

WEB LINK 1.2

Figure 1-3 RIVUXG

A Telescope in Space Because it orbits outside the Earth's atmosphere in the vacuum of space, the Hubble Space Telescope (HST) can detect not only visible light but also ultraviolet and near-infrared light coming from distant stars and galaxies. These forms of nonvisible light are absorbed by our atmosphere and hence are difficult or impossible to detect with a telescope on the Earth's surface. This photo of HST was taken by the crew of the space shuttle *Columbia* after a servicing mission in 2002. (NASA)

to study the thin but incredibly violent gas that surrounds our Sun, and even to observe new solar systems being formed around distant stars. Aided by high-technology telescopes, today's astronomers carry on the program of careful observation and logical analysis begun thousands of years ago by their ancient Greek predecessors.

1-2 By exploring the planets, astronomers uncover clues about the formation of the solar system

The science of astronomy allows our intellects to voyage across the cosmos. We can think of three stages in this voyage: from the Earth to the solar system, from the solar system to the stars, and from stars to galaxies and the grand scheme of the universe.

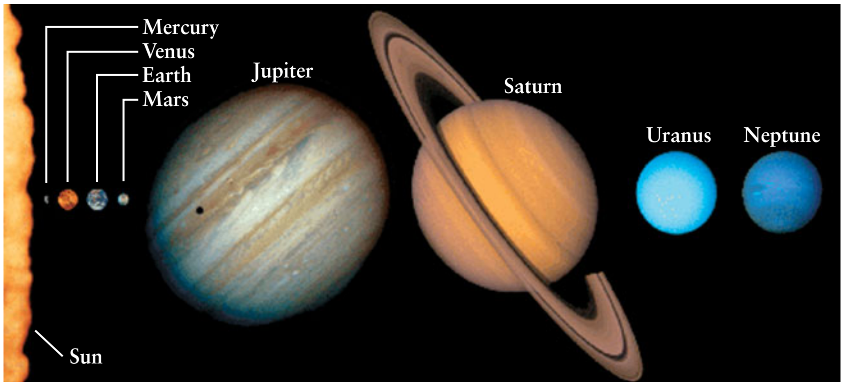
Studying planetary science gives us a better perspective on our own unique Earth

The star we call the Sun and all the celestial bodies that orbit the Sun—including Earth, the other eight planets, all their various moons, and smaller bodies such as asteroids and comets—make up the **solar system.** Since the 1960s a series of unmanned spacecraft has been sent to explore each of the planets (Figure 1-4). Using the remote "eyes" of such spacecraft, we have flown over Mercury's cratered surface, peered beneath Venus's poisonous cloud cover, and discovered enormous canyons and extinct volcanoes on Mars. We have found active volcanoes on a moon of Jupiter, probed the atmosphere of Saturn's moon Titan, seen the rings of Uranus up close, and looked down on the active atmosphere of Neptune.

Along with rocks brought back by the Apollo astronauts from the Moon (the only world beyond Earth yet visited by humans), new information from spacecraft has revolutionized our understanding of the origin and evolution of the solar system. We have come to realize that many of the planets and their satellites were shaped by collisions with other objects. Craters on the Moon and on many other worlds are the relics of innumerable impacts by bits of interplanetary rock. The Moon may itself be the result of a catastrophic collision between the Earth and a planet-sized object shortly after the solar system was formed. Such a collision could have torn sufficient material from the primordial Earth to create the Moon.

The oldest objects found on Earth are **meteorites,** bits of interplanetary debris that sometimes fall to our planet's surface. By using radioactive age-dating techniques, scientists have found that all meteorites are 4.56 billion years old—older than any other rocks found on Earth or the Moon. The conclusion is that our entire solar system, including the Sun and planets, formed 4.56 billion years ago. The few thousand years of recorded human history is no more than the twinkling of an eye compared to the long history of our solar system.

The discoveries that we have made in our journeys across the solar system are directly relevant to the quality of human life on our own planet. Until recently, our understanding of geology, weather, and climate was based solely on data from the Earth. Since the advent of space exploration, however, we have been able



WEB LINK 1.3

Figure 1-4

The Sun and Planets to Scale This montage of images from various spacecraft and ground-based telescopes shows the relative sizes of the planets and the Sun. The Sun is so large compared to the planets that only a portion of it fits into this illustration. The distances from the Sun to each planet are *not* shown to scale; the actual distance from the Sun to the Earth, for instance, is 12,000 times greater than the Earth's diameter. (Calvin J. Hamilton and NASA/JPL) to compare and contrast other worlds with our own. This new knowledge gives us valuable insight into our origins, the nature of our planetary home, and the limits of our natural resources.

1-3 By studying stars and nebulae, astronomers discover how stars are born, grow old, and die

The nearest of all stars to Earth is the Sun. Although humans have used the Sun's warmth since the dawn of our species, it was only in the 1920s and 1930s that physicists figured out how the Sun shines. At the center of the Sun, thermonuclear reactions—so called because they require extremely high temperatures—convert hydrogen (the Sun's primary constituent) into helium. This violent process releases a vast amount of energy, which eventually makes its way to the Sun's surface and escapes as light (see Figure 1-1). All the stars you can see in the nighttime sky also shine by thermonuclear reactions (**Figure 1-5**). By 1950 physicists could reproduce such thermonuclear reactions here on Earth in the form of a hydrogen bomb (**Figure 1-6**). While such weapons are capable of destroying life on our planet, peaceful applications of this same process may provide a clean source of energy sometime in the next several decades.

Figure 1-5 R I **V** U X G

Stars like Grains of Sand This Hubble Space Telescope image shows thousands of stars in the constellation Sagittarius. Each star shines because of thermonuclear reactions that release energy in its interior. Different colors indicate stars with different surface temperatures: stars with the hottest surfaces appear blue, while those with the coolest surfaces appear red. (The Hubble Heritage Team, AURA/STScI/NASA)

Figure 1-6 R I **V** U X G

A Thermonuclear Explosion A hydrogen bomb uses the same physical principle as the thermonuclear reactions at the Sun's center: the conversion of matter into energy by nuclear reactions. This thermonuclear detonation on October 31, 1952, had an energy output equivalent to 10.4 million tons of TNT. This is a mere ten-billionth of the amount of energy released by the Sun in one second. (Defense Nuclear Agency)

Thermonuclear reactions consume the material of which stars are made, which means that stars cannot last forever. Rather, they must form, evolve, and eventually die.

CAUTION! Astronomers often use biological terms such as "birth" and "death" to describe stages in the evolution of inanimate objects like stars. Keep in mind that such terms are used only as *analogies*, which help us visualize these stages. They are not to be taken literally!

The Life Stories of Stars

The rate at which stars emit energy in the form of light tells us how rapidly they are consuming their thermonuclear "fuel," and hence how long they can continue to shine before reaching the end of their life spans. More massive stars have more thermonuclear "fuel," but consume it at such a prodigious rate that they live out their lives in just a few million years. Less massive stars have less material to consume, but their thermonuclear reactions proceed so slowly that their life spans are measured in billions of years. (Our own star, the Sun, is in early middle age: it is 4.56 billion years old, with a lifetime of $12\frac{1}{2}$ billion years.)

While no astronomer can watch a single star go through all of its life stages, we have been able to piece together the life stories of stars by observing them at different points in their life cycles. Important pieces of the puzzle have been discovered by studying huge clouds of interstellar gas, called **nebulae** (singular **nebula**), which are found scattered across the sky. Within some nebulae, such as the Orion Nebula shown in Figure 1-7, stars are born from the material of the nebula itself. Other nebulae reveal what happens when thermonuclear reactions stop and a star dies. Some stars that are far more massive than the Sun end their lives with a spectacular detonation called a **supernova** (plural **supernovae**) that blows the star apart. The Crab Nebula (Figure 1-8) is a striking example of a remnant left behind by a supernova.

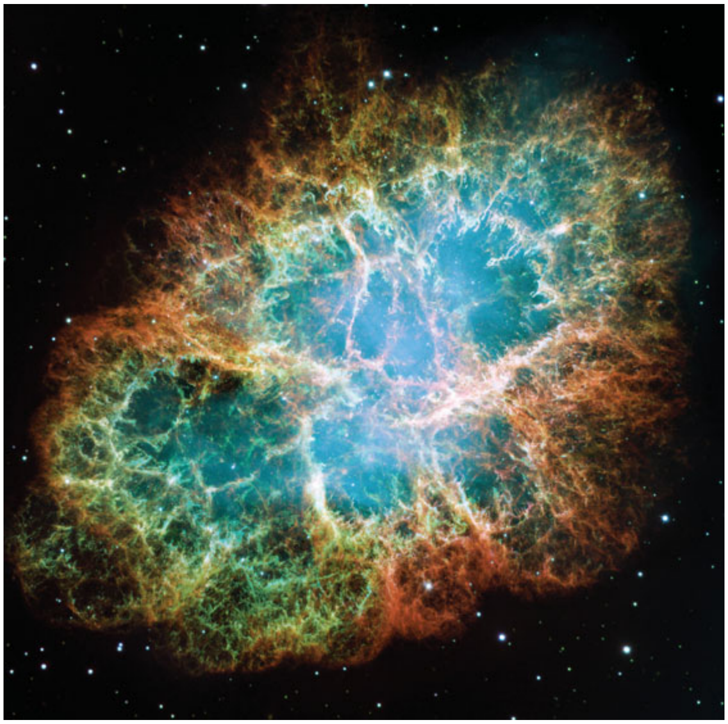
Studying the life cycles of stars is crucial for understanding our own origins

Dying stars can produce some of the strangest objects in the sky. Some dead stars become **pulsars,** which spin dizzily at rates of tens or hundreds of rotations per second. And some stars end their lives as almost inconceivably dense objects called **black holes,** whose gravity is so powerful that nothing—not even light—can escape. Even though a black hole itself emits essentially no radiation, a number of black holes have been discovered by Earth-orbiting telescopes. This is done by detecting the X rays emitted by gases falling toward a black hole.

During their death throes, stars return the gas of which they are made to interstellar space. (Figure 1-8 shows these expelled gases expanding away from the site of a supernova explosion.) This gas contains heavy elements—that is, elements heavier than hydrogen and helium—that were created during the star's lifetime by thermonuclear reactions in its interior. Interstellar space thus becomes enriched with newly manufactured atoms and molecules. The Sun and its planets were formed from interstellar material that was enriched in this way. This means that the atoms of iron and nickel that make up the body of the Earth, as well as the carbon in our bodies and the oxygen we breathe, were created deep inside ancient stars. By studying stars and their evolution, we are really studying our own origins.

WEB LINK 1.4 **Figure 1-7** R I V U X G

The Orion Nebula—Birthplace of Stars This beautiful nebula is a stellar "nursery" where stars are formed out of the nebula's gas. Intense ultraviolet light from newborn stars excites the surrounding gas and causes it to glow. Many of the stars embedded in this nebula are less than a million years old, a brief interval in the lifetime of a typical star. The Orion Nebula is some 1500 light-years from Earth and is about 30 light-years across. (NASA, ESA, M. Robberto/STScI/ESA, and the Hubble Space Telescope Orion Treasury Project Team)



WEB LINK 1.5 **Figure 1-8** R I V U X G

The Crab Nebula—Wreckage of an Exploded Star When a dying star exploded in a supernova, it left behind this elegant funeral shroud of glowing gases blasted violently into space. A thousand years after the explosion these gases are still moving outward at about 1800 km/s (roughly 4 million miles per hour). The Crab Nebula is 6500 light-years from Earth and about 13 light-years across. (NASA, ESA, J. Hester and A. Loll/Arizona State University)

1-4 By observing galaxies, astronomers learn about the origin and fate of the universe

Stars are not spread uniformly across the universe but are grouped together in huge assemblages called **galaxies.** Galaxies come in a wide range of shapes and sizes. A typical galaxy, like the Milky Way, of which our Sun is part, contains several hundred billion stars. Some galaxies are much smaller, containing only a few million stars. Others are monstrosities that devour neighboring galaxies in a process called "galactic cannibalism."

WEB LINK 1.6

Figure 1-9 RIVUXG

A Galaxy This spectacular galaxy, called M63, contains about a hundred billion stars. M63 has a diameter of about 60,000 light-years and is located about 35 million light-years from Earth. Along this galaxy's spiral arms you can see a number of glowing clumps. Like the Orion Nebula in our own Milky Way Galaxy (see Figure 1-7), these are sites of active star formation. (Subaru Telescope, National Astronomical Observatory of Japan)

Our Milky Way Galaxy has arching spiral arms like those of the galaxy shown in Figure 1-9. These arms are particularly active sites of star formation. In recent years, astronomers have discovered a mysterious object at the center of the Milky Way with a mass millions of times greater than that of our Sun. It now seems certain that this curious object is an enormous black hole.

Some of the most intriguing galaxies appear to be in the throes of violent convulsions and are rapidly expelling matter. The centers of these strange galaxies, which may harbor even more massive black holes, are often powerful sources of X rays and radio waves.

Even more awesome sources of energy are found still deeper in space. At distances so great that their light takes billions of years to reach Earth, we find the mysterious **quasars.** Although quasars look like nearby stars (Figure 1-10), they are among the most distant and most luminous objects in the sky. A typical quasar shines with the brilliance of a hundred galaxies. Detailed observations of quasars imply that they draw their energy from material falling into enormous black holes.

Galaxies and the Expanding Universe

The motions of distant galaxies reveal that they are moving away from us and from each other. In other words, the universe is *expanding*. Extrapolating into the past, we learn that the universe must have been born from an incredibly dense state (perhaps infinitely dense) some 13.7 billion years ago. A variety of evidence indicates that at that moment—the beginning of time—the universe began with a cosmic explosion, known as the **Big Bang,** which occurred throughout all space. Events shortly after the Big Bang dictated the present nature of the universe.

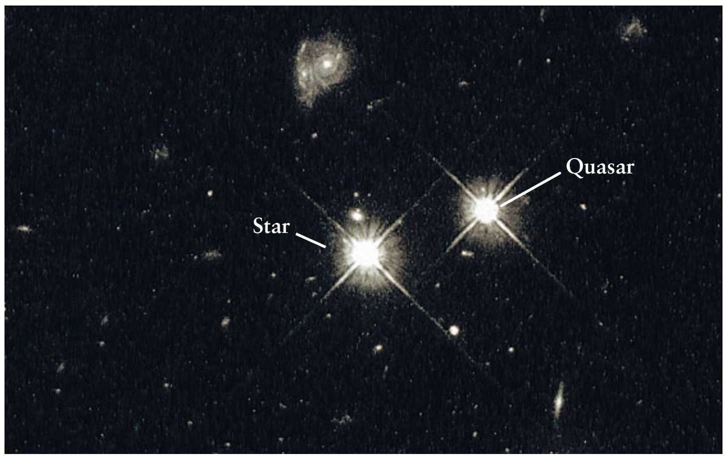
The motions of distant galaxies motivate the ideas of the expanding universe and the Big Bang

Thanks to the combined efforts of astronomers and physicists, we are making steady advances in understanding these cosmic events. This understanding may reveal the origin of some of the most basic properties of physical reality. Studying the most remote galaxies is also helping to answer questions about the ultimate fate of the universe. Such studies suggest that the expansion of the universe will continue forever, and is actually gaining speed.

LOOKING DEEPER 1.1

The work of unraveling the deepest mysteries of the universe requires specialized tools, including telescopes, spacecraft, and computers. But for many purposes the most useful device for studying the universe is the human brain itself. Our goal in this book is to help you use *your* brain to share in the excitement of scientific discovery.

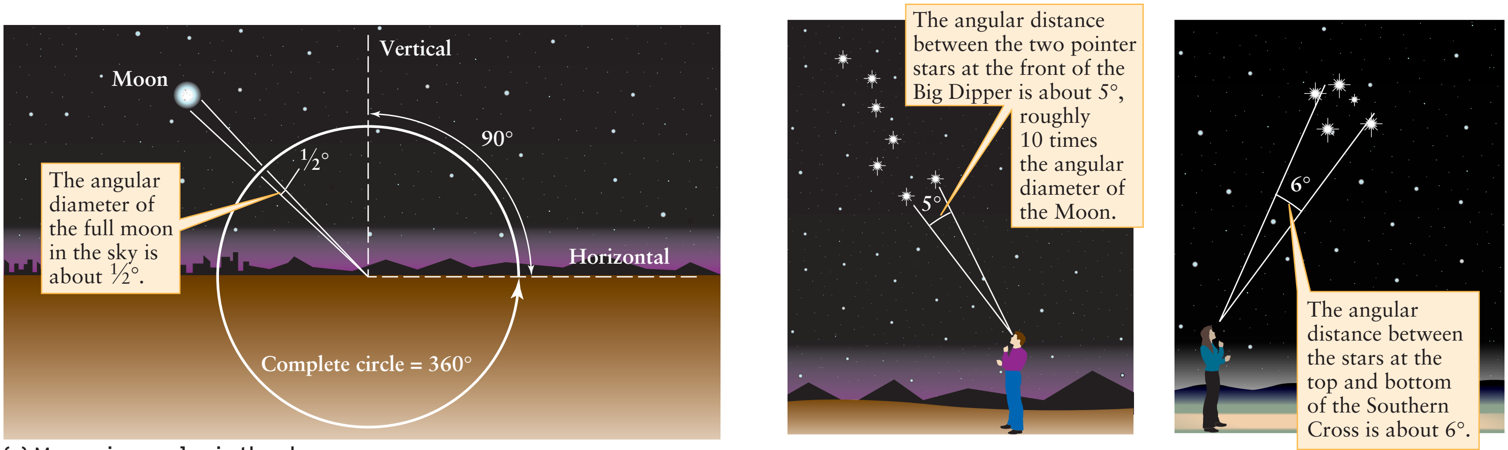
In the remainder of this chapter we introduce some of the key concepts and mathematics that we will use in subsequent



WEB LINK 1.7

Figure 1-10 RIVUXG

A Quasar The two bright starlike objects in this image look almost identical, but they are dramatically different. The object on the left is indeed a star that lies a few hundred light-years from Earth. But the "star" on the right is actually a quasar about 9 billion light-years away. To appear so bright even though they are so distant, quasars like this one must be some of the most luminous objects in the universe. The other objects in this image are galaxies like that in Figure 1-9. (Charles Steidel, California Institute of Technology; and NASA)



(a) Measuring angles in the sky

(b) Angular distances in the northern hemisphere

(c) Angular distances in the southern hemisphere

Figure 1-11

Angles and Angular Measure **(a)** Angles are measured in degrees (°). There are 360° in a complete circle and 90° in a right angle. For example, the angle between the vertical direction (directly above you) and the horizontal direction (toward the horizon) is 90°. The angular diameter of the full moon in the sky is about $\frac{1}{2}$°. **(b)** The seven bright stars that make up the Big Dipper can be seen from anywhere in the northern hemisphere. The angular distance between the two "pointer stars" at the front of the Big Dipper is about 5°. **(c)** The four bright stars that make up the Southern Cross can be seen from anywhere in the southern hemisphere. The angular distance between the stars at the top and bottom of the cross is about 6°.

chapters. Study these carefully, for you will use them over and over again throughout your own study of astronomy.

1-5 Astronomers use angles to denote the positions and apparent sizes of objects in the sky

Whether they study planets, stars, galaxies, or the very origins of the universe, astronomers must know where to point their telescopes. For this reason, an important part of astronomy is keeping track of the positions of objects in the sky. Angles and a system of angular measure are essential parts for this aspect of astronomy (Figure 1-11).

Angular measure is a tool that we will use throughout our study of astronomy

An **angle** is the opening between two lines that meet at a point. **Angular measure** describes the size of an angle exactly. The basic unit of angular measure is the **degree,** designated by the symbol °. A full circle is divided into 360°, and a right angle measures 90° (Figure 1-11*a*). As Figure 1-11*b* shows, if you draw lines from your eye to each of the two "pointer stars" in the Big Dipper, the angle between these lines—that is, the **angular distance** between these two stars—is about 5°. (In Chapter 2 we will see that these two stars "point" to Polaris, the North Star.) The angular distance between the stars that make up the top and bottom of the Southern Cross, which is visible from south of the equator, is about 6° (Figure 1-11*c*).

Astronomers also use angular measure to describe the apparent size of a celestial object—that is, what fraction of the sky that object seems to cover. For example, the angle covered by the diameter of the full moon is about $\frac{1}{2}$° (Figure 1-11*a*). We therefore say that the **angular diameter** (or **angular size**) of the Moon is $\frac{1}{2}$°. Alternatively, astronomers say that the Moon **subtends** an angle of $\frac{1}{2}$°. Ten full moons could fit side by side between the two pointer stars in the Big Dipper.

The adult human hand held at arm's length provides a means of estimating angles, as Figure 1-12 shows. For example, your fist covers an angle of 10°, whereas the tip of your finger is about 1° wide. You can use various segments of your index finger extended to arm's length to estimate angles a few degrees across.

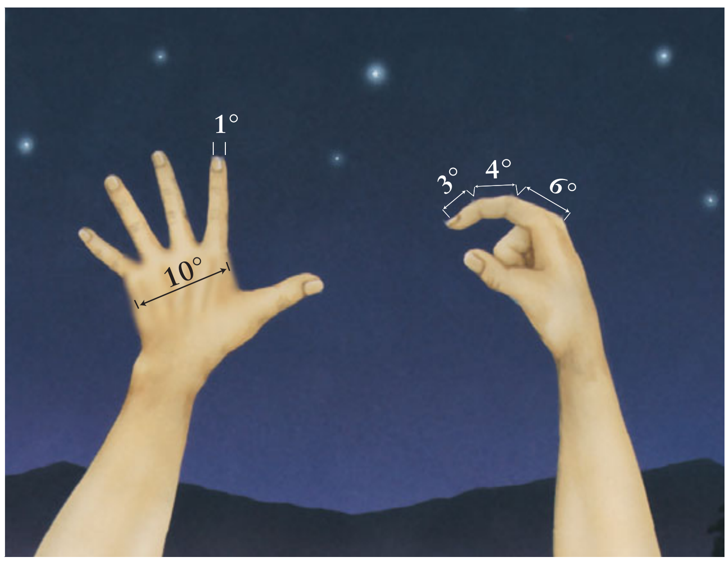


Figure 1-12

Estimating Angles with Your Hand The adult human hand extended to arm's length can be used to estimate angular distances and angular sizes in the sky.

To talk about smaller angles, we subdivide the degree into 60 **arcminutes** (also called minutes of arc), which is commonly abbreviated as 60 arcmin or 60′. An arcminute is further subdivided into 60 **arcseconds** (or seconds of arc), usually written as 60 arcsec or 60″. Thus,

$$1^\circ = 60 \text{ arcmin} = 60'$$

$$1' = 60 \text{ arcsec} = 60''$$

For example, on January 1, 2007, the planet Saturn had an angular diameter of 19.6 arcsec as viewed from Earth. That is a convenient, precise statement of how big the planet appeared in Earth's sky on that date. (Because this angular diameter is so small, to the naked eye Saturn appears simply as a point of light. To see any detail on Saturn, such as the planet's rings, requires a telescope.)

If we know the angular size of an object as well as the distance to that object, we can determine the actual linear size of the object (measured in kilometers or miles, for example). Box 1-1 describes how this is done.

BOX 1-1 — Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

The Small-Angle Formula

You can estimate the angular sizes of objects in the sky with your hand and fingers (see Figure 1-12). Using rather more sophisticated equipment, astronomers can measure angular sizes to a fraction of an arcsecond. Keep in mind, however, that *angular* size is not the same as *actual* size. As an example, if you extend your arm while looking at a full moon, you can completely cover the Moon with your thumb. That's because from your perspective, your thumb has a larger angular size (that is, it subtends a larger angle) than the Moon. But the actual size of your thumb (about 2 centimeters) is much less than the actual diameter of the Moon (more than 3000 kilometers).

The accompanying figure shows how the angular size of an object is related to its linear size. Part **a** of the figure shows that for a given angular size, the more distant the object, the larger its actual size. For example, your thumb held at arm's length just covers the full moon; the angular size of your thumb and the Moon are about the same, but the Moon is much farther away and is far larger in linear size. Part **b** shows that for a given linear size, the angular size decreases the farther away the object. This is why a car looks smaller and smaller as it drives away from you.

We can put these relationships together into a single mathematical expression called the small-angle formula. Suppose that an object subtends an angle α (the Greek letter alpha) and is at a distance d from the observer, as in part **c** of the figure. If the angle α is small, as is almost always the case for objects in the sky, the linear size (D) of the object is given by the following expression:

The small-angle formula

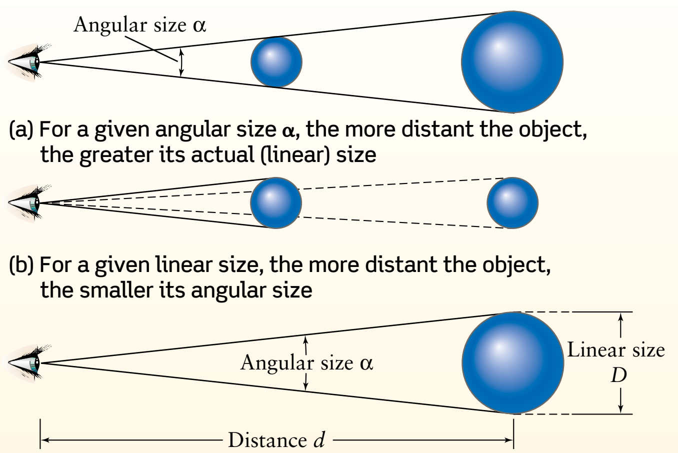
$$D = \frac{\alpha d}{206{,}265}$$

D = linear size of an object

α = angular size of the object, in arcsec

d = distance to the object

The number 206,265 is required in the formula. Mathematically, it is equal to the number of arcseconds in a complete circle (that is, 360°) divided by the number 2π (the ratio of the circumference of a circle to that circle's radius).



(a) For a given angular size α, the more distant the object, the greater its actual (linear) size

(b) For a given linear size, the more distant the object, the smaller its angular size

(c) Relating an object's linear size D, angular size α, and distance d

(a) Two objects that have the same angular size may have different linear sizes if they are at different distances from the observer. **(b)** For an object of a given linear size, the angular size is smaller the farther the object is from the observer. **(c)** The small-angle formula relates the linear size D of an object to its angular size α and its distance d from the observer.

The following examples show two different ways to use the small-angle formula. In both examples we follow a four-step process: Evaluate the ***situation*** given in the example, decide which ***tools*** are needed to solve the problem, use those tools to find the ***answer*** to the problem, and ***review*** the result to see what it tells you. Throughout this book, we'll use these same four steps in *all* examples that require the use of formulas. We encourage you to follow this four-step process when solving problems for homework or exams. You can remember these steps by their acronym: ***S.T.A.R.***

EXAMPLE: On December 11, 2006, Jupiter was 944 million kilometers from Earth and had an angular diameter of 31.2 arcseconds. From this information, calculate the actual diameter of Jupiter in kilometers.

(continued on the next page)

BOX 1-1 *(continued)*

Situation: The astronomical object in this example is Jupiter, and we are given its distance d and its angular size α (the same as angular diameter). Our goal is to find Jupiter's diameter D.

Tools: The equation to use is the small-angle formula, which relates the quantities d, α, and D. Note that when using this formula, the angular size α *must* be expressed in arcseconds.

Answer: The small-angle formula as given is an equation for D. Plugging in the given values $\alpha = 31.2$ arcsec and $d = 944$ million km,

$$D = \frac{31.2 \times 944{,}000{,}000 \text{ km}}{206{,}265} = 143{,}000 \text{ km}$$

Because the distance d to Jupiter is given in kilometers, the diameter D is also in kilometers.

Review: Does our answer make sense? From Appendix 2 at the back of this book, the equatorial diameter of Jupiter measured by spacecraft flybys is 142,984 km, so our calculated answer is very close.

EXAMPLE: Under excellent conditions, a telescope on Earth can see details with an angular size as small as 1 arcsec. What is the greatest distance at which you could see details as small as 1.7 m (the height of a typical person) under these conditions?

Situation: Now the object in question is a person, whose linear size D we know. Our goal is to find the distance d at which the person has an angular size α equal to 1 arcsec.

Tools: Again we use the small-angle formula to relate d, α, and D.

Answer: We first rewrite the formula to solve for the distance d, then plug in the given values $D = 1.7$ m and $\alpha = 1$ arcsec:

$$d = \frac{206{,}265 D}{\alpha} = \frac{206{,}265 \times 1.7 \text{ m}}{1} = 350{,}000 \text{ m} = 350 \text{ km}$$

Review: This is much less than the distance to the Moon, which is 384,000 km. Thus, even the best telescope on Earth could not be used to see an astronaut walking on the surface of the Moon.

1-6 Powers-of-ten notation is a useful shorthand system for writing numbers

Astronomy is a subject of extremes. Astronomers investigate the largest structures in the universe, including galaxies and clusters of galaxies. But they must also study atoms and atomic nuclei, among the smallest objects in the universe, in order to explain how and why stars shine. They also study conditions ranging from the incredibly hot and dense centers of stars to the frigid near-vacuum of interstellar space. To describe such a wide range of phenomena, we need an equally wide range of both large and small numbers.

Learning powers-of-ten notation will help you deal with very large and very small numbers

Powers-of-Ten Notation: Large Numbers

Astronomers avoid such confusing terms as "a million billion billion" by using a standard shorthand system called **powers-of-ten notation.** All the cumbersome zeros that accompany a large number are consolidated into one term consisting of 10 followed by an **exponent,** which is written as a superscript. The exponent indicates how many zeros you would need to write out the long form of the number. Thus,

$10^0 = 1$ (one)

$10^1 = 10$ (ten)

$10^2 = 100$ (one hundred)

$10^3 = 1000$ (one thousand)

$10^4 = 10{,}000$ (ten thousand)

$10^6 = 1{,}000{,}000$ (one million)

$10^9 = 1{,}000{,}000{,}000$ (one billion)

$10^{12} = 1{,}000{,}000{,}000{,}000$ (one trillion)

and so forth. The exponent also tells you how many tens must be multiplied together to give the desired number, which is why the exponent is also called the **power of ten.** For example, ten thousand can be written as 10^4 ("ten to the fourth" or "ten to the fourth power") because $10^4 = 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 = 10{,}000$.

In powers-of-ten notation, numbers are written as a figure between one and ten multiplied by the appropriate power of ten. The approximate distance between Earth and the Sun, for example, can be written as 1.5×10^8 kilometers (or 1.5×10^8 km for short). Once you get used to it, this is more convenient than writing "150,000,000 kilometers" or "one hundred and fifty million kilometers." (The same number could also be written as 15×10^7 or 0.15×10^9, but the preferred form is *always* to have the first figure be between 1 and 10.)

Calculators and Powers-of-Ten Notation

Most electronic calculators use a shorthand for powers-of-ten notation. To enter the number 1.5×10^8, you first enter 1.5, then press a key labeled "EXP" or "EE," then enter the exponent 8. (The EXP or EE key takes care of the "$\times$ 10" part of the expression.) The number will then appear on your calculator's display as "1.5 E 8," "1.5 8," or some variation of this; typically the "$\times$ 10" is not displayed as such. There are some variations from one kind of calculator to another, so you should spend a few minutes reading over your calculator's instruction manual to make sure you know the correct procedure for working with numbers in powers-of-ten notation. You will be using this notation continually in your study of astronomy, so this is time well spent.

CAUTION! Confusion can result from the way that calculators display powers-of-ten notation. Since 1.5×10^8 is displayed as "1.5 8" or "1.5 E 8," it is not uncommon to think that 1.5×10^8 is the same as 1.5^8. That is not correct, however; 1.5^8 is equal to 1.5 multiplied by itself 8 times, or 25.63, which is not even close to $150{,}000{,}000 = 1.5 \times 10^8$. Another, not uncommon, mistake is to write 1.5×10^8 as 15^8. If you are inclined to do this, perhaps you are thinking that you can multiply 1.5 by 10, then tack on the exponent later. This also does not work; 15^8 is equal to 15 multiplied by itself 8 times, or 2,562,890,625, which again is nowhere near 1.5×10^8. Reading over the manual for your calculator will help you to avoid these common errors.

Powers-of-Ten Notation: Small Numbers

You can use powers-of-ten notation for numbers that are less than one by using a minus sign in front of the exponent. A negative exponent tells you to *divide* by the appropriate number of tens. For example, 10^{-2} ("ten to the minus two") means to divide by 10 twice, so $10^{-2} = 1/10 \times 1/10 = 1/100 = 0.01$. This same idea tells us how to interpret other negative powers of ten:

$10^0 = 1$ (one)

$10^{-1} = 1/10 = 0.1$ (one tenth)

$10^{-2} = 1/10 \times 1/10 = 1/10^2 = 0.01$ (one hundredth)

$10^{-3} = 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 = 1/10^3 = 0.001$ (one thousandth)

$10^{-4} = 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 = 1/10^4 = 0.0001$ (one ten-thousandth)

$10^{-6} = 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 = 1/10^6 = 0.000001$ (one millionth)

$10^{-12} = 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 = 1/10^{12} = 0.000000000001$ (one trillionth)

and so forth.

As these examples show, negative exponents tell you how many tenths must be multiplied together to give the desired number. For example, one ten-thousandth, or 0.0001, can be written as 10^{-4} ("ten to the minus four") because $10^{-4} = 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 \times 1/10 = 0.0001$.

A useful shortcut in converting a decimal to powers-of-ten notation is to notice where the decimal point is. For example, the decimal point in 0.0001 is four places to the left of the "1," so the exponent is -4, that is, $0.0001 = 10^{-4}$.

You can also use powers-of-ten notation to express a number like 0.00245, which is not a multiple of 1/10. For example, $0.00245 = 2.45 \times 0.001 = 2.45 \times 10^{-3}$. (Again, the standard for powers-of-ten notation is that the first figure is a number between one and ten.) This notation is particularly useful when dealing with very small numbers. A good example is the diameter of a hydrogen atom, which is much more convenient to state in powers-of-ten notation (1.1×10^{-10} meter, or 1.1×10^{-10} m) than as a decimal (0.00000000011 m) or a fraction (110 trillionths of a meter.)

Because it bypasses all the awkward zeros, powers-of-ten notation is ideal for describing the size of objects as small as atoms or as big as galaxies (Figure 1-13). Box 1-2 explains how powers-of-ten notation also makes it easy to multiply and divide numbers that are very large or very small.

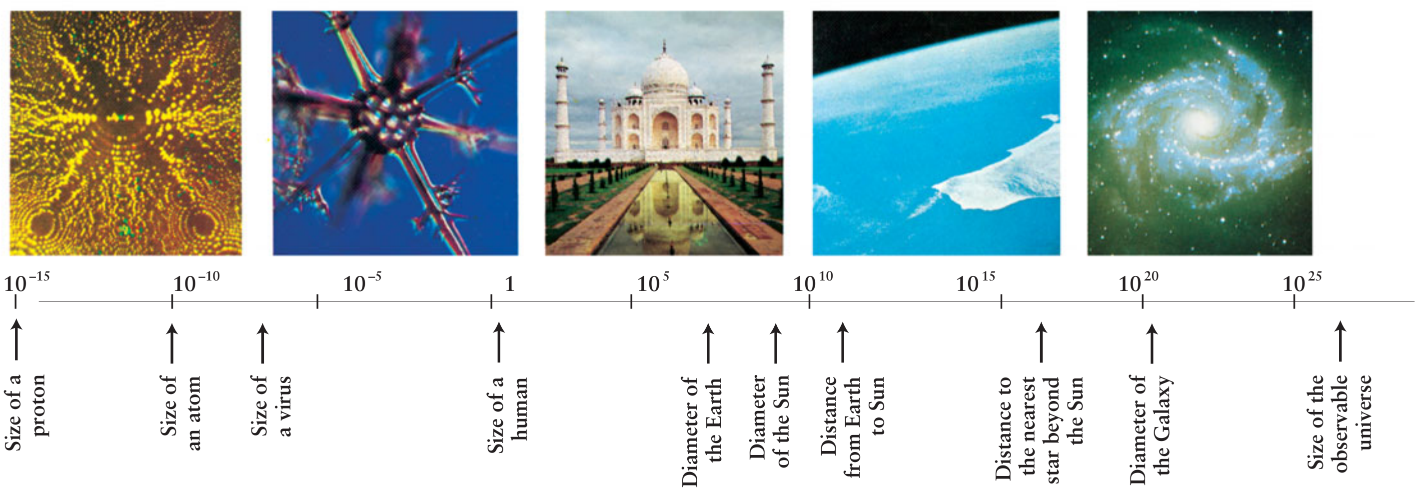


Figure 1-13

Examples of Powers-of-Ten Notation The scale gives the sizes of objects in meters, ranging from subatomic particles at the left to the entire observable universe on the right. The photograph at the left shows tungsten atoms, 10^{-10} meter in diameter. Second from left is the crystalline skeleton of a diatom (a single-celled organism), 10^{-4} meter (0.1 millimeter) in size. At the center is the Taj Mahal, about 60 meters tall and within reach of our unaided senses. On the right, looking across the Indian Ocean toward the south pole, we see the curvature of the Earth, about 10^7 meters in diameter. At the far right is a galaxy, 10^{21} meters (100,000 light-years) in diameter. (Courtesy of Scientific American Books; NASA; and photograph by David Malin from the Anglo-Australian Observatory)

BOX 1-2 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Arithmetic with Powers-of-Ten Notation

Using powers-of-ten notation makes it easy to multiply numbers. For example, suppose you want to multiply 100 by 1000. If you use ordinary notation, you have to write a lot of zeros:

$$100 \times 1000 = 100{,}000 \text{ (one hundred thousand)}$$

By converting these numbers to powers-of-ten notation, we can write this same multiplication more compactly as

$$10^2 \times 10^3 = 10^5$$

Because $2 + 3 = 5$, we are led to the following general rule for *multiplying* numbers expressed in terms of powers of ten: Simply *add* the exponents.

EXAMPLE: $10^4 \times 10^3 = 10^{4+3} = 10^7$

To *divide* numbers expressed in terms of powers of ten, remember that $10^{-1} = 1/10$, $10^{-2} = 1/100$, and so on. The general rule for any exponent n is

$$10^{-n} = \frac{1}{10^n}$$

In other words, dividing by 10^n is the same as multiplying by 10^{-n}. To carry out a division, you first transform it into multiplication by changing the sign of the exponent, and then carry out the multiplication by adding the exponents.

EXAMPLE: $\frac{10^4}{10^6} = 10^4 \times 10^{-6} = 10^{4+(-6)} = 10^{4-6} = 10^{-2}$

Usually a computation involves numbers like 3.0×10^{10}, that is, an ordinary number multiplied by a factor of 10 with an exponent. In such cases, to perform multiplication or division, you can treat the numbers separately from the factors of 10^n.

EXAMPLE: We can redo the first numerical example from Box 1-1 in a straightforward manner by using exponents:

$$D = \frac{31.2 \times 944{,}000{,}000 \text{ km}}{206{,}265}$$

$$= \frac{3.12 \times 10 \times 9.44 \times 10^8}{2.06265 \times 10^5} \text{km}$$

$$= \frac{3.12 \times 9.44 \times 10^{1+8-5}}{2.06265} \text{km} = 14.3 \times 10^4 \text{ km}$$

$$= 1.43 \times 10 \times 10^4 \text{ km} = 1.43 \times 10^5 \text{ km}$$

1-7 Astronomical distances are often measured in astronomical units, light-years, or parsecs

Astronomers use many of the same units of measurement as do other scientists. They often measure lengths in meters (abbreviated m), masses in kilograms (kg), and time in seconds (s). (You can read more about these units of measurement, as well as techniques for converting between different sets of units, in Box 1-3.)

Specialized units make it easier to comprehend immense cosmic distances

Like other scientists, astronomers often find it useful to combine these units with powers of ten and create new units using prefixes. As an example, the number 1000 ($= 10^3$) is represented by the prefix "kilo," and so a distance of 1000 meters is the same as 1 kilometer (1 km). Here are some of the most common prefixes, with examples of how they are used:

one-billionth meter	$= 10^{-9}$ m	= 1 nanometer
one-millionth second	$= 10^{-6}$ s	= 1 microsecond
one-thousandth arcsecond	$= 10^{-3}$ arcsec	= 1 milliarcsecond
one-hundredth meter	$= 10^{-2}$ m	= 1 centimeter
one thousand meters	$= 10^{3}$ m	= 1 kilometer
one million tons	$= 10^{6}$ tons	= 1 megaton

In principle, we could express all sizes and distances in astronomy using units based on the meter. Indeed, we will use kilometers to give the diameters of the Earth and Moon, as well as the Earth-Moon distance. But, while a kilometer (roughly equal to three-fifths of a mile) is an easy distance for humans to visualize, a megameter (10^6 m) is not. For this reason, astronomers have devised units of measure that are more appropriate for the tremendous distances between the planets and the far greater distances between the stars.

When discussing distances across the solar system, astronomers use a unit of length called the **astronomical unit** (abbreviated **AU**). This is the average distance between Earth and the Sun:

$$1 \text{ AU} = 1.496 \times 10^8 \text{ km} = 92.96 \text{ million miles}$$

BOX 1-3 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Units of Length, Time, and Mass

To understand and appreciate the universe, we need to describe phenomena not only on the large scales of galaxies but also on the submicroscopic scale of the atom. Astronomers generally use units that are best suited to the topic at hand. For example, interstellar distances are conveniently expressed in either light-years or parsecs, whereas the diameters of the planets are more comfortably presented in kilometers.

Most scientists prefer to use a version of the metric system called the International System of Units, abbreviated **SI** (after the French name Système International). In SI units, length is measured in meters (m), time is measured in seconds (s), and mass (a measure of the amount of material in an object) is measured in kilograms (kg). How are these basic units related to other measures?

When discussing objects on a human scale, sizes and distances are usually expressed in millimeters (mm), centimeters (cm), and kilometers (km). These units of length are related to the meter as follows:

$$1 \text{ millimeter} = 0.001 \text{ m} = 10^{-3} \text{ m}$$
$$1 \text{ centimeter} = 0.01 \text{ m} = 10^{-2} \text{ m}$$
$$1 \text{ kilometer} = 1000 \text{ m} = 10^{3} \text{ m}$$

Although the English system of inches (in.), feet (ft), and miles (mi) is much older than SI, today the English system is actually based on the SI system: The inch is defined to be exactly 2.54 cm. A useful set of conversions is

$$1 \text{ in.} = 2.54 \text{ cm}$$
$$1 \text{ ft} = 0.3048 \text{ m}$$
$$1 \text{ mi} = 1.609 \text{ km}$$

Each of these equalities can also be written as a fraction equal to 1. For example, you can write

$$\frac{0.3048 \text{ m}}{1 \text{ ft}} = 1$$

Fractions like this are useful for converting a quantity from one set of units to another. For example, the *Saturn V* rocket used to send astronauts to the Moon stands about 363 feet tall. How can we convert this height to meters? The trick is to remember that a quantity does not change if you multiply it by 1. Expressing the number 1 by the fraction (0.3048 m)/(1 ft), we can write the height of the rocket as

$$363 \text{ ft} \times 1 = 363 \text{ ft} \times \frac{0.3048 \text{ m}}{1 \text{ ft}} = 111 \frac{\text{ft} \times \text{m}}{\text{ft}} = 111 \text{ m}$$

EXAMPLE: The diameter of Mars is 6794 km. Let's try expressing this in miles.

CAUTION! You can get into trouble if you are careless in applying the trick of taking the number whose units are to be converted and multiplying it by 1. For example, if we multiply the diameter by 1 expressed as (1.609 km)/(1 mi), we get

$$6794 \text{ km} \times 1 = 6794 \text{ km} \times \frac{1.609 \text{ km}}{1 \text{ mi}} = 10{,}930 \frac{\text{km}^2}{\text{mi}}$$

The unwanted units of km did not cancel, so this cannot be right. Furthermore, a mile is larger than a kilometer, so the diameter expressed in miles should be a smaller number than when expressed in kilometers.

The correct approach is to write the number 1 so that the unwanted units *will* cancel. The number we are starting with is in kilometers, so we must write the number 1 with kilometers in the denominator ("downstairs" in the fraction). Thus, we express 1 as (1 mi)/(1.609 km):

$$6794 \text{ km} \times 1 = 6794 \text{ km} \times 1 \text{ mi}/1.609 \text{ km}$$
$$= 4222 \text{ km} \times \text{mi/km} = 4222 \text{ mi}$$

Now the units of km cancel as they should, and the distance in miles is a smaller number than in kilometers (as it must be).

When discussing very small distances such as the size of an atom, astronomers often use the micrometer (μm) or the nanometer (nm). These are related to the meter as follows:

$$1 \text{ micrometer} = 1\ \mu\text{m} = 10^{-6} \text{ m}$$
$$1 \text{ nanometer} = 1 \text{ nm} = 10^{-9} \text{ m}$$

Thus, 1 μm = 10^3 nm. (Note that the micrometer is often called the micron.)

The basic unit of time is the second (s). It is related to other units of time as follows:

$$1 \text{ minute (min)} = 60 \text{ s}$$
$$1 \text{ hour (h)} = 3600 \text{ s}$$
$$1 \text{ day (d)} = 86{,}400 \text{ s}$$
$$1 \text{ year (y)} = 3.156 \times 10^{7} \text{ s}$$

(continued on the next page)

BOX 1-3 *(continued)*

In the SI system, speed is properly measured in meters per second (m/s). Quite commonly, however, speed is also expressed in km/s and mi/h:

$$1 \text{ km/s} = 10^3 \text{ m/s}$$

$$1 \text{ km/s} = 2237 \text{ mi/h}$$

$$1 \text{ mi/h} = 0.447 \text{ m/s}$$

$$1 \text{ mi/h} = 1.47 \text{ ft/s}$$

In addition to using kilograms, astronomers sometimes express mass in grams (g) and in solar masses ($M_\odot$), where the subscript $\odot$ is the symbol denoting the Sun. It is especially convenient to use solar masses when discussing the masses of stars and galaxies. These units are related to each other as follows:

$$1 \text{ kg} = 1000 \text{ g}$$

$$1 M_\odot = 1.99 \times 10^{30} \text{ kg}$$

CAUTION! You may be wondering why we have not given a conversion between kilograms and pounds. The reason is that these units do not refer to the same physical quantity! A kilogram is a unit of *mass,* which is a measure of the amount of material in an object. By contrast, a pound is a unit of *weight,* which tells you how strongly gravity pulls on that object's material. Consider a person who weighs 110 pounds on Earth, corresponding to a mass of 50 kg. Gravity is only about one-sixth as strong on the Moon as it is on Earth, so on the Moon this person would weigh only one-sixth of 110 pounds, or about 18 pounds. But that person's mass of 50 kg is the same on the Moon; wherever you go in the universe, you take all of your material along with you. We will explore the relationship between mass and weight in Chapter 4.

Thus, the average distance between the Sun and Jupiter can be conveniently stated as 5.2 AU.

ANIMATION 1.1

To talk about distances to the stars, astronomers use two different units of length. The **light-year** (abbreviated **ly**) is the distance that light travels in one year. This is a useful concept because the speed of light in empty space always has the same value, 3.00×10^5 km/s (kilometers per second) or 1.86×10^5 mi/s (miles per second). In terms of kilometers or astronomical units, one light-year is given by

$$1 \text{ ly} = 9.46 \times 10^{12} \text{ km} = 63{,}240 \text{ AU}$$

This distance is roughly equal to 6 trillion miles.

CAUTION! Keep in mind that despite its name, the light-year is a unit of distance and *not* a unit of time. As an example, Proxima Centauri, the nearest star other than the Sun, is a distance of 4.2 light-years from Earth. This means that light takes 4.2 years to travel to us from Proxima Centauri.

Physicists often measure interstellar distances in light-years because the speed of light is one of nature's most important numbers. But many astronomers prefer to use another unit of length, the *parsec,* because its definition is closely related to a method of measuring distances to the stars.

Imagine taking a journey far into space, beyond the orbits of the outer planets. As you look back toward the Sun, Earth's orbit subtends a smaller angle in the sky the farther you are from the Sun. As Figure 1-14 shows, the distance at which 1 AU subtends an angle of 1 arcsec is defined as 1 **parsec** (abbreviated **pc**):

$$1 \text{ pc} = 3.09 \times 10^{13} \text{ km} = 3.26 \text{ ly}$$

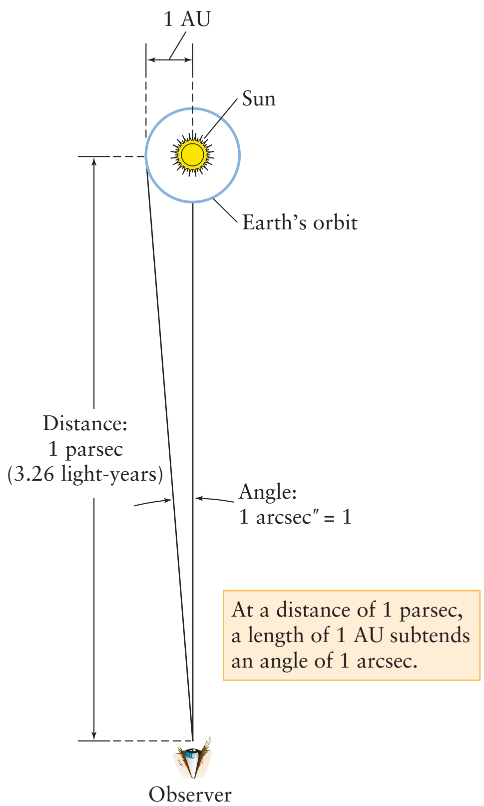


Figure 1-14

A Parsec The parsec, a unit of length commonly used by astronomers, is equal to 3.26 light-years. The parsec is defined as the distance at which 1 AU perpendicular to the observer's line of sight subtends an angle of 1 arcsec.

The distance from Earth to Proxima Centauri can be stated as 1.3 pc or as 4.2 ly. Whether you choose to use parsecs or light-years is a matter of personal taste.

For even greater distances, astronomers commonly use **kiloparsecs** and **megaparsecs** (abbreviated **kpc** and **Mpc**). As we saw before, these prefixes simply mean "thousand" and "million," respectively:

$$1 \text{ kiloparsec} = 1 \text{ kpc} = 1000 \text{ pc} = 10^3 \text{ pc}$$

$$1 \text{ megaparsec} = 1 \text{ Mpc} = 1{,}000{,}000 \text{ pc} = 10^6 \text{ pc}$$

For example, the distance from Earth to the center of our Milky Way Galaxy is about 8 kpc, and the galaxy shown in Figure 1-9 is about 11 Mpc away.

Some astronomers prefer to talk about thousands or millions of light-years rather than kiloparsecs and megaparsecs. Once again, the choice is a matter of personal taste. As a general rule, astronomers use whatever yardsticks seem best suited for the issue at hand and do not restrict themselves to one system of measurement. For example, an astronomer might say that the supergiant star Antares has a diameter of 860 million kilometers and is located at a distance of 185 parsecs from Earth. The *Cosmic Connections* figure on page 16 shows where these different systems are useful.

1-8 Astronomy is an adventure of the human mind

An underlying theme of this book is that the universe is rational. It is not a hodgepodge of unrelated things behaving in unpredictable ways. Rather, we find strong evidence that fundamental laws of physics govern the nature of the universe and the behavior of everything in it. These unifying concepts enable us to explore realms far removed from our earthly experience. Thus, a scientist can do experiments in a laboratory to determine the properties of light or the behavior of atoms and then use this knowledge to investigate the structure of the universe.

Studying the universe benefits our lives on Earth

The discovery of fundamental laws of nature has had a profound influence on humanity. These laws have led to an immense number of practical applications that have fundamentally transformed commerce, medicine, entertainment, transportation, and other aspects of our lives. In particular, space technology has given us instant contact with any point on the globe through communication satellites, precise navigation to any point on Earth using signals from the satellites of the Global Positioning System (GPS), and accurate weather forecasts from meteorological satellites (Figure 1-15).

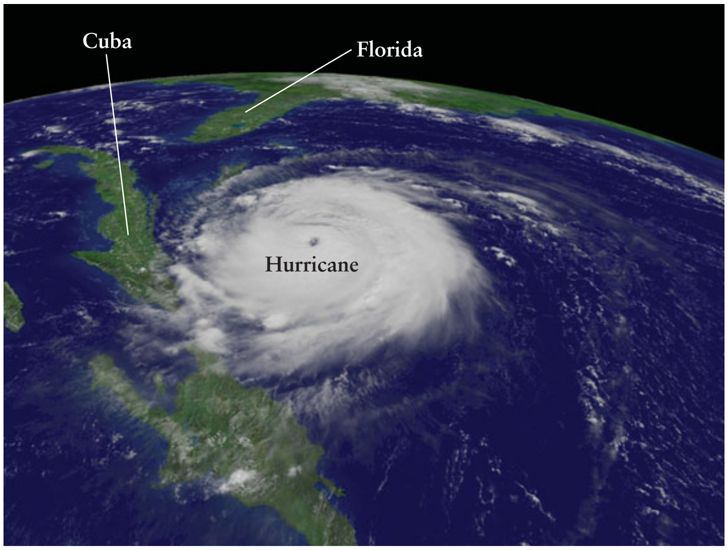


Figure 1-15 R I V U X G

A Hurricane Seen from Space This image of Hurricane Frances was made on September 2, 2004, by *GOES-12* (*Geostationary Operational Environmental Satellite 12*). A geostationary satellite like *GOES-12* orbits around Earth's equator every 24 hours, the same length of time it takes the planet to make a complete rotation. Hence, this satellite remains over the same spot on Earth, from which it can monitor the weather continuously. By tracking hurricanes from orbit, *GOES-12* makes it much easier for meteorologists to give early warning of these immense storms. The resulting savings in lives and property more than pay for the cost of the satellite. (NASA, NOAA)

As important as the applications of science are, the pursuit of scientific knowledge for its own sake is no less important. We are fortunate to live in an age in which this pursuit is in full flower. Just as explorers such as Columbus and Magellan discovered the true size of our planet in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, astronomers of the twenty-first century are exploring the universe to an extent that is unparalleled in human history. Indeed, even the voyages into space imagined by such great science fiction writers as Jules Verne and H. G. Wells pale in comparison to today's reality. Over a few short decades, humans have walked on the Moon, sent robot spacecraft to dig into the Martian soil and explore the satellites of Saturn, and used the most powerful telescopes ever built to probe the limits of the observable universe. Never before has so much been revealed in so short a time.

As you proceed through this book, you will learn about the tools that scientists use to explore the natural world, as well as what they observe with these tools. But, most important, you will see how astronomers build from their observations an understanding of the universe in which we live. It is this search for understanding that makes science more than merely a collection of data and elevates it to one of the great adventures of the human mind. It is an adventure that will continue as long as there are mysteries in the universe—an adventure we hope you will come to appreciate and share.

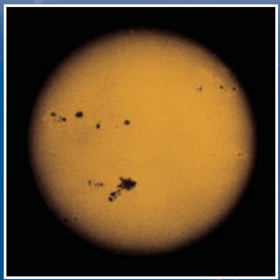
Key Words

Terms preceded by an asterisk (*) are discussed in the Boxes.

angle, p. 8
angular diameter (angular size), p. 8
angular distance, p. 8
angular measure, p. 8
arcminute (′, minute of arc), p. 9
arcsecond (″, second of arc), p. 9
astronomical unit (AU), p. 12

COSMIC CONNECTIONS Sizes in the Universe

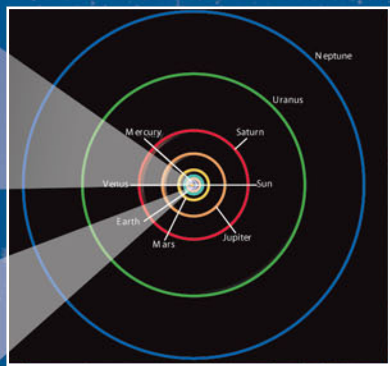
Powers-of-ten notation provides a convenient way to express the sizes of astronomical objects and distances in space. This illustration suggests the immense distances within our solar system, the far greater distances between the stars within our Milky Way Galaxy, and the truly cosmic distances between galaxies.



Sun: diameter = 1.39×10^6 km

Earth: diameter = 6.38×10^3 km

The Sun, Earth, and other planets are members of our solar system

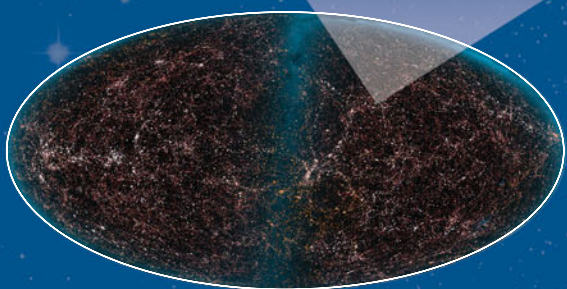


Diameter of Neptune's orbit: 60 AU
1 AU (astronomical unit) = 1.50×10^8 km
= average Earth-Sun distance

The Sun is a typical star.
Typical distances between our neighboring stars = 1 to 5 ly
1 ly = distance that light travels in one year = 6.32×10^4 AU

Our Sun is one of more than 10^{11} stars in the Milky Way Galaxy.
Distance from the center of the Milky Way to the Sun = 2.8×10^4 ly

Galaxies are grouped into clusters, which can be up to 10^7 ly across.



Each of the 1.6×10^6 dots in this map of the entire sky represents a relatively nearby galaxy. This is a tiny fraction of the number of galaxies in the observable universe.

Big Bang, p. 7
black hole, p. 6
degree (°), p. 8
exponent, p. 10
galaxy, p. 6
hypothesis, p. 2
kiloparsec (kpc), p. 15
laws of physics, p. 3
light-year (ly), p. 14
megaparsec (Mpc), p. 15
meteorite, p. 4
model, p. 2
nebula (*plural* nebulae), p. 6
Newtonian mechanics, p. 3
parsec (pc), p. 14
power of ten, p. 10
powers-of-ten notation, p. 10
pulsar, p. 6
quasar, p. 7
scientific method, p. 2
*SI units, p. 13
*small-angle formula, p. 9
solar system, p. 4
subtend (an angle), p. 8
supernova (*plural* supernovae), p. 6
theory, p. 2

Key Ideas

Astronomy, Science, and the Nature of the Universe: The universe is comprehensible. The scientific method is a procedure for formulating hypotheses about the universe. These are tested by observation or experimentation in order to build consistent models or theories that accurately describe phenomena in nature.

• Observations of the heavens have helped scientists discover some of the fundamental laws of physics. The laws of physics are in turn used by astronomers to interpret their observations.

The Solar System: Exploration of the planets provides information about the origin and evolution of the solar system, as well as about the history and resources of Earth.

Stars and Nebulae: Studying the stars and nebulae helps us learn about the origin and history of the Sun and the solar system.

Galaxies: Observations of galaxies tell us about the origin and history of the universe.

Angular Measure: Astronomers use angles to denote the positions and sizes of objects in the sky. The size of an angle is measured in degrees, arcminutes, and arcseconds.

Powers-of-Ten Notation is a convenient shorthand system for writing numbers. It allows very large and very small numbers to be expressed in a compact form.

Units of Distance: Astronomers use a variety of distance units. These include the astronomical unit (the average distance from Earth to the Sun), the light-year (the distance that light travels in one year), and the parsec.

Questions

Review Questions

1. What is the difference between a hypothesis and a theory?
2. What is the difference between a theory and a law of physics?
3. How are scientific theories tested?
4. Describe the role that skepticism plays in science.
5. Describe one reason why it is useful to have telescopes in space.
6. What caused the craters on the Moon?
7. What are meteorites? Why are they important for understanding the history of the solar system?
8. What makes the Sun and stars shine?
9. What role do nebulae like the Orion Nebula play in the life stories of stars?
10. What is the difference between a solar system and a galaxy?
11. What are degrees, arcminutes, and arcseconds used for? What are the relationships among these units of measure?
12. How many arcseconds equal 1°?
13. With the aid of a diagram, explain what it means to say that the Moon subtends an angle of ½°.
14. What is an exponent? How are exponents used in powers-of-ten notation?
15. What are the advantages of using powers-of-ten notation?
16. Write the following numbers using powers-of-ten notation: (**a**) ten million, (**b**) sixty thousand, (**c**) four one-thousandths, (**d**) thirty-eight billion, (**e**) your age in months.
17. How is an astronomical unit (AU) defined? Give an example of a situation in which this unit of measure would be convenient to use.
18. What is the advantage to the astronomer of using the light-year as a unit of distance?
19. What is a parsec? How is it related to a kiloparsec and to a megaparsec?
20. Give the word or phrase that corresponds to the following standard abbreviations: (**a**) km, (**b**) cm, (**c**) s, (**d**) km/s, (**e**) mi/h, (**f**) m, (**g**) m/s, (**h**) h, (**i**) y, (**j**) g, (**k**) kg. Which of these are units of speed? (*Hint:* You may have to refer to a dictionary. All of these abbreviations should be part of your working vocabulary.)
21. In the original (1977) *Star Wars* movie, Han Solo praises the speed of his spaceship by saying, "It's the ship that made the Kessel run in less than 12 parsecs!" Explain why this statement is obvious misinformation.
22. A reporter once described a light-year as "the time it takes light to reach us traveling at the speed of light." How would you correct this statement?

Advanced Questions

Questions preceded by an asterisk (*) involve topics discussed in the Boxes.

> **Problem-solving tips and tools**
>
> The small-angle formula, given in Box 1-1, relates the size of an astronomical object to the angle it subtends. Box 1-3 illustrates how to convert from one unit of measure to another. An object traveling at speed v for a time t covers a distance d given by $d = vt$; for example, a car traveling at 90 km/h (v) for 3 hours (t) covers a distance d = (90 km/h) (3 h) = 270 km. Similarly, the time t required to cover a given distance d at speed v is $t = d/v$; for example, if d = 270 km and v = 90 km/h, then t = (270 km)/(90 km/h) = 3 hours.

23. What is the meaning of the letters R I V U X G that appear under some of the figures in this chapter? Why in each case is one of the letters highlighted? (*Hint:* See the Preface that precedes Chapter 1.)

24. The diameter of the Sun is 1.4×10^{11} cm, and the distance to the nearest star, Proxima Centauri, is 4.2 ly. Suppose you want to build an exact scale model of the Sun and Proxima Centauri, and you are using a ball 30 cm in diameter to represent the Sun. In your scale model, how far away would Proxima Centauri be from the Sun? Give your answer in kilometers, using powers-of-ten notation.

25. How many Suns would it take, laid side by side, to reach the nearest star? Use powers-of-ten notation. (*Hint:* See the preceding question.)

26. A hydrogen atom has a radius of about 5×10^{-9} cm. The radius of the observable universe is about 14 billion light-years. How many times larger than a hydrogen atom is the observable universe? Use powers-of-ten notation.

27. The Sun's mass is 1.99×10^{30} kg, three-quarters of which is hydrogen. The mass of a hydrogen atom is 1.67×10^{-27} kg. How many hydrogen atoms does the Sun contain? Use powers-of-ten notation.

28. The average distance from the Earth to the Sun is 1.496×10^{8} km. Express this distance (**a**) in light-years and (**b**) in parsecs. Use powers-of-ten notation. (**c**) Are light-years or parsecs useful units for describing distances of this size? Explain.

29. The speed of light is 3.00×10^{8} m/s. How long does it take light to travel from the Sun to Earth? Give your answer in seconds, using powers-of-ten notation. (*Hint:* See the preceding question.)

30. When the *Voyager 2* spacecraft sent back pictures of Neptune during its flyby of that planet in 1989, the spacecraft's radio signals traveled for 4 hours at the speed of light to reach Earth. How far away was the spacecraft? Give your answer in kilometers, using powers-of-ten notation. (*Hint:* See the preceding question.)

31. The star Altair is 5.15 pc from Earth. (**a**) What is the distance to Altair in kilometers? Use powers-of-ten notation. (**b**) How long does it take for light emanating from Altair to reach Earth? Give your answer in years. (*Hint:* You do not need to know the value of the speed of light.)

32. The age of the universe is about 13.7 billion years. What is this age in seconds? Use powers-of-ten notation.

***33.** Explain where the number 206,265 in the small-angle formula comes from.

***34.** At what distance would a person have to hold a European 2-euro coin (which has a diameter of about 2.6 cm) in order for the coin to subtend an angle of (**a**) 1°? (**b**) 1 arcmin? (**c**) 1 arcsec? Give your answers in meters.

***35.** A person with good vision can see details that subtend an angle of as small as 1 arcminute. If two dark lines on an eye chart are 2 millimeters apart, how far can such a person be from the chart and still be able to tell that there are two distinct lines? Give your answer in meters.

***36.** The average distance to the Moon is 384,000 km, and the Moon subtends an angle of $\frac{1}{2}$°. Use this information to calculate the diameter of the Moon in kilometers.

***37.** Suppose your telescope can give you a clear view of objects and features that subtend angles of at least 2 arcsec. What is the diameter in kilometers of the smallest crater you can see on the Moon? (*Hint:* See the preceding question.)

***38.** On April 18, 2006, the planet Venus was a distance of 0.869 AU from Earth. The diameter of Venus is 12,104 km. What was the angular size of Venus as seen from Earth on April 18, 2006? Give your answer in arcminutes.

***39.** (**a**) Use the information given in the caption to Figure 1-7 to determine the angular size of the Orion Nebula. Give your answer in degrees. (**b**) How does the angular diameter of the Orion Nebula compare to the angular diameter of the Moon?

Discussion Questions

40. Scientists assume that "reality is rational." Discuss what this means and the thinking behind it.

41. All scientific knowledge is inherently provisional. Discuss whether this is a weakness or a strength of the scientific method.

42. How do astronomical observations differ from those of other sciences?

Web/eBook Questions

WEB LINK 1.1

43. Use the links given in the *Universe* Web site or eBook, Chapter 1, to learn about the Orion Nebula (Figure 1-7). Can the nebula be seen with the naked eye? Does the nebula stand alone, or is it part of a larger cloud of interstellar material? What has been learned by examining the Orion Nebula with telescopes sensitive to infrared light?

44. Use the links given in the *Universe* Web site or eBook, Chapter 1, to learn more about the Crab Nebula (Figure 1-8). When did observers on Earth see the supernova that created this nebula? Does the nebula emit any radiation other than visible light? What kind of object is at the center of the nebula?

AIMM 1.1

45. Access the AIMM (Active Integrated Media Module) called "Small-Angle Toolbox" in Chapter 1 of the *Universe* Web site or eBook. Use this to determine the diameters in kilometers of the Sun, Saturn, and Pluto given the following distances and angular sizes:

Object	Distance (km)	Angular size (″)
Sun	1.5×10^{8}	1800
Saturn	1.5×10^{9}	16.5
Pluto	6.3×10^{9}	0.06

Activities

Observing Projects

46. On a dark, clear, moonless night, can you see the Milky Way from where you live? If so, briefly describe its appearance. If not, what seems to be interfering with your ability to see the Milky Way?

47. Look up at the sky on a clear, cloud-free night. Is the Moon in the sky? If so, does it interfere with your ability to see the fainter stars? Why do you suppose astronomers prefer to schedule their observations on nights when the Moon is not in the sky?

48. Look up at the sky on a clear, cloud-free night and note the positions of a few prominent stars relative to such reference markers as rooftops, telephone poles, and treetops. Also note the location from where you make your observations. A few hours later, return to that location and again note the positions of the same bright stars that you observed earlier. How have their positions changed? From these changes, can you deduce the general direction in which the stars appear to be moving?

49. If your book comes with a CD-ROM, use it to install the *Starry Night Enthusiast™* planetarium software on your computer and run this program to determine when the Moon is visible today from your location. You will see that the Moon can be seen in the daytime as well as at night. Note that the **Time Flow Rate** is set to **1x,** indicating that time is running forward at the normal rate. Set the **Time Flow Rate** to **1 minute** and find the time of moonset at your location. Determine which, if any, of the following planets are visible tonight: Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn. Feel free to experiment with *Starry Night Enthusiast™*.

Operating Hints: (1) To see the sky from your actual location on Earth, select **Set Home Location . . .** in the **File** menu (on a Macintosh, this command is found under the **Starry Night Enthusiast 5.0** menu). Click the **List** tab in the Home Location dialog box; then select the name of your city or town and click the **Save As Home Location** button. You can always return to this starting screen by clicking the **Home** button in the toolbar. (2) To change your viewing direction, move the mouse in the view. When the mouse cursor appears as a little hand, hold down the mouse button (on a Windows computer, the left button) and drag the mouse; this action will move the sky and change the gaze direction. (3) Use the toolbar at the top of the main window to change the time and date appropriate to the display and to adjust the time flow rate, as explained above. (4) You can use the **Find . . .** command in the **Edit** menu or click the **Find** tab on the left side of the main view window to open the Find pane to locate specific planets or stars by name. (5) To learn about any object in the sky, point the cursor at the object. A panel of information about the chosen object will appear on the display. The position of this information panel and its content will depend upon the selected options. These options can be altered from the **Preferences** item in the **File** menu (on a Macintosh, the **Preferences** item is under the **Starry Night Enthusiast 5.0** menu). Select **Cursor Tracking (HUD)** in the left-hand edit box in the Preferences dialog. You can then select the information to be displayed and the position of this information panel. Another way to get information about an object is to position the mouse cursor over the object in the main view window and double-click. This will open the **Info** side-pane which includes specific information about the chosen object under several headings. You can expand and collapse the layers beneath these headings by clicking the + or − icons to the left of the heading label (▶ and ▼ icons on a Macintosh).

You can find further information about the program and its many modes of operation in the *Starry Night Enthusiast™* manual (in *Starry Night Enthusiast™*, select **User's Guide** in the **Help** menu).

50. Use the *Starry Night Enthusiast™* program to investigate the Milky Way Galaxy. Select **Deep Space > Local Universe** in the **Favourites** menu. Click and hold the **minus (−)** symbol in the **Zoom** control on the toolbar to adjust the field of view to an appropriate value for this image of the Milky Way. A foreground image of astronaut's feet may be superimposed upon this view. Click on **View > Feet** to remove this foreground, if desired. The view shows the Milky Way near the center of the window against a background of distant galaxies as seen from a point in space 282,000 light-years from the Sun. To center the Milky Way in the view, position the mouse cursor over the Milky Way and click and hold the mouse button (on a two-button mouse, click the right button). Select **Centre** from the drop down menu that appears. (**a**) To view the Milky Way from different angles, hold down the **SHIFT** key on the keyboard. The cursor should turn into a small square surrounded by four small triangles. Then hold down the mouse button (the left button on a two-button mouse) and drag the mouse in order to change the viewing angle. This will be equivalent to your moving around the galaxy, viewing it against different backgrounds of both near and far galaxies. How would you describe the shape of the Milky Way? (**b**) You can zoom in and zoom out on this galaxy using the Zoom buttons at the right side of the toolbar. (c) Another way to zoom in on the view is to change the elevation of the viewing location. Click the **Find** tab at the left of the view window and double-click the entry for the Sun. This will center the view on the Sun. Now use the elevation buttons to the left of the **Home** button in the toolbar to move closer to the Sun. Move in until you can see the planets in their orbits around the Sun, then zoom back out until you can see the entire Milky Way Galaxy again. Are the Sun and planets located at the center of the Milky Way? How would you describe their location?

Collaborative Exercises

51. A scientific theory is fundamentally different than the everyday use of the word "theory." List and describe any three scientific theories of your choice and creatively imagine an additional three hypothetical theories that are not scientific. Briefly describe what is scientific and what is nonscientific about each of these theories.

52. Angular measure describes how far apart two objects appear to an observer. From where you are currently sitting, estimate the angular distance between the floor and the ceiling at the front of the room you are sitting in, the angular distance between the two people sitting closest to you, and the angular size of a clock or an exit sign on the wall. Draw sketches to illustrate each answer and describe how each of your answers would change if you were standing in the very center of the room.

53. Astronomers use powers of ten to describe the distances to objects. List an object or place that is located at very roughly each of the following distances from you: 10^{-2} m, 10^{0} m, 10^{1} m, 10^{3} m, 10^{7} m, 10^{10} m, and 10^{20} m.

Why Astronomy?

by Sandra M. Faber

As you study astronomy, you may ask, "Why am I studying this subject? What good is it for people in general and for me in particular?" Admittedly, astronomy does not offer the same practical benefits as other sciences, so how can it be important to your life?

On the most basic level, I think of astronomy as providing the ultimate background for human history. Recorded history goes back about 3000 years. For knowledge of the time before that, we consult archeologists and anthropologists about early human history and paleontologists, biologists, and geologists about the evolution of life and of our planet—altogether going back some five billion years. Astronomy tells us about the time before that, the ten billion years or so when the Sun, solar system, and Milky Way Galaxy formed, and even about the origin of the universe in the Big Bang. Knowledge of astronomy is part of a well-educated person's view of history.

Astronomy challenges our belief system and impels us to put our "philosophical house" in order. For example, the Bible says the world and everything in it were created in six days by the hand of God. However, according to the ancient Egyptians, the Earth arose spontaneously from the infinite waters of the eternal universe, called Nun. Alaskan legends teach that the world was created by the conscious imaginings of a deity named Father Raven.

Modern astronomy, supported by physics and observations, differs from these stories of the creation of Earth. Astronomers believe that the Sun formed about five billion years ago by gravitational collapse from a dense cloud of interstellar gas and dust. At the same time, and over a period of several hundred thousand years, the planets condensed within the swirling solar nebula. Astronomers have actually seen young stars form in this way.

At issue here, really, is the question of how we are to gain information about the nature of the physical world—whether by revelation and intuition or by logic and observation. Where science stops and faith begins is a thorny issue for everyone, but particularly for astronomers—and for astronomy students.

Astronomy cultivates our notions about cosmic time and cosmic evolution. Given the short span of human life, it is all too easy to overlook that the universe is a dynamic place. This idea implies fragility—if something can change, it might even some day disappear. For instance, in another five billion years or so, the Sun will swell up and brighten to 1000 times its present luminosity, incinerating the Earth in the process. This is far enough in the future that neither you nor I need to feel any personal responsibility for preparing to meet this challenge. However, other cosmic catastrophes will inevitably occur before then. The Earth will be hit by a sizable piece of space debris—craters show that this happens every few million years or so. Enormous volcanic eruptions have occurred in the past and will certainly occur again. Another Ice Age is virtually certain to begin within the next 20,000 years, unless we first cook the Earth ourselves by burning too much fossil fuel.

Such common notions as the inevitability of human progress, the desirability of endless economic growth, and the Earthís ability to support its human population are all based on limited experience—they will probably not prove viable in the long run. Consequently, we must rethink who we are as a species and what is our proper activity on Earth. These long-term problems involve the whole human race and are vital to our survival and well-being. Astronomy is essential to developing a perspective on human existence and its relation to the cosmos.

Many astronomers believe that the ultimate, proper concept of "home" for the human race is our universe. It seems increasingly likely that a large number of other universes exist, with the vast majority incapable of harboring intelligent life as we know it. The parallel with Earth is striking. Among the solar system planets, only Earth can support human life. Among the great number of planets in our galaxy, only a small fraction may be such that we can call them home. The fraction of hospitable universes is likely to be smaller still. It seems, then, that our universe is the ultimate "home," a sanctuary in a vast sea of inhospitable universes.

I began this essay by talking about history and ended with issues that border on the ethical and religious. Astronomy is like that: It offers a modern-day version of Genesis—and of the Apocalypse, too. I hope that during this course you will be able to take time out to contemplate the broader implications of what you are studying. This is one of the rare opportunities in life to think about who you are and where you and the human race are going. Don't miss it.

Sandra M. Faber is professor of astronomy at the University of California, Santa Cruz, and astronomer at Lick Observatory. She chaired the now legendary group of astronomers called the Seven Samurai, who surveyed the nearest 400 elliptical galaxies and discovered a new mass concentration, called the Great Attractor. Dr. Faber received the Bok Prize from Harvard University in 1978, was elected to the National Academy of Sciences in 1985, and in 1986 won the coveted Dannie Heineman Prize from the American Astronomical Society, in recognition of her sustained body of especially influential astronomical research.

2

Knowing the Heavens

It is a clear night at the Gemini North Observatory atop Mauna Kea, a dormant volcano on the island of Hawaii. As you gaze toward the north, as in this time-exposure photograph, you find that the stars are not motionless. Rather, they move in counterclockwise circles around a fixed point above the northern horizon. Stars close to this point never dip below the horizon, while stars farther from the fixed point rise in the east and set in the west. These motions fade from view when the Sun rises in the east and illuminates the sky. The Sun, too, arcs across the sky in the same manner as the stars. At day's end, when the Sun sets in the west, the panorama of stars is revealed for yet another night.

These observations are at the heart of *naked-eye astronomy*—the sort that requires no equipment but human vision. Naked-eye astronomy cannot tell us what the Sun is made of or how far away the stars are. For such purposes we need tools such as the Gemini Telescope, housed within the dome shown in the photograph. But by studying naked-eye astronomy, you will learn the answers to equally profound questions such as why there are seasons, why the night sky is different at different times of year, and why the night sky looks different in Australia than in North America. In discovering the answers to these questions, you will learn how the Earth moves through space and will begin to understand our true place in the cosmos.

R I **V** U X G

The Earth's rotation makes stars appear to trace out circles in the sky. (Gemini Observatory)

2-1 Naked-eye astronomy had an important place in civilizations of the past

WEB LINK 2.1

Positional astronomy—the study of the positions of objects in the sky and how these positions change—has roots that extend far back in time. Four to five thousand years ago, the inhabitants of the British Isles erected stone structures, such as Stonehenge, that suggest a preoccupation with the motions of the sky. Alignments of these stones appear to show where the Sun rose and set at key times during the year. Stone works of a different sort but with a similar astronomical purpose

Learning Goals

By reading the sections of this chapter, you will learn

2-1 The importance of astronomy in ancient civilizations around the world

2-2 That regions of the sky are divided around groups of stars called constellations

2-3 How the sky changes from night to night

2-4 How astronomers locate objects in the sky

2-5 What causes the seasons

2-6 The effect of changes in the direction of Earth's axis of rotation

2-7 The role of astronomy in measuring time

2-8 How the modern calendar developed

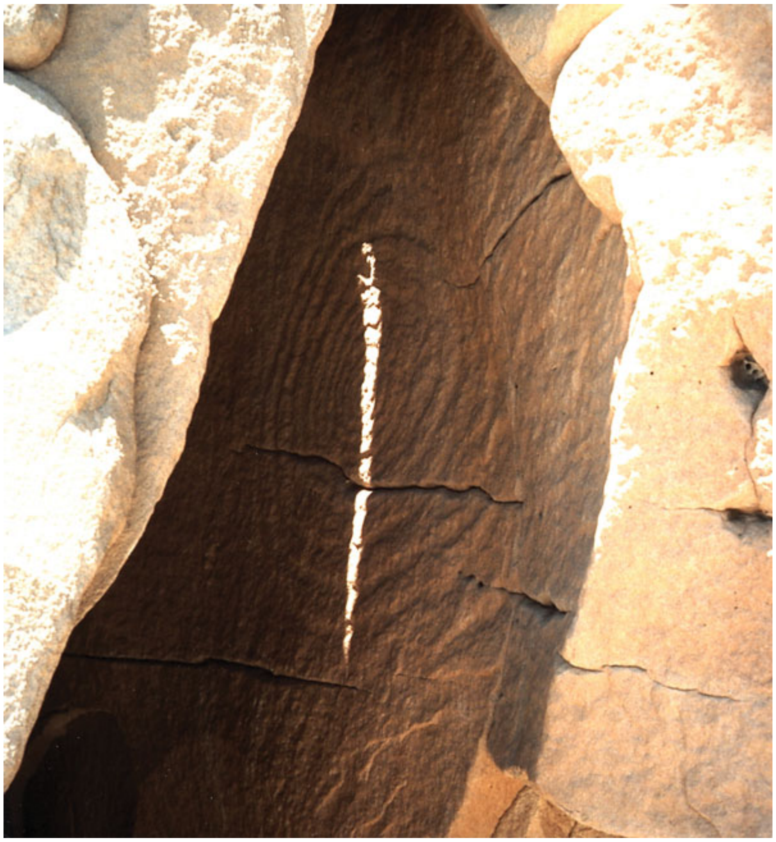


Figure 2-1 R I V U X G

The Sun Dagger at Chaco Canyon On the first day of winter, rays of sunlight passing between stone slabs bracket a spiral stone carving, or petroglyph, at Chaco Canyon in New Mexico. A single band of light strikes the center of the spiral on the first day of summer. This and other astronomically aligned petroglyphs were carved by the ancestral Puebloan culture between 850 and 1250 A.D. (Courtesy Karl Kernberger)

are found in the New World from the American Southwest to the Andes of Peru. The ancestral Puebloans (also called Anasazi) of modern-day New Mexico, Arizona, Utah, and Colorado created stone carvings that were illuminated by the Sun on the first days of summer or winter (Figure 2-1). At the Incan city of Machu Picchu in Peru, a narrow window carved in a rock 2 meters thick looks out on the sunrise on December 21 each year.

The astronomical knowledge of ancient peoples is the foundation of modern astronomy

Other ancient peoples designed buildings with astronomical orientations. The great Egyptian pyramids, built around 3000 B.C., are oriented north-south and east-west with an accuracy of far less than 1 degree. Similar alignments are found in the grand tomb of Shih Huang Ti (259 B.C.–210 B.C.), the first emperor of China.

Evidence of a highly sophisticated understanding of astronomy can be found in the written records of the Mayan civilization of central America. Mayan astronomers deduced by observation that the apparent motions of the planet Venus follow a cycle that repeats every 584 days. They also developed a technique for calculating the position of Venus on different dates. The Maya believed that Venus was associated with war, so such calculations were important for choosing the most promising dates on which to attack an enemy.

These archaeological discoveries bear witness to an awareness of naked-eye astronomy by the peoples of many cultures. Many of the concepts of modern positional astronomy come to us from these ancients, including the idea of dividing the sky into constellations.

2-2 Eighty-eight constellations cover the entire sky

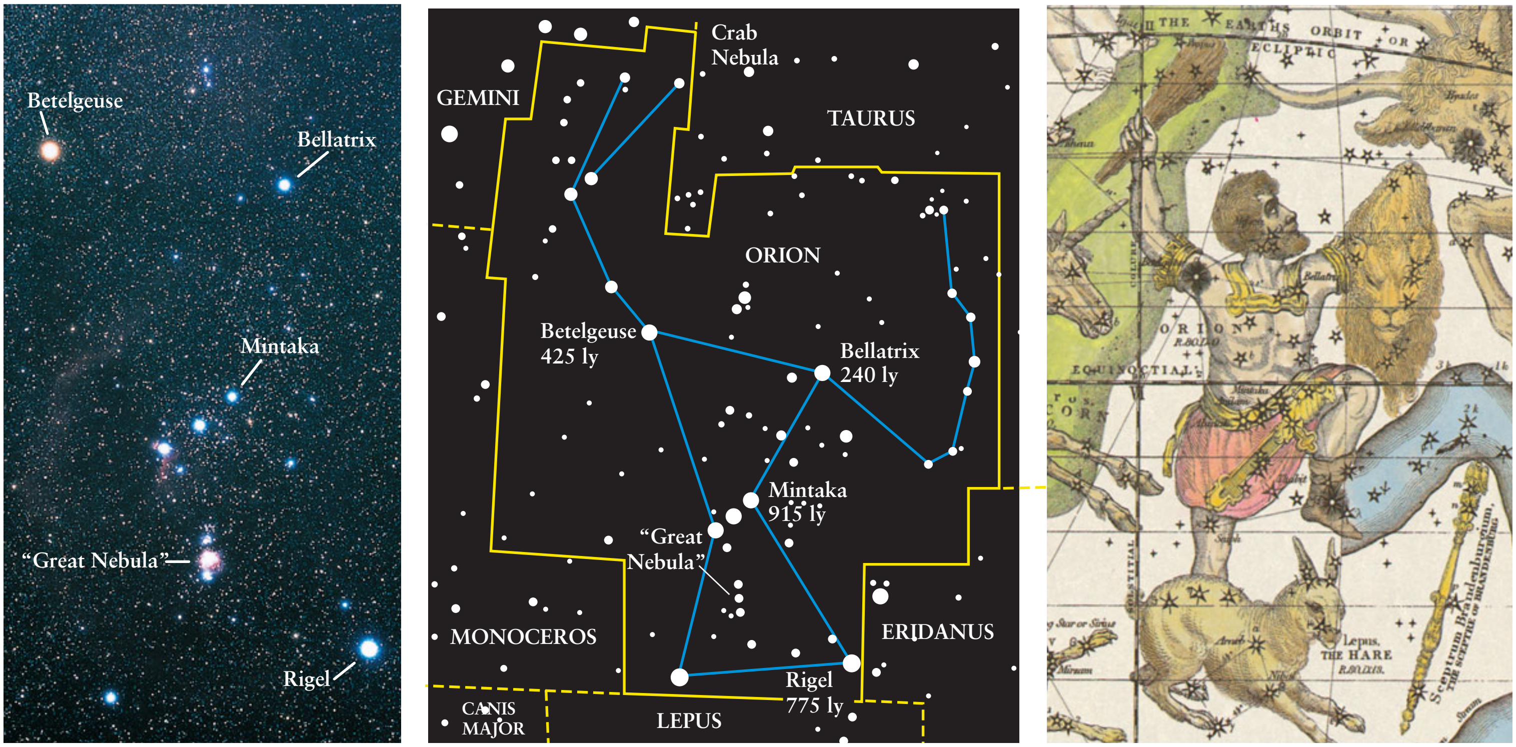
WEB LINK 2.2

Looking at the sky on a clear, dark night, you might think that you can see millions of stars. Actually, the unaided human eye can detect only about 6000 stars. Because half of the sky is below the horizon at any one time, you can see at most about 3000 stars. When ancient peoples looked at these thousands of stars, they imagined that groupings of stars traced out pictures in the sky. Astronomers still refer to these groupings, called **constellations** (from the Latin for "group of stars").

The constellations provide a convenient framework for stating the position of an object in the heavens

You may already be familiar with some of these pictures or patterns in the sky, such as the Big Dipper, which is actually part of the large constellation Ursa Major (the Great Bear). Many constellations, such as Orion in Figure 2-2, have names derived from the myths and legends of antiquity. Although some star groupings vaguely resemble the figures they are supposed to represent (see Figure 2-2*c*), most do not.

The term "constellation" has a broader definition in present-day astronomy. On modern star charts, the entire sky is divided into 88 regions, each of which is called a constellation. For example, the constellation Orion is now defined to be an irregular patch of sky whose borders are shown in Figure 2-2*b*. When astronomers refer to the "Great Nebula" M42 in Orion, they mean that as seen from Earth this nebula appears to be within Orion's



(a) (b) (c)

Figure 2-2 R I V U X G

Three Views of Orion The constellation Orion is easily seen on nights from December through March. **(a)** This photograph of Orion shows many more stars than can be seen with the naked eye. **(b)** A portion of a modern star atlas shows the distances in light-years (ly) to some of the stars in Orion. The yellow lines show the borders between Orion and its neighboring constellations (labeled in capitals). **(c)** This fanciful drawing from a star atlas published in 1835 shows Orion the Hunter as well as other celestial creatures. (a: Luke Dodd/Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers; c: Courtesy of Janus Publications)

patch of sky. Some constellations cover large areas of the sky (Ursa Major being one of the biggest) and others very small areas (Crux, the Southern Cross, being the smallest). But because the modern constellations cover the entire sky, every star lies in one constellation or another.

CAUTION! When you look at a constellation's star pattern, it is tempting to conclude that you are seeing a group of stars that are all relatively close together. In fact, most of these stars are nowhere near one another. As an example, Figure 2-2*b* shows the distances in light-years to four stars in Orion. Although Bellatrix (Arabic for "the Amazon") and Mintaka ("the belt") appear to be close to each other, Mintaka is actually more than 600 light-years farther away from us. The two stars only *appear* to be close because they are in nearly the same direction as seen from Earth. The same illusion often appears when you see an airliner's lights at night. It is very difficult to tell how far away a single bright light is, which is why you can mistake an airliner a few kilometers away for a star trillions of times more distant.

LOOKING DEEPER 2.1

The star names shown in Figure 2-2*b* are from the Arabic. For example, Betelgeuse means "armpit," which makes sense when you look at the star atlas drawing in Figure 2-2*c*. Other types of names are also used for stars. For example, Betelgeuse is also known as α Orionis because it is the brightest star in Orion (α, or alpha, is the first letter in the Greek alphabet).

CAUTION! A number of unscrupulous commercial firms offer to name a star for you for a fee. The money that they charge you for this "service" is real, but the star names are not; none of these names are recognized by astronomers. If you want to use astronomy to commemorate your name or the name of a friend or relative, consider making a donation to your local planetarium or science museum. The money will be put to much better use!

2-3 The appearance of the sky changes during the course of the night and from one night to the next

Go outdoors soon after dark, find a spot away from bright lights, and note the patterns of stars in the sky. Do the same a few hours later. You will find that the entire pattern of stars (as well as the Moon, if it is visible) has shifted its position. New constellations will have risen above the eastern horizon, and some will have disappeared below the western horizon. If you look again before dawn, you will see that the stars that were just rising in the east

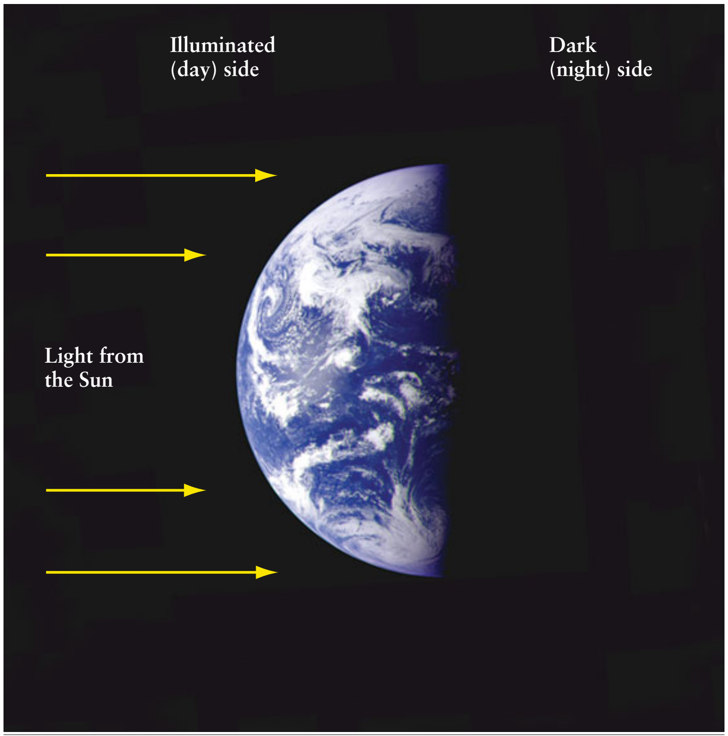


Figure 2-3 R I V U X G

Day and Night on the Earth At any moment, half of the Earth is illuminated by the Sun. As the Earth rotates from west to east, your location moves from the dark (night) hemisphere into the illuminated (day) hemisphere and back again. This image was recorded in 1992 by the *Galileo* spacecraft as it was en route to Jupiter. (JPL/NASA)

when the night began are now low in the western sky. This daily motion, or **diurnal motion,** of the stars is apparent in time-exposure photographs (see the photograph that opens this chapter).

By understanding the motions of the Earth through space, we can understand why the Sun and stars appear to move in the sky

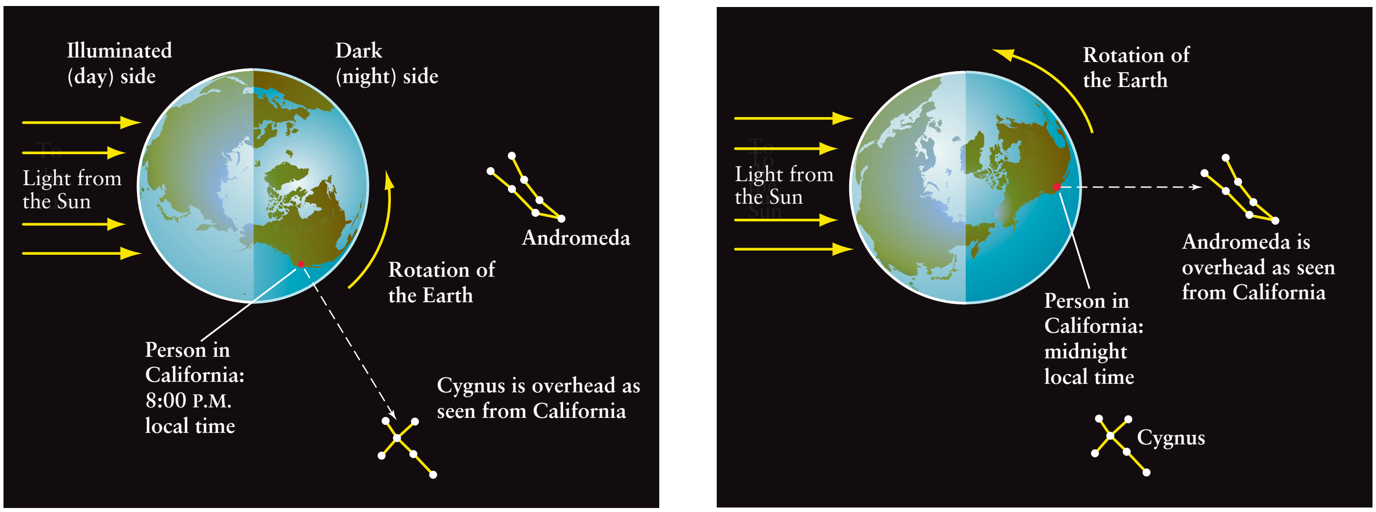
If you repeat your observations on the following night, you will find that the motions of the sky are almost but not quite the same. The same constellations rise in the east and set in the west, but a few minutes earlier than on the previous night. If you look again after a month, the constellations visible at a given time of night (say, midnight) will be noticeably different, and after six months you will see an almost totally different set of constellations. Only after a year has passed will the night sky have the same appearance as when you began.

Why does the sky go through diurnal motion? Why do the constellations slowly shift from one night to the next? As we will see, the answer to the first question is that the Earth *rotates* once a day around an axis from the north pole to the south pole, while the answer to the second question is that the Earth also *revolves* once a year around the Sun.

Diurnal Motion and the Earth's Rotation

To understand diurnal motion, note that at any given moment it is daytime on the half of the Earth illuminated by the Sun and nighttime on the other half (Figure 2-3). The Earth rotates from west to east, making one complete rotation every 24 hours, which is why there is a daily cycle of day and night. Because of this rotation, stars appear to us to rise in the east and set in the west, as do the Sun and Moon.

Figure 2-4 helps to further explain diurnal motion. It shows two views of the Earth as seen from a point above the north pole.



(a) Earth as seen from above the north pole

(b) 4 hours (one-sixth of a complete rotation) later

Figure 2-4

Why Diurnal Motion Happens The diurnal (daily) motion of the stars, the Sun, and the Moon is a consequence of the Earth's rotation. **(a)** This drawing shows the Earth from a vantage point above the north pole. In this drawing, for a person in California the local time is 8:00 P.M. and the constellation Cygnus is directly overhead. **(b)** Four hours later, the Earth has made one-sixth of a complete rotation to the east. As seen from Earth, the entire sky appears to have rotated to the west by one-sixth of a complete rotation. It is now midnight in California, and the constellation directly over California is Andromeda.

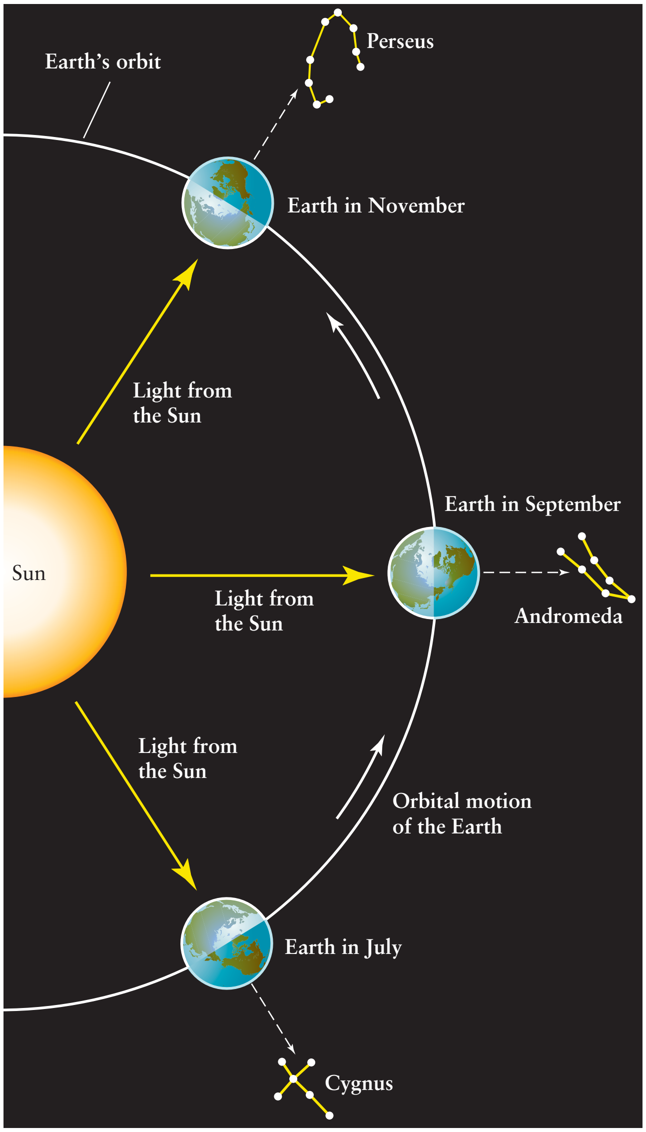


Figure 2-5

Why the Night Sky Changes During the Year As the Earth orbits around the Sun, the nighttime side of the Earth gradually turns toward different parts of the sky. Hence, the particular stars that you see in the night sky are different at different times of the year. This figure shows which constellation is overhead at midnight local time—when the Sun is on the opposite side of the Earth from your location—during different months for observers at midnorthern latitudes (including the United States). If you want to view the constellation Andromeda, the best time of the year to do it is in late September, when Andromeda is nearly overhead at midnight.

At the instant shown in Figure 2-4*a*, it is day in Asia but night in most of North America and Europe. Figure 2-4*b* shows the Earth 4 hours later. Four hours is one-sixth of a complete 24-hour day, so the Earth has made one-sixth of a rotation between Figures 2-4*a* and 2-4*b*. Europe is now in the illuminated half of the Earth (the Sun has risen in Europe), while Alaska has moved from the illuminated to the dark half of the Earth (the Sun has set in Alaska). For a person in California, in Figure 2-4*a* the time is 8:00 P.M. and the constellation Cygnus (the Swan) is directly overhead. Four hours later, the constellation over California is Andromeda (named for a mythological princess). Because the Earth rotates from west to east, it appears to us on Earth that the entire sky rotates around us in the opposite direction, from east to west.

Yearly Motion and the Earth's Orbit

We described earlier that in addition to the diurnal motion of the sky, the constellations visible in the night sky also change slowly over the course of a year. This happens because the Earth orbits, or revolves around, the Sun (Figure 2-5). Over the course of a year, the Earth makes one complete orbit, and the darkened, nighttime side of the Earth gradually turns toward different parts of the heavens. For example, as seen from the northern hemisphere, at midnight in late July the constellation Cygnus is close to overhead; at midnight in late September the constellation Andromeda is close to overhead; and at midnight in late November the constellation Perseus (commemorating a mythological hero) is close to overhead. If you follow a particular star on successive evenings, you will find that it rises approximately 4 minutes earlier each night, or 2 hours earlier each month.

Constellations and the Night Sky

Constellations can help you find your way around the sky. For example, if you live in the northern hemisphere, you can use the Big Dipper in Ursa Major to find the north direction by drawing a straight line through the two stars at the front of the Big Dipper's bowl (Figure 2-6). The first moderately bright star you come to is Polaris, also called the North Star because it is located almost directly over the Earth's north pole. If you draw a line from

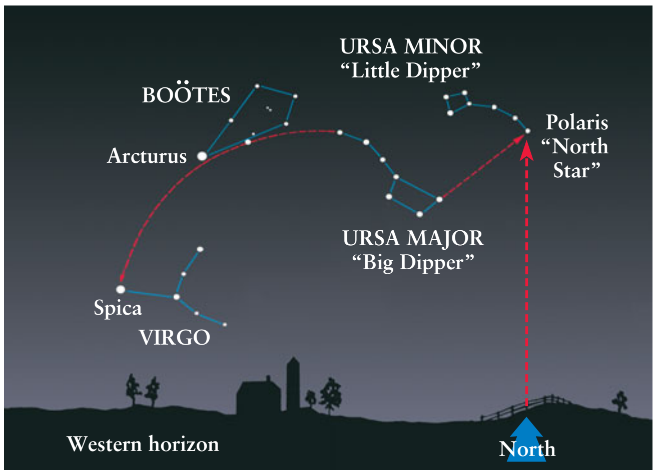


Figure 2-6

The Big Dipper as a Guide The North Star can be seen from anywhere in the northern hemisphere on any night of the year. This star chart shows how the Big Dipper can be used to point out the North Star as well as the brightest stars in two other constellations. The chart shows the sky at around 11 P.M. (daylight savings time) on August 1. Due to the Earth's orbital motion around the Sun, you will see this same view at 1 A.M. on July 1 and at 9 P.M. on September 1. The angular distance from Polaris to Spica is 102°.

Polaris straight down to the horizon, you will find the north direction.

As Figure 2-6 shows, by following the handle of the Big Dipper you can locate the bright reddish star Arcturus in Boötes (the Shepherd) and the prominent bluish star Spica in Virgo (the Virgin). The saying "Follow the arc to Arcturus and speed to Spica" may help you remember these stars, which are conspicuous in the evening sky during the spring and summer.

During winter in the northern hemisphere, you can see some of the brightest stars in the sky. Many of them are in the vicinity of the "winter triangle" (Figure 2-7), which connects bright stars in the constellations of Orion (the Hunter), Canis Major (the Large Dog), and Canis Minor (the Small Dog).

A similar feature, the "summer triangle," graces the summer sky in the northern hemisphere. This triangle connects the brightest stars in Lyra (the Harp), Cygnus (the Swan), and Aquila (the Eagle) (Figure 2-8). A conspicuous portion of the Milky Way forms a beautiful background for these constellations, which are nearly overhead during the middle of summer at midnight.

STARRY NIGHT A wonderful tool to help you find your way around the night sky is the planetarium program ***Starry Night Enthusiast™***, which is on the CD-ROM that accompanies certain print copies of this book. (You can also obtain ***Starry Night Enthusiast™*** separately.) In addition, at the end of this book you will find a set of selected star charts for the evening hours of all 12 months of the year. You may find stargazing an enjoyable experience, and ***Starry Night Enthusiast™*** and the star charts will help you identify many well-known constellations.

Note that all the star charts in this section and at the end of this book are drawn for an observer in the northern hemisphere. If you live in the southern hemisphere, you can see constellations that are not visible from the northern hemisphere, and vice versa. In the next section we will see why this is so.

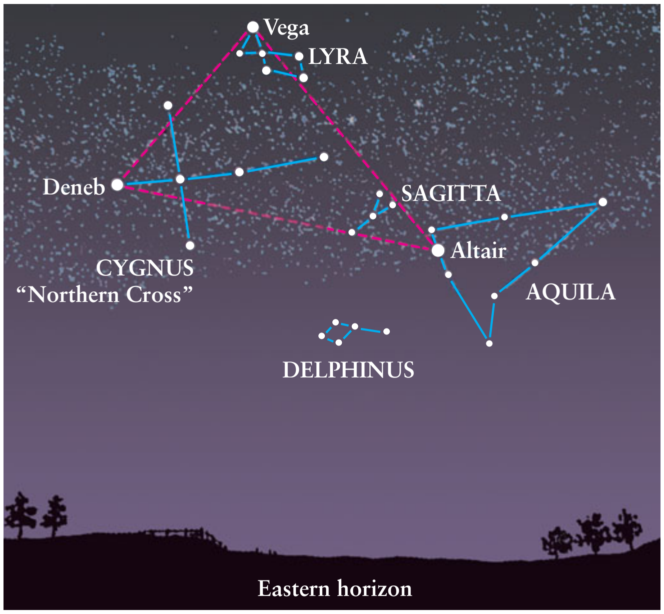


Figure 2-8

The "Summer Triangle" This star chart shows the eastern sky as it appears in the evening during spring and summer in the northern hemisphere (around 1 A.M. daylight savings time on June 1, around 11 P.M. on July 1, and around 9 P.M. on August 1). The angular distance from Deneb to Altair is about 38°. The constellations Sagitta (the Arrow) and Delphinus (the Dolphin) are much fainter than the three constellations that make up the triangle.

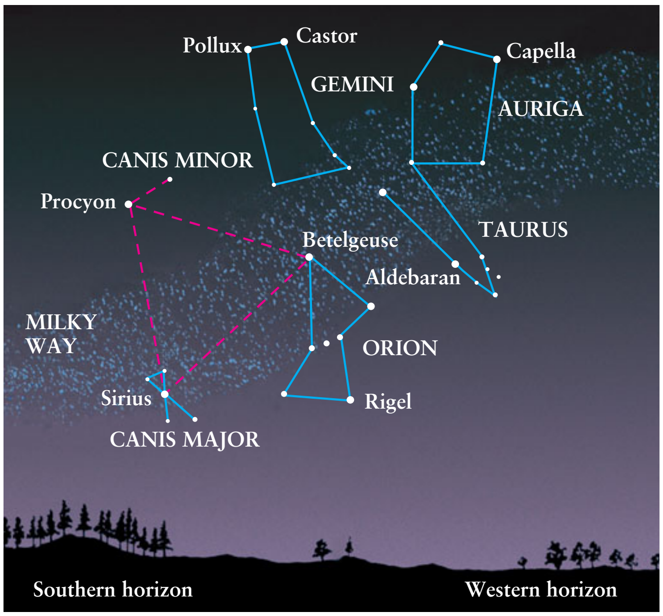


Figure 2-7

The "Winter Triangle" This star chart shows the view toward the southwest on a winter evening in the northern hemisphere (around midnight on January 1, 10 P.M. on February 1, or 8 P.M. on March 1). Three of the brightest stars in the sky make up the "winter triangle," which is about 26° on a side. In addition to the constellations involved in the triangle, the chart shows the prominent constellations Gemini (the Twins), Auriga (the Charioteer), and Taurus (the Bull).

2-4 It is convenient to imagine that the stars are located on a celestial sphere

Many ancient societies believed that all the stars are the same distance from the Earth. They imagined the stars to be bits of fire imbedded in the inner surface of an immense hollow sphere, called the **celestial sphere**, with the Earth at its center. In this picture of the universe, the Earth was fixed and did not rotate. Instead, the entire celestial sphere rotated once a day around the Earth from east to west, thereby causing the diurnal motion of the sky. The picture of a rotating celestial sphere fit well with naked-eye observations, and for its time was a useful model of how the

The concept of the imaginary celestial sphere helps us visualize the motions of stars in the sky

universe works. (We discussed the role of models in science in Section 1-1).

Today's astronomers know that this simple model of the universe is not correct. Diurnal motion is due to the rotation of the Earth, not the rest of the universe. Furthermore, as we learned when discussing the constellations in Section 2-2, the stars are not all at the same distance from Earth. Indeed, the stars that you can see with the naked eye range from 4.2 to more than 1000 light-years away, and telescopes allow us to see objects at distances of billions of light-years.

Thus, astronomers now recognize that the celestial sphere is an *imaginary* object that has no basis in physical reality. Nonetheless, the celestial sphere model remains a useful tool of positional astronomy. If we imagine, as did the ancients, that the Earth is stationary and that the celestial sphere rotates around us, it is relatively easy to specify the directions to different objects in the sky and to visualize the motions of these objects.

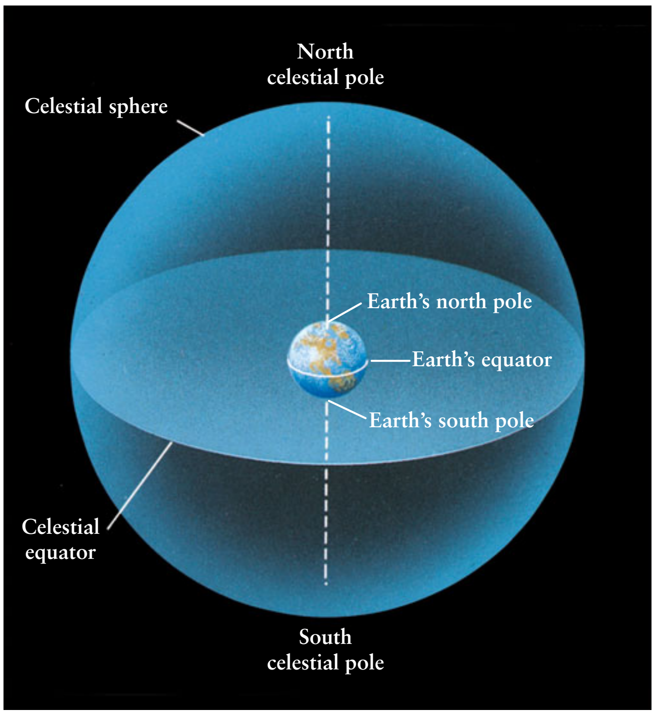
Figure 2-9 depicts the celestial sphere, with the Earth at its center. (A truly proportional drawing would show the celestial sphere as being millions of times larger than the Earth.) We picture the stars as points of light that are fixed on the inner surface of the celestial sphere. If we project the Earth's equator out into space, we obtain the **celestial equator.** The celestial equator divides the sky into northern and southern hemispheres, just as the Earth's equator divides the Earth into two hemispheres.

If we project the Earth's north and south poles into space, we obtain the **north celestial pole** and the **south celestial pole.** The two celestial poles are where the Earth's axis of rotation (extended out into space) intersects the celestial sphere (see Figure 2-9). The star Polaris is less than 1° away from the north celestial pole, which is why it is called the North Star or the Pole Star.

The point in the sky directly overhead an observer anywhere on Earth is called that observer's **zenith.** The zenith and celestial sphere are shown in Figure 2-10 for an observer located at 35° north latitude (that is, at a location on the Earth's surface 35° north of the equator). The zenith is shown at the top of Figure 2-10, so the Earth and the celestial sphere appear "tipped" compared to Figure 2-9. At any time, an observer can see only half of the celestial sphere; the other half is below the horizon, hidden by the body of the Earth. The hidden half of the celestial sphere is darkly shaded in Figure 2-10.

Motions of the Celestial Sphere

For an observer anywhere in the northern hemisphere, including the observer in Figure 2-10, the north celestial pole is always



ANIMATION 2.1

Figure 2-9

The Celestial Sphere The celestial sphere is the apparent sphere of the sky. The view in this figure is from the outside of this (wholly imaginary) sphere. The Earth is at the center of the celestial sphere, so our view is always of the *inside* of the sphere. The celestial equator and poles are the projections of the Earth's equator and axis of rotation out into space. The celestial poles are therefore located directly over the Earth's poles.

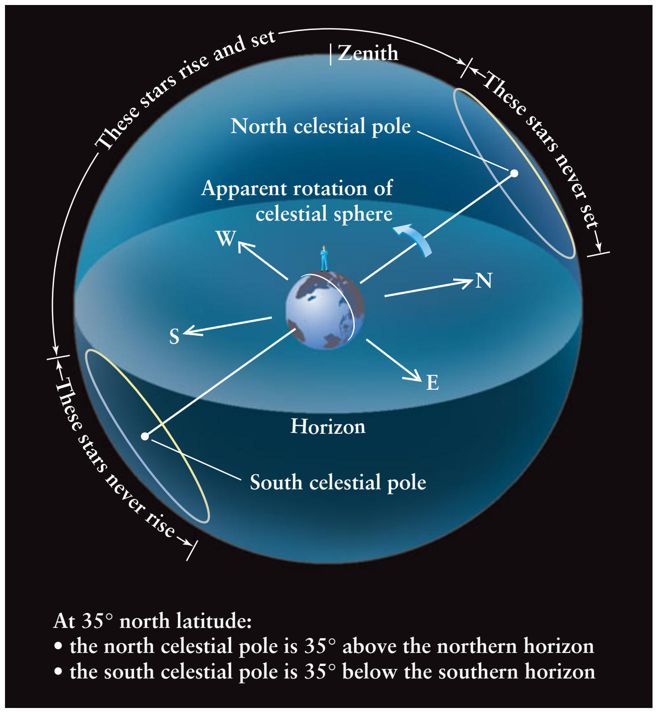


Figure 2-10

The View from 35° North Latitude To an observer at 35° north latitude (roughly the latitude of Los Angeles, Atlanta, Tel Aviv, and Tokyo), the north celestial pole is always 35° above the horizon. Stars within 35° of the *north* celestial pole are circumpolar; they trace out circles around the north celestial pole during the course of the night, and are always above the horizon on any night of the year. Stars within 35° of the *south* celestial pole are always below the horizon and can never be seen from this latitude. Stars that lie between these two extremes rise in the east and set in the west.

(a) At middle northern latitudes (b) At the north pole (c) At the equator

ANIMATION 2.2

Figure 2-11 R I V U X G

The Apparent Motion of Stars at Different Latitudes As the Earth rotates, stars appear to rotate around us along paths that are parallel to the celestial equator. **(a)** As shown in this long time exposure, at most locations on Earth the rising and setting motions are at an angle to the horizon that depends on the latitude. **(b)** At the north pole (latitude 90° north) the stars appear to move parallel to the horizon. **(c)** At the equator (latitude 0°) the stars rise and set along vertical paths. (a: David Miller/DMI)

above the horizon. As the Earth turns from west to east, it appears to the observer that the celestial sphere turns from east to west. Stars sufficiently near the north celestial pole revolve around the pole, never rising or setting. Such stars are called **circumpolar.** For example, as seen from North America or Europe, Polaris is a circumpolar star and can be seen at any time of night on any night of the year. The photograph that opens this chapter shows the circular trails of stars around the north celestial pole as seen from Hawaii (at 20° north latitude). Stars near the south celestial pole revolve around that pole but always remain below the horizon of an observer in the northern hemisphere. Hence, these stars can never be seen by the observer in Figure 2-10. Stars between those two limits rise in the east and set in the west.

CAUTION! Keep in mind that which stars are circumpolar, which stars never rise, and which stars rise and set depends on the latitude from which you view the heavens. As an example, for an observer at 35° south latitude (roughly the latitude of Sydney, Cape Town, and Buenos Aires), the roles of the north and south celestial poles are the opposite of those shown in Figure 2-10: Objects close to the *south* celestial pole are circumpolar, that is, they revolve around that pole and never rise or set. For an observer in the southern hemisphere, stars close to the *north* celestial pole are always below the horizon and can never be seen. Hence, astronomers in Australia, South Africa, and Argentina never see the North Star but are able to see other stars that are forever hidden from North American or European observers.

For observers at most locations on Earth, stars rise in the east and set in the west at an angle to the horizon (Figure 2-11*a*). To see why this is so, notice that the rotation of the celestial sphere carries stars across the sky in paths that are parallel to the celestial equator. If you stand at the north pole, the north celestial pole is directly above you at the zenith (see Figure 2-9) and the celestial equator lies all around you at the horizon. Hence, as the celestial sphere rotates, the stars appear to move parallel to the horizon (Figure 2-11*b*). If instead you stand on the equator, the celestial equator passes from the eastern horizon through the zenith to the western horizon. The north and south celestial poles are 90° away from the celestial equator, so they lie on the northern and southern horizons, respectively. As the celestial sphere rotates around an axis from pole to pole, the stars rise and set straight up and down—that is, in a direction perpendicular to the horizon (Figure 2-11*c*). At any location on Earth between the equator and either pole, the rising and setting motions of the stars are at an angle intermediate between Figures 2-11*b* and 2-11*c*. The particular angle depends on the latitude.

Using the celestial equator and poles, we can define a coordinate system to specify the position of any star on the celestial sphere. As Box 2-1 describes, the most commonly used coordinate system uses two angles, *right ascension* and *declination*, that are analogous to longitude and latitude on Earth. These coordinates tell us in what direction we should look to see the star. To locate the star's true position in three-dimensional space, we must also know the distance to the star.

2-5 The seasons are caused by the tilt of Earth's axis of rotation

In addition to rotating on its axis every 24 hours, the Earth revolves around the Sun—that is, it *orbits* the Sun—in about $365\frac{1}{4}$ days (see Figure 2-5). As we travel with the Earth around its orbit, we experience the annual cycle of seasons. But why *are* there seasons? Furthermore, the seasons are opposite in the northern and southern hemispheres. For example, February is midwinter in North America but midsummer in Australia. Why should this be?

The celestial sphere concept helps us visualize how the Sun appears to move relative to the stars

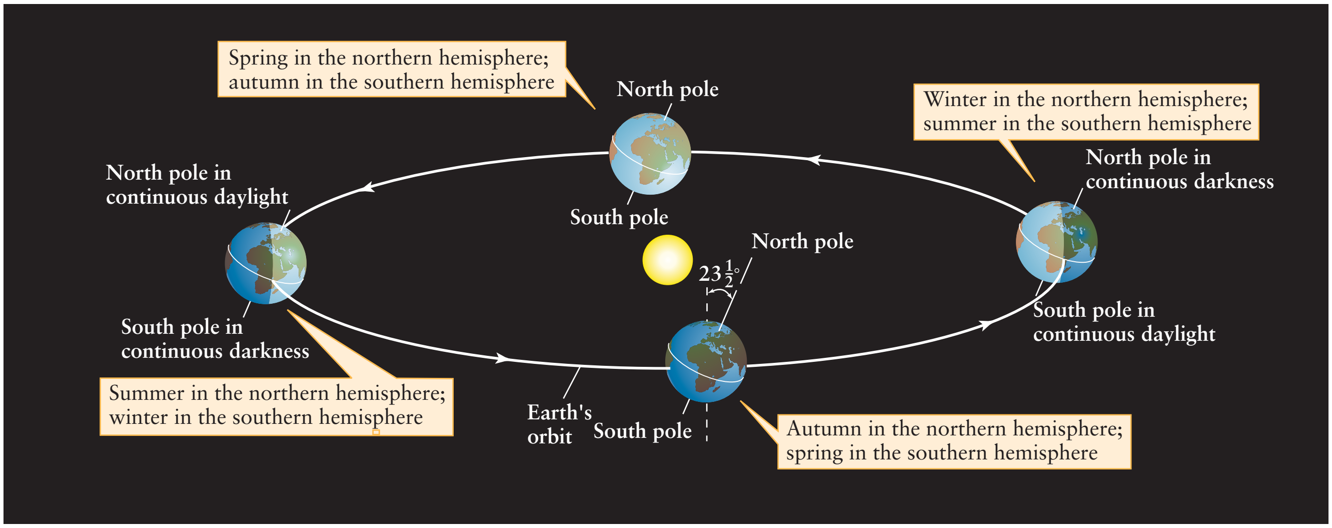


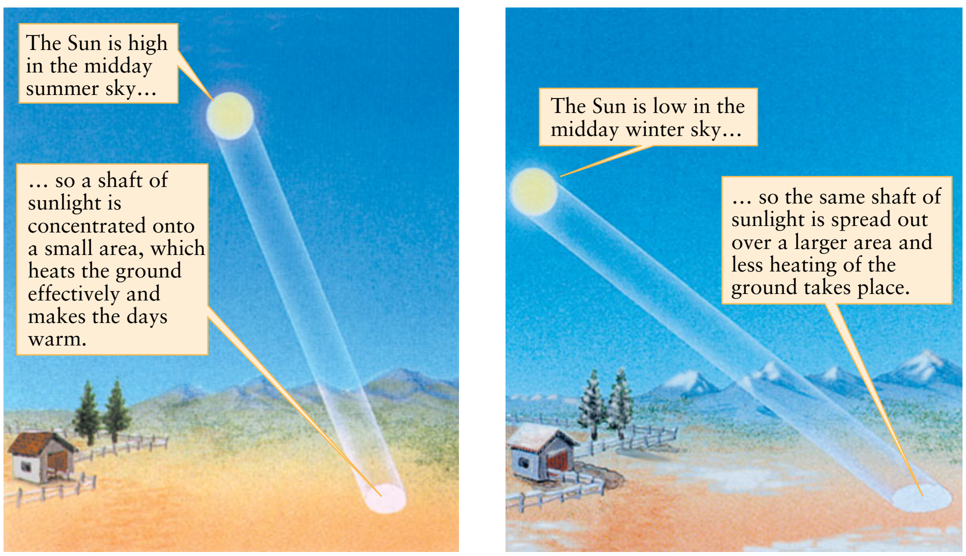
Figure 2-12

The Seasons The Earth's axis of rotation is inclined $23\frac{1}{2}°$ away from the perpendicular to the plane of the Earth's orbit. The north pole is aimed at the north celestial pole, near the star Polaris. The Earth maintains this orientation as it orbits the Sun. Consequently, the amount of solar illumination and the number of daylight hours at any location on Earth vary in a regular pattern throughout the year. This is the origin of the seasons.

The Origin of the Seasons

The reason why we have seasons, and why they are different in different hemispheres, is that the Earth's axis of rotation is not perpendicular to the plane of the Earth's orbit. Instead, as Figure 2-12 shows, the axis is tilted about $23\frac{1}{2}°$ away from the perpendicular. The Earth maintains this tilt as it orbits the Sun, with the Earth's north pole pointing toward the north celestial pole. (This stability is a hallmark of all rotating objects. A top will not fall over as long as it is spinning, and the rotating wheels of a motorcycle help to keep the rider upright.)

During part of the year, when the Earth is in the part of its orbit shown on the left side of Figure 2-12, the northern hemisphere is tilted toward the Sun. As the Earth spins on its axis, a point in the northern hemisphere spends more than 12 hours in the sunlight. Thus, the days there are long and the nights are short, and it is summer in the northern hemisphere. The summer is hot not only because of the extended daylight hours but also because the Sun is high in the northern hemisphere's sky. As a result, sunlight strikes the ground at a nearly perpendicular angle that heats the ground efficiently (Figure 2-13*a*). During this same time of year in the southern hemisphere, the days are short and the nights



(a) The Sun in summer (b) The Sun in winter

Figure 2-13

Solar Energy in Summer and Winter At different times of the year, sunlight strikes the ground at different angles. **(a)** In summer, sunlight is concentrated and the days are also longer, which further increases the heating. **(b)** In winter the sunlight is less concentrated, the days are short, and little heating of the ground takes place. This accounts for the low temperatures in winter.

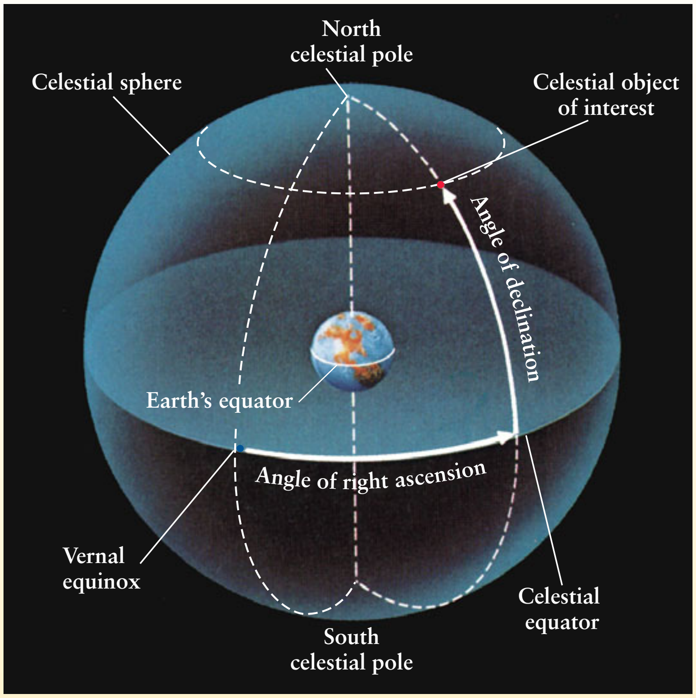
BOX 2-1 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Celestial Coordinates

Your *latitude* and *longitude* describe where on the Earth's surface you are located. The latitude of your location denotes how far north or south of the equator you are, and the longitude of your location denotes how far west or east you are of an imaginary circle that runs from the north pole to the south pole through the Royal Observatory in Greenwich, England. In an analogous way, astronomers use coordinates called *declination* and *right ascension* to describe the position of a planet, star, or galaxy on the celestial sphere.

Declination is analogous to latitude. As the illustration shows, the **declination** of an object is its angular distance north or south of the celestial equator, measured along a circle passing through both celestial poles. Like latitude, it is measured in degrees, arcminutes, and arcseconds (see Section 1-5).

Right ascension is analogous to longitude. It is measured from a line that runs between the north and south celestial poles and passes through a point on the celestial equator called the *vernal equinox* (shown as a blue dot in the illustration). This point is one of two locations where the Sun crosses the celestial equator during its apparent annual motion, as we discuss in Section 2-5. In the Earth's northern hemisphere, spring officially begins when the Sun reaches the vernal equinox in late March. The **right ascension** of an object is the angular distance from the vernal equinox eastward along the celestial equator to the circle used in measuring its declination (see illustration). Astronomers measure right ascension in *time* units (hours, minutes, and seconds), corresponding to the time required for the celestial sphere to rotate through this angle. For example, suppose there is a star at your zenith right now with right ascension $6^h\ 0^m\ 0^s$. Two hours and 30 minutes from now, there will be a different object at your zenith with right ascension $8^h\ 30^m\ 0^s$.



are long, because a point in this hemisphere spends fewer than 12 hours a day in the sunlight. The Sun is low in the sky, so sunlight strikes the surface at a grazing angle that causes little heating (Figure 2-13*b*), and it is winter in the southern hemisphere.

Half a year later, the Earth is in the part of its orbit shown on the right side of Figure 2-12. Now the situation is reversed, with winter in the northern hemisphere (which is now tilted away from the Sun) and summer in the southern hemisphere. During spring and autumn, the two hemispheres receive roughly equal amounts of illumination from the Sun, and daytime and nighttime are of roughly equal length everywhere on Earth.

CAUTION! A common misconception is that the seasons are caused by variations in the distance from the Earth to the Sun. According to this idea, the Earth is closer to the Sun in summer and farther away in winter. But in fact, the Earth's orbit around the Sun is very nearly circular, and the Earth-Sun distance varies only about 3% over the course of a year. (The Earth's orbit only *looks* elongated in Figure 2-12 because this illustration shows an oblique view.) We are slightly closer to the Sun in January than in July, but this small variation has little influence on the cycle of the seasons. Also, if the seasons were really caused by variations in the Earth-Sun distance, the seasons would be the same in both hemispheres!

How the Sun Moves on the Celestial Sphere

The plane of the Earth's orbit around the Sun is called the **ecliptic plane** (Figure 2-14*a*). As a result of the Earth's annual motion around the Sun, it appears to us that the Sun slowly changes its position on the celestial sphere over the course of a year. The circular path that the Sun appears to trace out against the background of stars is called the **ecliptic** (Figure 2-14*b*). The plane of this path is the same as the ecliptic plane. (The name *ecliptic* suggests that the path traced out by the Sun has something to do with eclipses. We will discuss the connection in Chapter 3.) Because there are $365\frac{1}{4}$ days in a year and 360° in a circle, the Sun appears to move along the ecliptic at a rate of about 1° per day. This motion is from west to east, that is, in the direction opposite to the apparent motion of the celestial sphere.

INTERACTIVE EXERCISE 2.1 The coordinates of the bright star Rigel for the year 2000 are R.A. = $5^h\ 14^m\ 32.2^s$, Decl. = $-8°\ 12'\ 06''$. (R.A. and Decl. are abbreviations for right ascension and declination.) A minus sign on the declination indicates that the star is south of the celestial equator; a plus sign (or no sign at all) indicates that an object is north of the celestial equator. As we discuss in Box 2-2, right ascension helps determine the best time to observe a particular object.

It is important to state the year for which a star's right ascension and declination are valid. This is so because of precession, which we discuss in Section 2-6.

EXAMPLE: What are the coordinates of a star that lies exactly halfway between the vernal equinox and the south celestial pole?

Situation: Our goal is to find the right ascension and declination of the star in question.

Tools: We use the definitions depicted in the figure.

Answer: Since the circle used to measure this star's declination passes through the vernal equinox, this star's right ascension is R.A. = $0^h\ 0^m\ 0^s$. The angle between the celestial equator and south celestial pole is $90°\ 0'\ 0''$, so the declination of this star is Decl. = $-45°\ 0'\ 0''$.

Review: The declination in this example is negative because the star is in the southern half of the celestial sphere.

EXAMPLE: At midnight local time you see a star with R.A. = $2^h\ 30^m\ 0^s$ at your zenith. When will you see a star at your zenith with R.A. = $21^h\ 0^m\ 0^s$?

Situation: If you held your finger stationary over a globe of the Earth, the longitude of the point directly under your finger would change as you rotated the globe. In the same way, the right ascension of the point directly over your head (the zenith) changes as the celestial sphere rotates. We use this concept to determine the time in question.

Tools: We use the idea that a change in right ascension of 24^h corresponds to an elapsed time of 24 hours and a complete rotation of the celestial sphere.

Answer: The time required for the sky to rotate through the angle between the stars is the difference in their right ascensions: $21^h\ 0^m\ 0^s - 2^h\ 30^m\ 0^s = 18^h\ 30^m\ 0^s$. So the second star will be at your zenith $18\frac{1}{2}$ hours after the first one, or at 6:30 P.M. the following evening.

Review: Our answer was based on the idea that the celestial sphere makes *exactly* one complete rotation in 24 hours. If this were so, from one night to the next each star would be in exactly the same position at a given time. But because of the way that we customarily measure time, the celestial sphere makes slightly more than one complete rotation in 24 hours. (We explore the reasons for this in Box 2-2.) As a result, our answer is in error by about 3 minutes. For our purposes, this is a small enough error that we can ignore it.

ANALOGY Note that at the same time that the Sun is making its yearlong trip around the ecliptic, the entire celestial sphere is rotating around us once per day. You can envision the celestial sphere as a merry-go-round rotating clockwise, and the Sun as a restless child who is walking slowly around the merry-go-round's rim in the counterclockwise direction. During the time it takes the child to make a round trip, the merry-go-round rotates $365\frac{1}{4}$ times.

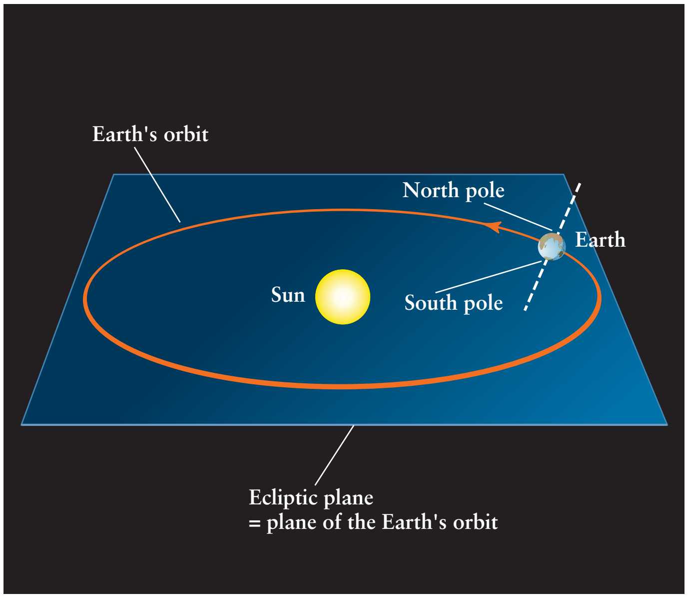
The ecliptic plane is *not* the same as the plane of the Earth's equator, thanks to the $23\frac{1}{2}°$ tilt of the Earth's rotation axis shown in Figure 2-12. As a result, the ecliptic and the celestial equator are inclined to each other by that same $23\frac{1}{2}°$ angle (Figure 2-15).

Equinoxes and Solstices

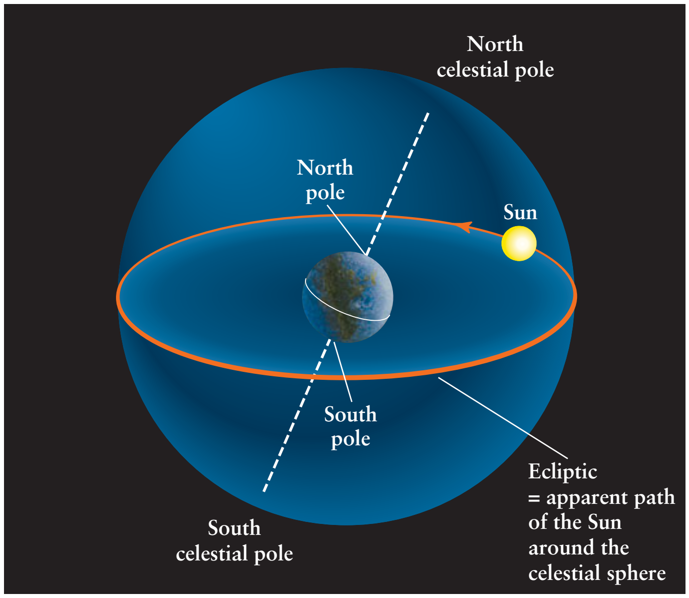
The ecliptic and the celestial equator intersect at only two points, which are exactly opposite each other on the celestial sphere. Each point is called an **equinox** (from the Latin for "equal night"), because when the Sun appears at either of these points, day and night are each about 12 hours long at all locations on Earth. The term "equinox" is also used to refer to the date on which the Sun passes through one of these special points on the ecliptic.

On about March 21 of each year, the Sun passes northward across the celestial equator at the **vernal equinox.** This marks the beginning of spring in the northern hemisphere ("vernal" is from the Latin for "spring"). On about September 22 the Sun moves southward across the celestial equator at the **autumnal equinox,** marking the moment when fall begins in the northern hemisphere. Since the seasons are opposite in the northern and southern hemispheres, for Australians and South Africans the vernal equinox actually marks the beginning of autumn. The names of the equinoxes come from astronomers of the past who lived north of the equator.

Between the vernal and autumnal equinoxes lie two other significant locations along the ecliptic. The point on the ecliptic farthest north of the celestial equator is called the **summer solstice.** "Solstice" is from the Latin for "solar standstill," and it is at the summer solstice that the Sun stops moving northward on the



(a) In reality the Earth orbits the Sun once a year



(b) It appears to us that the Sun travels around the celestial sphere once a year

Figure 2-14

The Ecliptic Plane and the Ecliptic **(a)** The ecliptic plane is the plane in which the Earth moves around the Sun. **(b)** As seen from Earth, the Sun appears to move around the celestial sphere along a circular path called the ecliptic. The Earth takes a year to complete one orbit around the Sun, so as seen by us the Sun takes a year to make a complete trip around the ecliptic.

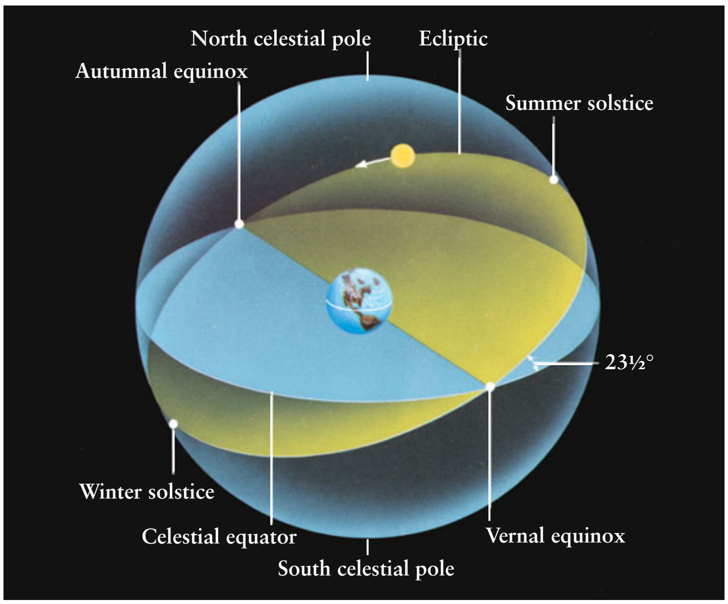


Figure 2-15

The Ecliptic, Equinoxes, and Solstices This illustration of the celestial sphere is similar to Figure 2-14*b*, but is drawn with the north celestial pole at the top and the celestial equator running through the middle. The ecliptic is inclined to the celestial equator by $23\frac{1}{2}°$ because of the tilt of the Earth's axis of rotation. It intersects the celestial equator at two points, called equinoxes. The northernmost point on the ecliptic is the summer solstice, and the southernmost point is the winter solstice. The Sun is shown in its approximate position for August 1.

celestial sphere. At this point, the Sun is as far north of the celestial equator as it can get. It marks the location of the Sun at the moment summer begins in the northern hemisphere (about June 21). At the beginning of the northern hemisphere's winter (about December 21), the Sun is farthest south of the celestial equator at a point called the **winter solstice.**

Because the Sun's position on the celestial sphere varies slowly over the course of a year, its daily path across the sky (due to the Earth's rotation) also varies with the seasons (Figure 2-16). On the first day of spring or the first day of fall, when the Sun is at one of the equinoxes, the Sun rises directly in the east and sets directly in the west.

When the northern hemisphere is tilted away from the Sun and it is winter in the northern hemisphere, the Sun rises in the southeast. Daylight lasts for fewer than 12 hours as the Sun skims low over the southern horizon and sets in the southwest. Northern hemisphere nights are longest when the Sun is at the winter solstice.

The closer you get to the north pole, the shorter the winter days and the longer the winter nights. In fact, anywhere within $23\frac{1}{2}°$ of the north pole (that is, north of latitude $90° - 23\frac{1}{2}° = 66\frac{1}{2}°$ N) the Sun is below the horizon for 24 continuous hours at least one day of the year. The circle around the Earth at $66\frac{1}{2}°$ north latitude is called the **Arctic Circle** (Figure 2-17). The corresponding region around the south pole is bounded by the **Antarctic Circle** at $66\frac{1}{2}°$ south latitude. At the time of the winter solstice, explorers south of the Antarctic Circle enjoy "the midnight sun," or 24 hours of continuous daylight.

During summer in the northern hemisphere, when the northern hemisphere is tilted toward the Sun, the Sun rises in the north-

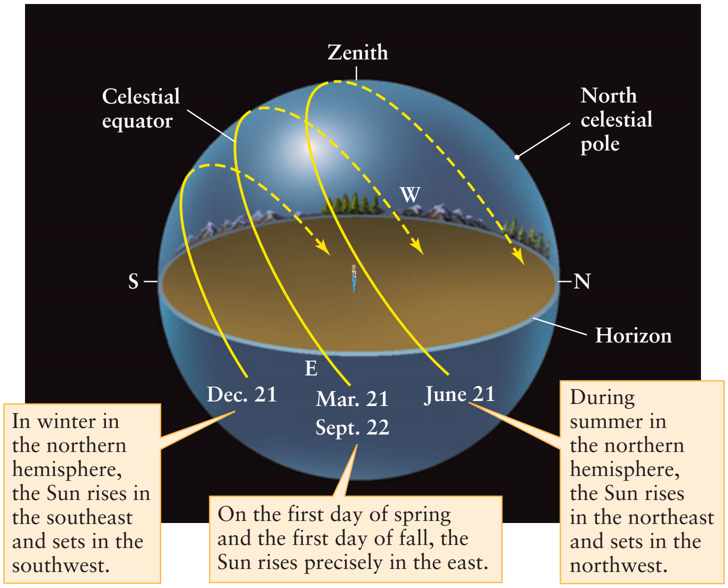


Figure 2-16

The Sun's Daily Path Across the Sky This drawing shows the apparent path of the Sun during the course of a day on four different dates. Like Figure 2-10, this drawing is for an observer at 35° north latitude.

east and sets in the northwest. The Sun is at its northernmost position at the summer solstice, giving the northern hemisphere the greatest number of daylight hours. At the summer solstice the Sun does not set at all north of the Arctic Circle (Figure 2-18) and does not rise at all south of the Antarctic Circle.

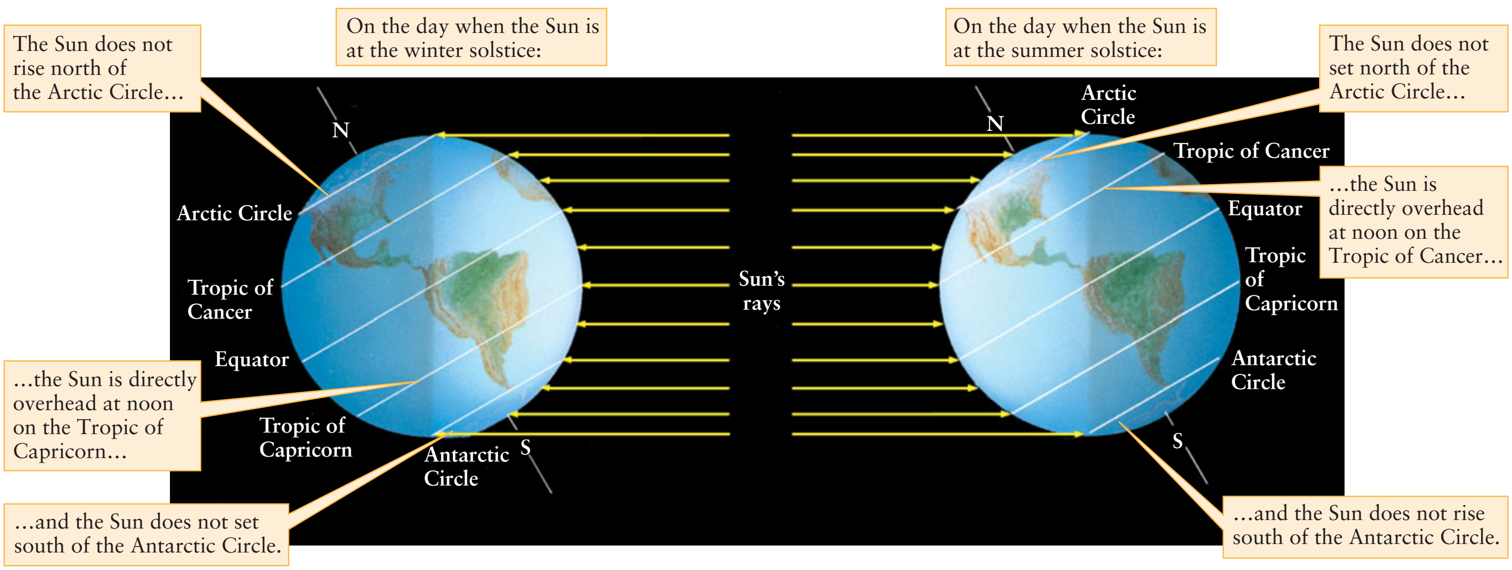
The variations of the seasons are much less pronounced close to the equator. Between the **Tropic of Capricorn** at $23\frac{1}{2}$° south latitude and the **Tropic of Cancer** at $23\frac{1}{2}$° north latitude, the Sun is directly overhead—that is, at the zenith—at high noon at least one day a year. Outside of the tropics, the Sun is never directly overhead, but is always either south of the zenith (as seen from locations north of the Tropic of Cancer) or north of the zenith (as seen from south of the Tropic of Capricorn).

2-6 The Moon helps to cause precession, a slow, conical motion of Earth's axis of rotation

The Moon is by far the brightest and most obvious naked-eye object in the nighttime sky. Like the Sun, the Moon slowly changes its position relative to the background stars; unlike the Sun, the Moon makes a complete trip around the celestial sphere in only about 4 weeks, or about a month. (The word "month" comes from the same Old English root as the word "moon.") Ancient astronomers realized that this motion occurs because the Moon orbits the Earth in roughly 4 weeks. In 1 hour the Moon moves on the celestial sphere by about $\frac{1}{2}$°, or roughly its own angular size.

Precession causes the apparent positions of the stars to slowly change over the centuries

The Moon's path on the celestial sphere is never far from the Sun's path (that is, the ecliptic). This is because the plane of the Moon's orbit around the Earth is inclined only slightly from the plane of the Earth's orbit around the Sun (the ecliptic plane shown in Figure 2-14*a*). The Moon's path varies somewhat from one



(a) Earth at winter solstice

(b) Earth at summer solstice

Figure 2-17

Tropics and Circles Four important latitudes on Earth are the Arctic Circle ($66\frac{1}{2}$° north latitude), Tropic of Cancer ($23\frac{1}{2}$° north latitude), Tropic of Capricorn ($23\frac{1}{2}$° south latitude), and Antarctic Circle ($66\frac{1}{2}$° south latitude). These drawings show the significance of these latitudes when the Sun is **(a)** at the winter solstice and **(b)** at the summer solstice.

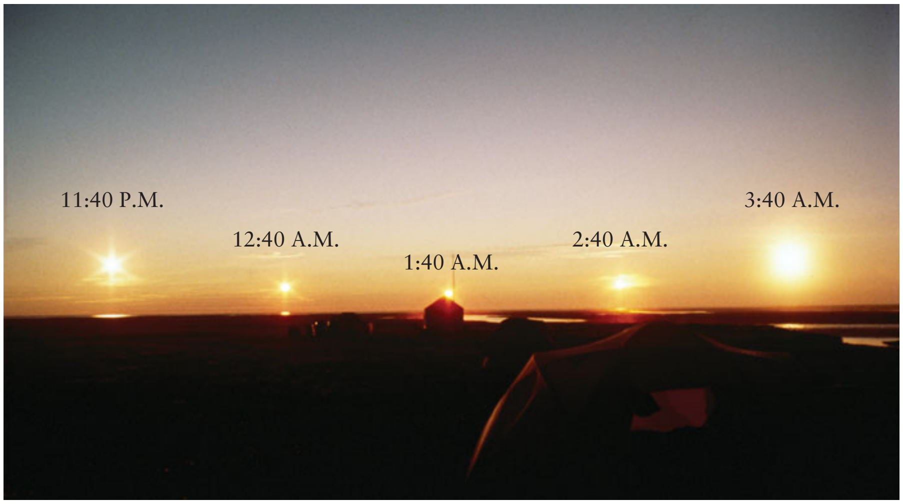


Figure 2-18 R I V U X G

The Midnight Sun This time-lapse photograph was taken on July 19, 1985, at 69° north latitude in northeast Alaska. At this latitude, the Sun is above the horizon continuously (that is, it is circumpolar) from mid-May to the end of July. (Doug Plummer/Science Photo Library)

month to the next, but always remains within a band called the **zodiac** that extends about 8° on either side of the ecliptic. Twelve famous constellations—Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpius, Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius, and Pisces—lie along the zodiac. The Moon is generally found in one of these 12 constellations. (Thanks to a redrawing of constellation boundaries in the mid-twentieth century, the zodiac actually passes through a thirteenth constellation—Ophiuchus, the Serpent Bearer—between Scorpius and Sagittarius.) As it moves along its orbit, the Moon appears north of the celestial equator for about two weeks and then south of the celestial equator for about the next two weeks. We will learn more about the Moon's motion, as well as why the Moon goes through phases, in Chapter 3.

The Moon not only moves around the Earth but, in concert with the Sun, also causes a slow change in the Earth's rotation. This is because both the Sun and the Moon exert a gravitational pull on the Earth. We will learn much more about gravity in Chapter 4; for now, all we need is the idea that gravity is a universal attraction of matter for other matter.

The gravitational pull of the Sun and the Moon affects the Earth's rotation because the Earth is slightly fatter across the equator than it is from pole to pole: Its equatorial diameter is 43 kilometers (27 miles) larger than the diameter measured from pole to pole. The Earth is therefore said to have an "equatorial bulge." Because of the gravitational pull of the Moon and the Sun on this bulge, the orientation of the Earth's axis of rotation gradually changes.

The Earth behaves somewhat like a spinning top, as illustrated in Figure 2-19. If the top were not spinning, gravity would pull the top over on its side. When the top is spinning, gravity causes the top's axis of rotation to trace out a circle, producing a motion called **precession.**

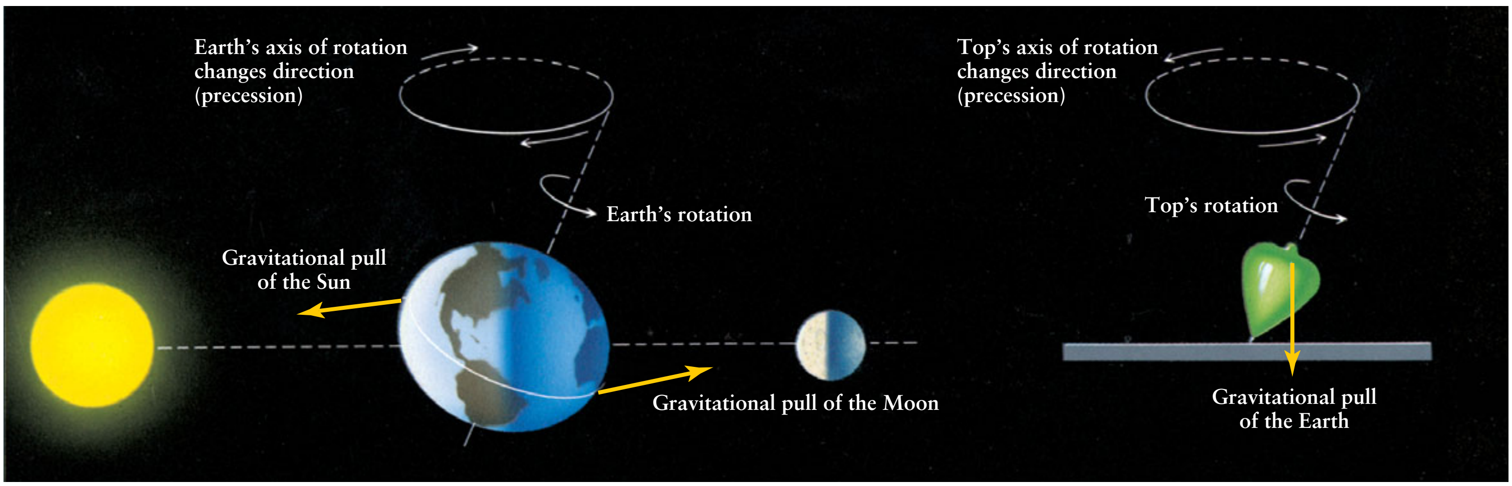


Figure 2-19

Precession Because the Earth's rotation axis is tilted, the gravitational pull of the Moon and the Sun on the Earth's equatorial bulge together cause the Earth to precess. As the Earth precesses, its axis of rotation slowly traces out a circle in the sky, like the shifting axis of a spinning top.

As the Sun and Moon move along the zodiac, each spends half its time north of the Earth's equatorial bulge and half its time south of it. The gravitational pull of the Sun and Moon tugging on the equatorial bulge tries to twist the Earth's axis of rotation to be perpendicular to the plane of the ecliptic. But because the Earth is spinning, the combined actions of gravity and rotation cause the Earth's axis to trace out a circle in the sky, much like what happens to the toy top. As the axis precesses, it remains tilted about 23½° to the perpendicular.

As the Earth's axis of rotation slowly changes its orientation, the north and south celestial poles—which are the projections of that axis onto the celestial sphere—change their positions relative to the stars. At present, the north celestial pole lies within 1° of the star Polaris, which is why Polaris is the North Star. But 5000 years ago, the north celestial pole was closest to the star Thuban in the constellation of Draco (the Dragon). Thus, that star and not Polaris was the North Star. And 12,000 years from now, the North Star will be the bright star Vega in Lyra (the Harp). It takes 26,000 years for the north celestial pole to complete one full precessional circle around the sky (Figure 2-20). The south celestial pole executes a similar circle in the southern sky.

Precession also causes the Earth's equatorial plane to change its orientation. Because this plane defines the location of the celestial equator in the sky, the celestial equator precesses as well.

Figure 2-20

Precession and the Path of the North Celestial Pole As the Earth precesses, the north celestial pole slowly traces out a circle among the northern constellations. At present, the north celestial pole is near the moderately bright star Polaris, which serves as the North Star. Twelve thousand years from now the bright star Vega will be the North Star.

The intersections of the celestial equator and the ecliptic define the equinoxes (see Figure 2-15), so these key locations in the sky also shift slowly from year to year. For this reason, the precession of the Earth is also called the **precession of the equinoxes.** The first person to detect the precession of the equinoxes, in the second century B.C., was the Greek astronomer Hipparchus, who compared his own observations with those of Babylonian astronomers three centuries earlier. Today, the vernal equinox is located in the constellation Pisces (the Fishes). Two thousand years ago, it was in Aries (the Ram). Around the year A.D. 2600, the vernal equinox will move into Aquarius (the Water Bearer).

CAUTION! Astrological terms like the "Age of Aquarius" involve boundaries in the sky that are not recognized by astronomers and are generally not even related to the positions of the constellations. For example, most astrologers would call a person born on March 21, 1988, an "Aries" because the Sun was supposedly in the direction of that constellation on March 21. But due to precession, the Sun was actually in the constellation Pisces on that date! Indeed, astrology is *not* a science at all, but merely a collection of superstitions and hokum. Its practitioners use some of the terminology of astronomy but reject the logical thinking that is at the heart of science. James Randi has more to say about astrology and other pseudosciences in his essay "Why Astrology Is Not Science" at the end of this chapter.

The astronomer's system of locating heavenly bodies by their right ascension and declination, discussed in Box 2-1, is tied to the positions of the celestial equator and the vernal equinox. Because of precession, these positions are changing, and thus the coordinates of stars in the sky are also constantly changing. These changes are very small and gradual, but they add up over the years. To cope with this difficulty, astronomers always make note of the date (called the **epoch**) for which a particular set of coordinates is precisely correct. Consequently, star catalogs and star charts are periodically updated. Most current catalogs and star charts are prepared for the epoch 2000. The coordinates in these reference books, which are precise for January 1, 2000, will require very little correction over the next few decades.

2-7 Positional astronomy plays an important role in keeping track of time

Astronomers have traditionally been responsible for telling time. This is because we want the system of timekeeping used in everyday life to reflect the position of the Sun in the sky. Thousands of years ago, the sundial was invented to keep track of **apparent solar time.** To obtain more accurate measurements astronomers use the **meridian.** As Figure 2-21 shows, this is a north-south circle on the celestial sphere that passes through the zenith (the point directly overhead) and both celestial poles. *Local noon* is defined to be when the Sun crosses the **upper meridian,** which is the half of the meridian above the horizon. At *local midnight,* the Sun crosses the **lower**

Ancient scholars developed a system of timekeeping based on the Sun

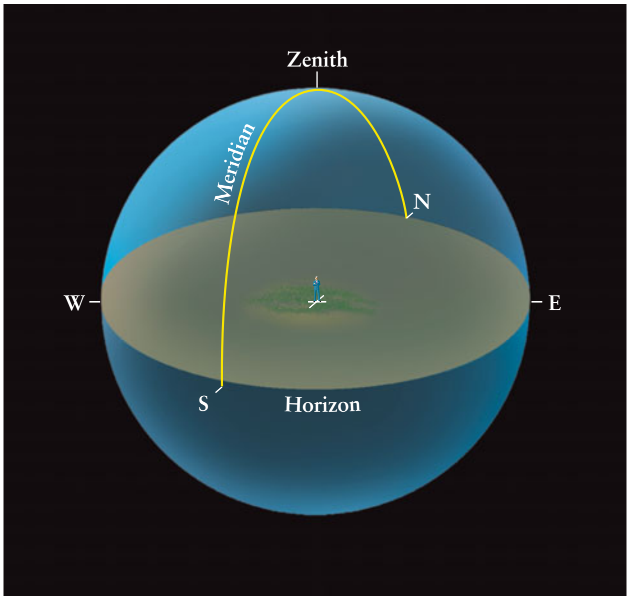


Figure 2-21

The Meridian The meridian is a circle on the celestial sphere that passes through the observer's zenith (the point directly overhead) and the north and south points on the observer's horizon. The passing of celestial objects across the meridian can be used to measure time. The upper meridian is the part above the horizon, and the lower meridian (not shown) is the part below the horizon.

meridian, the half of the meridian below the horizon; this crossing cannot be observed directly.

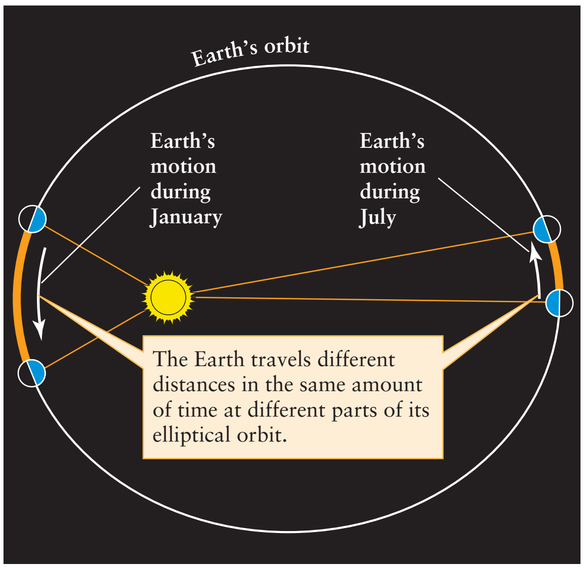
The crossing of the meridian by any object in the sky is called a **meridian transit** of that object. If the crossing occurs above the horizon, it is an *upper* meridian transit. An **apparent solar day** is the interval between two successive upper meridian transits of the Sun as observed from any fixed spot on the Earth. Stated less formally, an apparent solar day is the time from one local noon to the next local noon, or from when the Sun is highest in the sky to when it is again highest in the sky.

The Sun as a Timekeeper

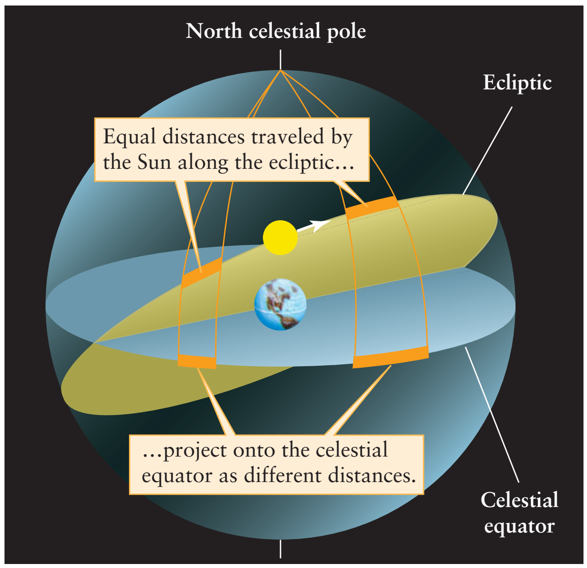
Unfortunately, the Sun is not a good timekeeper (Figure 2-22). The length of an apparent solar day (as measured by a device such as an hourglass) varies from one time of year to another. There are two main reasons why this is so, both having to do with the way in which the Earth orbits the Sun.

The first reason is that the Earth's orbit is not a perfect circle; rather, it is an ellipse, as Figure 2-22*a* shows in exaggerated form. As we will learn in Chapter 4, the Earth moves more rapidly along its orbit when it is near the Sun than when it is farther away. Hence, the Sun appears to us to move more than 1° per day along the ecliptic in January, when the Earth is nearest the Sun, and less than 1° per day in July, when the Earth is farthest from the Sun. By itself, this effect would cause the apparent solar day to be longer in January than in July.

The second reason why the Sun is not a good timekeeper is the $23\frac{1}{2}°$ angle between the ecliptic and the celestial equator (see



(a) A month's motion of the Earth along its orbit



(b) A day's motion of the Sun along the ecliptic

Figure 2-22

Why the Sun Is a Poor Timekeeper There are two main reasons that the Sun is a poor timekeeper. **(a)** The Earth's speed along its orbit varies during the year. It moves fastest when closest to the Sun in January and slowest when farthest from the Sun in July. Hence, the apparent speed of the Sun along the ecliptic is not constant. **(b)** Because of the tilt of the Earth's rotation axis, the ecliptic is inclined with respect to the celestial equator. Therefore, the projection of the Sun's daily progress along the ecliptic onto the celestial equator (shown in blue) varies during the year. This causes further variations in the length of the apparent solar day.

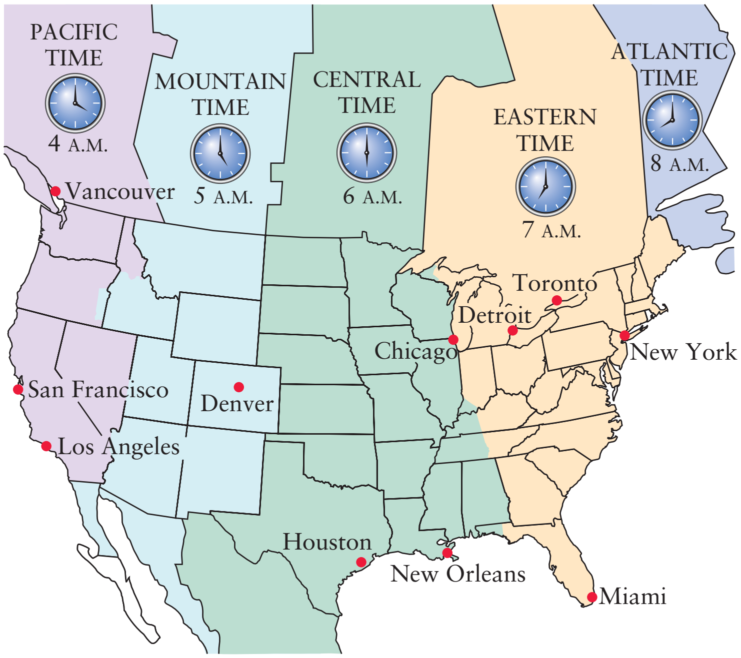


Figure 2-23

Time Zones in North America For convenience, the Earth is divided into 24 time zones, generally centered on 15° intervals of longitude around the globe. There are four time zones across the continental United States, making for a 3-hour time difference between New York and California.

Figure 2-15). As Figure 2-22*b* shows, this causes a significant part of the Sun's apparent motion when near the equinoxes to be in a north-south direction. The net daily eastward progress in the sky is then somewhat foreshortened. At the summer and winter solstices, by contrast, the Sun's motion is parallel to the celestial equator. Thus, there is no comparable foreshortening around the beginning of summer or winter. This effect by itself would make the apparent solar day shorter in March and September than in June or December. Combining these effects with those due to the Earth's noncircular orbit, we find that the length of the apparent solar day varies in a complicated fashion over the course of a year.

To avoid these difficulties, astronomers invented an imaginary object called the **mean sun** that moves along the celestial equator at a uniform rate. (In science and mathematics, "mean" is a synonym for "average.") The mean sun is sometimes slightly ahead of the real Sun in the sky, sometimes behind. As a result, mean solar time and apparent solar time can differ by as much as a quarter of an hour at certain times of the year.

Because the mean sun moves at a constant rate, it serves as a fine timekeeper. A **mean solar day** is the interval between successive upper meridian transits of the mean sun. It is exactly 24 hours long, the average length of an apparent solar day. One 24-hour day as measured by your alarm clock or wristwatch is a mean solar day.

Time zones were invented for convenience in commerce, transportation, and communication. In a time zone, all clocks and watches are set to the mean solar time for a meridian of longitude that runs approximately through the center of the zone. Time zones around the world are generally centered on meridians of longitude at 15° intervals. In most cases, going from one time zone to the next requires you to change the time on your wristwatch by exactly 1 hour. The time zones for most of North America are shown in Figure 2-23.

In order to coordinate their observations with colleagues elsewhere around the globe, astronomers often keep track of time using Coordinated Universal Time, somewhat confusingly abbreviated UTC or UT. This is the time in a zone that includes Greenwich, England, a seaport just outside of London where the first internationally accepted time standard was kept. (UTC was formerly known as Greenwich Mean Time.) In North America, Eastern Standard Time (EST) is 5 hours different from UTC; 9:00 A.M. EST is 14:00 UTC. Coordinated Universal Time is also used by aviators and sailors, who regularly travel from one time zone to another.

Although it is natural to want our clocks and method of timekeeping to be related to the Sun, astronomers often use a system that is based on the apparent motion of the stars. This system, called **sidereal time**, is useful when aiming a telescope. Most observatories are therefore equipped with a clock that measures sidereal time, as discussed in Box 2-2.

2-8 Astronomical observations led to the development of the modern calendar

Just as the day is a natural unit of time based on the Earth's rotation, the year is a natural unit of time based on the Earth's revolution about the Sun. However, nature has not arranged things for our convenience. The year does not divide into exactly 365 whole days. Ancient astronomers realized that the length of a year is approximately $365\frac{1}{4}$ days, so the Roman emperor Julius Caesar established the system of "leap years" to account for this extra quarter of a day. By adding an extra day to the calendar every four years, he hoped to ensure that seasonal astronomical events, such as the beginning of spring, would occur on the same date year after year.

Our calendar is complex because a year does not contain a whole number of days

Caesar's system would have been perfect if the year were exactly $365\frac{1}{4}$ days long and if there were no precession. Unfortunately, this is not the case. To be more accurate, astronomers now use several different types of years. For example, the **sidereal year** is defined to be the time required for the Sun to return to the same position with respect to the stars. It is equal to 365.2564 mean solar days, or $365^d\ 6^h\ 9^m\ 10^s$.

The sidereal year is the orbital period of the Earth around the Sun, but it is *not* the year on which we base our calendar. Like Caesar, most people want annual events—in particular, the first days of the seasons—to fall on the same date each year. For example, we want the first day of spring to occur on March 21. But spring begins when the Sun is at the vernal equinox, and the vernal equinox moves slowly against the background stars because of precession. Therefore, to set up a calendar we use the **tropical**

BOX 2-2 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Sidereal Time

If you want to observe a particular object in the heavens, the ideal time to do so is when the object is high in the sky, on or close to the upper meridian. This minimizes the distorting effects of the Earth's atmosphere, which increase as you view closer to the horizon. For astronomers who study the Sun, this means making observations at local noon, which is not too different from noon as determined using mean solar time. For astronomers who observe planets, stars, or galaxies, however, the optimum time to observe depends on the particular object to be studied. The problem is this: Given the location of a given object on the celestial sphere, when will that object be on the upper meridian?

To answer this question, astronomers use *sidereal time* rather than solar time. It is different from the time on your wristwatch. In fact, a *sidereal clock* and an ordinary clock even tick at different rates, because they are based on different astronomical objects. Ordinary clocks are related to the position of the Sun, while sidereal clocks are based on the position of the vernal equinox, the location from which right ascension is measured. (See Box 2-1 for a discussion of right ascension.)

Regardless of where the Sun is, midnight sidereal time at your location is defined to be when the vernal equinox crosses your upper meridian. (Like solar time, sidereal time depends on where you are on Earth.) A **sidereal day** is the time between two successive upper meridian passages of the vernal equinox. By contrast, an apparent solar day is the time between two successive upper meridian crossings of the Sun. The illustration shows why these two kinds of day are not equal. Because the Earth orbits the Sun, the Earth must make one complete rotation plus about 1° to get from one local solar noon to the next. This extra 1° of rotation corresponds to 4 minutes of time, which is the amount by which a solar day exceeds a sidereal day. To be precise:

$$1 \text{ sidereal day} = 23^h\ 56^m\ 4.091^s$$

where the hours, minutes, and seconds are in mean solar time.

One day according to your wristwatch is one mean solar day, which is exactly 24 hours of solar time long. A **sidereal clock** measures sidereal time in terms of sidereal hours, minutes, and seconds, where one sidereal day is divided into 24 sidereal hours.

This explains why a sidereal clock ticks at a slightly different rate than your wristwatch. As a result, at some times of the year a sidereal clock will show a very different time than an ordinary clock. (At local noon on March 21, when the Sun is at the vernal equinox, a sidereal clock will say that it is midnight. Do you see why?)

We can now answer the question in the opening paragraph. The vernal equinox, whose celestial coordinates are R.A. = $0^h\ 0^m\ 0^s$, Decl. = $0°\ 0'\ 0''$, crosses the upper meridian at midnight sidereal time (0:00). The autumnal equinox, which is on the opposite side of the celestial sphere at R.A. = $12^h\ 0^m\ 0^s$, Decl. = $0°\ 0'\ 0''$, crosses the upper meridian 12 sidereal hours later at noon sidereal time (12:00). As these examples illustrate, *any* object crosses the upper meridian when the sidereal time is equal to the object's right ascension. That is why astronomers measure right ascension in units of time rather than degrees, and why right ascension is always given in sidereal hours, minutes, and seconds.

EXAMPLE: Suppose you want to observe the bright star Spica (Figure 2-6), which has epoch 2000 coordinates R.A. = $13^h\ 25^m\ 11.6^s$, Decl. = $-11°\ 9'\ 41''$. What is the best time to do this?

Situation: Our goal is to find the time when Spica passes through your upper meridian, where it can best be observed.

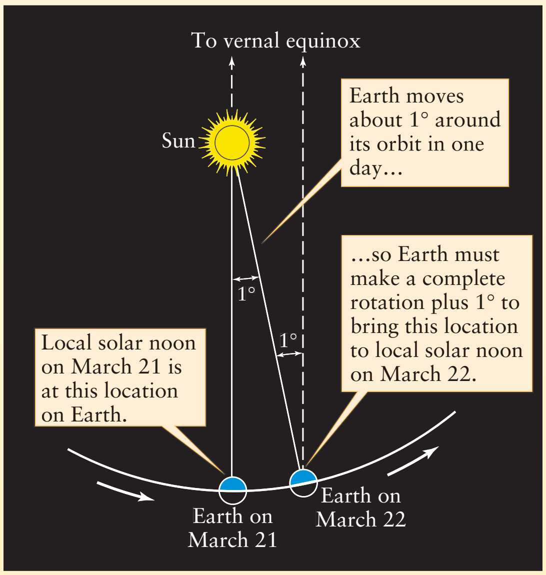
Tools: We use the idea that a celestial object is on your upper meridian when the sidereal time equals the object's right ascension.

Answer: Based on the given right ascension of Spica, it will be best placed for observation when the sidereal time at your location is about 13:25. (Note that sidereal time is measured using a 24-hour clock.)

Review: By itself, our answer doesn't tell you what time on your wristwatch (which measures mean solar time) is best for observing Spica. That's why most observatories are equipped with a sidereal clock.

While sidereal time is extremely useful in astronomy, mean solar time is still the best method of timekeeping for most earthbound purposes. All time measurements in this book are expressed in mean solar time unless otherwise stated.

ANIMATION 2.3



(a) A month's motion of the Earth along its orbit

year, which is equal to the time needed for the Sun to return to the vernal equinox. This period is equal to 365.2422 mean solar days, or $365^d\ 5^h\ 48^m\ 46^s$. Because of precession, the tropical year is 20 minutes and 24 seconds shorter than the sidereal year.

Caesar's assumption that the tropical year equals $365\frac{1}{4}$ days was off by 11 minutes and 14 seconds. This tiny error adds up to about three days every four centuries. Although Caesar's astronomical advisers were aware of the discrepancy, they felt that it was too small to matter. However, by the sixteenth century the first day of spring was occurring on March 11.

The Roman Catholic Church became concerned because Easter kept shifting to progressively earlier dates. To straighten things out, Pope Gregory XIII instituted a calendar reform in 1582. He began by dropping ten days (October 4, 1582, was followed by October 15, 1582), which brought the first day of spring back to March 21. Next, he modified Caesar's system of leap years.

Caesar had added February 29 to every calendar year that is evenly divisible by four. Thus, for example, 2004, 2008, and 2012 are all leap years with 366 days. But we have seen that this system produces an error of about three days every four centuries. To solve the problem, Pope Gregory decreed that only the century years evenly divisible by 400 should be leap years. For example, the years 1700, 1800, and 1900 (which would have been leap years according to Caesar) were not leap years in the improved Gregorian system, but the year 2000, which can be divided evenly by 400, *was* a leap year.

We use the Gregorian system today. It assumes that the year is 365.2425 mean solar days long, which is very close to the true length of the tropical year. In fact, the error is only one day in every 3300 years. That won't cause any problems for a long time.

Key Words

Terms preceded by an asterisk (*) are discussed in the Boxes.

Antarctic Circle, p. 32
apparent solar day, p. 36
apparent solar time, p. 35
Arctic Circle, p. 32
autumnal equinox, p. 31
celestial equator, p. 27
celestial sphere, p. 26
circumpolar, p. 28
constellation, p. 22
*declination, p. 30
diurnal motion, p. 24
ecliptic, p. 30
ecliptic plane, p. 30
epoch, p. 35
equinox, p. 31
lower meridian, p. 35
mean solar day, p. 37
mean sun, p. 37
meridian, p. 35
meridian transit, p. 36
north celestial pole, p. 27
positional astronomy, p. 21
precession, p. 34
precession of the equinoxes, p. 35
*right ascension, p. 29
*sidereal clock, p. 38
*sidereal day, p. 38
sidereal time, p. 37
sidereal year, p. 37
south celestial pole, p. 27
summer solstice, p. 31
time zone, p. 37
tropical year, p. 37
Tropic of Cancer, p. 33
Tropic of Capricorn, p. 33
upper meridian, p. 35
vernal equinox, p. 31
winter solstice, p. 32
zenith, p. 27
zodiac, p. 34

Key Ideas

Ideas preceded by an asterisk (*) are discussed in the Boxes.

Constellations and the Celestial Sphere: It is convenient to imagine the stars fixed to the celestial sphere with the Earth at its center.

• The surface of the celestial sphere is divided into 88 regions called constellations.

Diurnal (Daily) Motion of the Celestial Sphere: The celestial sphere appears to rotate around the Earth once in each 24-hour period. In fact, it is actually the Earth that is rotating.

• The poles and equator of the celestial sphere are determined by extending the axis of rotation and the equatorial plane of the Earth out to the celestial sphere.

• *The positions of objects on the celestial sphere are described by specifying their right ascension (in time units) and declination (in angular measure).

Seasons and the Tilt of the Earth's Axis: The Earth's axis of rotation is tilted at an angle of about $23\frac{1}{2}°$ from the perpendicular to the plane of the Earth's orbit.

• The seasons are caused by the tilt of the Earth's axis.

• Over the course of a year, the Sun appears to move around the celestial sphere along a path called the ecliptic. The ecliptic is inclined to the celestial equator by about $23\frac{1}{2}°$.

• The ecliptic crosses the celestial equator at two points in the sky, the vernal and autumnal equinoxes. The northernmost point that the Sun reaches on the celestial sphere is the summer solstice, and the southernmost point is the winter solstice.

Precession: The orientation of the Earth's axis of rotation changes slowly, a phenomenon called precession.

• Precession is caused by the gravitational pull of the Sun and Moon on the Earth's equatorial bulge.

• Precession of the Earth's axis causes the positions of the equinoxes and celestial poles to shift slowly.

• *Because the system of right ascension and declination is tied to the position of the vernal equinox, the date (or epoch) of observation must be specified when giving the position of an object in the sky.

Timekeeping: Astronomers use several different means of keeping time.

• Apparent solar time is based on the apparent motion of the Sun across the celestial sphere, which varies over the course of the year.

• Mean solar time is based on the motion of an imaginary mean sun along the celestial equator, which produces a uniform mean solar day of 24 hours. Ordinary watches and clocks measure mean solar time.

• *Sidereal time is based on the apparent motion of the celestial sphere.

The Calendar: The tropical year is the period between two passages of the Sun across the vernal equinox. Leap year corrections are needed because the tropical year is not exactly 365 days. The sidereal year is the actual orbital period of the Earth.

Questions

Review Questions

1. Describe three structures or carvings made by past civilizations that show an understanding of astronomy.
2. How are constellations useful to astronomers? How many stars are not part of any constellation?
3. A fellow student tells you that only those stars in Figure 2-2*b* that are connected by blue lines are part of the constellation Orion. How would you respond?
4. Why are different stars overhead at 10:00 P.M. on a given night than two hours later at midnight? Why are different stars overhead at midnight on June 1 than at midnight on December 1?
5. What is the celestial sphere? Why is this ancient concept still useful today?
6. Imagine that someone suggests sending a spacecraft to land on the surface of the celestial sphere. How would you respond to such a suggestion?
7. What is the celestial equator? How is it related to the Earth's equator? How are the north and south celestial poles related to the Earth's axis of rotation?
8. Where would you have to look to see your zenith? Where on Earth would you have to be for the celestial equator to pass through your zenith? Where on Earth would you have to be for the south celestial pole to be at your zenith?
9. How many degrees is the angle from the horizon to the zenith? Does your answer depend on what point on the horizon you choose?
10. Why can't a person in Antarctica use the Big Dipper to find the north direction?
11. Is there any place on Earth where you could see the north celestial pole on the northern horizon? If so, where? Is there any place on Earth where you could see the north celestial pole on the western horizon? If so, where? Explain your answers.
12. How do the stars appear to move over the course of the night as seen from the north pole? As seen from the equator? Why are these two motions different?
13. Using a diagram, explain why the tilt of the Earth's axis relative to the Earth's orbit causes the seasons as we orbit the Sun.
14. Give two reasons why it's warmer in summer than in winter.
15. What is the ecliptic plane? What is the ecliptic?
16. Why is the ecliptic tilted with respect to the celestial equator? Does the Sun appear to move along the ecliptic, the celestial equator, or neither? By about how many degrees does the Sun appear to move on the celestial sphere each day?
17. Where on Earth do you have to be in order to see the north celestial pole directly overhead? What is the maximum possible elevation of the Sun above the horizon at that location? On what date can this maximum elevation be observed?
18. What are the vernal and the autumnal equinoxes? What are the summer and winter solstices? How are these four points related to the ecliptic and the celestial equator?
19. At what point on the horizon does the vernal equinox rise? Where on the horizon does it set? (*Hint:* See Figure 2-16.)
20. How does the daily path of the Sun across the sky change with the seasons? Why does it change?
21. Where on Earth do you have to be in order to see the Sun at the zenith? As seen from such a location, will the Sun be at the zenith every day? Explain.
22. What is precession of the equinoxes? What causes it? How long does it take for the vernal equinox to move 1° along the ecliptic?
23. What is the (fictitious) mean sun? What path does it follow on the celestial sphere? Why is it a better timekeeper than the actual Sun in the sky?
24. Why is it convenient to divide the Earth into time zones?
25. Why is the time given by a sundial not necessarily the same as the time on your wristwatch?
26. What is the difference between the sidereal year and the tropical year? Why are these two kinds of year slightly different in length? Why are calendars based on the tropical year?
27. When is the next leap year? Was 2000 a leap year? Will 2100 be a leap year?

Advanced Questions

Questions preceded by an asterisk (*) involve topics discussed in the Boxes.

Problem-solving tips and tools

To help you visualize the heavens, it is worth taking the time to become familiar with various types of star charts. These include the simple star charts at the end of this book, the monthly star charts published in such magazines as *Sky & Telescope* and *Astronomy*, and the more detailed maps of the heavens found in star atlases.

One of the best ways to understand the sky and its motions is to use the *Starry Night Enthusiast*™ computer program on the CD-ROM that accompanies certain printed copies of this book. This easy-to-use program allows you to view the sky on any date and at any time, as seen from any point on Earth, and to animate the sky to visualize its diurnal and annual motions.

You may also find it useful to examine a planisphere, a device consisting of two rotatable disks. The bottom disk shows all the stars in the sky (for a particular latitude), and the top one is opaque with a transparent oval window through which only some of the stars can be seen. By rotating the top disk, you can immediately see which constellations are above the horizon at any time of the year. A planisphere is a convenient tool to carry with you when you are out observing the night sky.

28. On November 1 at 8:30 P.M. you look toward the eastern horizon and see the bright star Bellatrix (shown in Figure 2-2*b*) rising. At approximately what time will Bellatrix rise one week later, on November 8?
29. Figure 2-4 shows the situation on September 21, when Cygnus is highest in the sky at 8:00 P.M. local time and Andromeda is highest in the sky at midnight. But as Figure 2-5 shows, on

July 21 Cygnus is highest in the sky at midnight. On July 21, at approximately what local time is Andromeda highest in the sky? Explain your reasoning.

30. Figure 2-5 shows which constellations are high in the sky (for observers in the northern hemisphere) in the months of July, September, and November. From this figure, would you be able to see Perseus at midnight on May 15? Draw a picture to justify your answer.

31. Figure 2-6 shows the appearance of Polaris, the Little Dipper, and the Big Dipper at 11 P.M. (daylight savings time) on August 1. Sketch how these objects would appear on this same date at (**a**) 8 P.M. and (**b**) 2 A.M. Include the horizon in your sketches, and indicate the north direction.

32. Figure 2-6 shows the appearance of the sky near the North Star at 11 P.M. (daylight savings time) on August 1. Explain why the sky has this same appearance at 1 A.M. on July 1 and at 9 P.M. on September 1.

33. The time-exposure photograph that opens this chapter shows the trails made by individual stars as the celestial sphere appears to rotate around the Earth. (**a**) For approximately what length of time was the camera shutter left open to take this photograph? (**b**) The stars in this photograph (taken in Hawaii, at roughly 20° north latitude) appear to rotate around one of the celestial poles. Which celestial pole is it? As seen from this location, do the stars move clockwise or counterclockwise around this celestial pole? (**c**) If you were at 20° south latitude, which celestial pole could you see? In which direction would you look to see it? As seen from this location, do the stars move clockwise or counterclockwise around this celestial pole?

34. (**a**) Redraw Figure 2-10 for an observer at the north pole. (*Hint:* The north celestial pole is directly above this observer.) (**b**) Redraw Figure 2-10 for an observer at the equator. (*Hint:* The celestial equator passes through this observer's zenith.) (**c**) Using Figure 2-10 and your drawings from (a) and (b), justify the following rule, long used by navigators: The latitude of an observer in the northern hemisphere is equal to the angle in the sky between that observer's horizon and the north celestial pole. (**d**) State the rule that corresponds to (c) for an observer in the southern hemisphere.

35. The photograph that opens this chapter was taken next to the Gemini North Observatory atop Mauna Kea in Hawaii. The telescope is at longitude 155° 28′ 09″ west and latitude 19° 49′ 26″ north. (**a**) By making measurements on the photograph, find the approximate angular width and angular height of the photo. (**b**) How far (in degrees, arcminutes, and arcseconds) from the south celestial pole can a star be and still be circumpolar as seen from the Gemini North Observatory?

36. The Gemini North Observatory shown in the photograph that opens this chapter is located in Hawaii, roughly 20° north of the equator. Its near-twin, the Gemini South Observatory, is located roughly 30° south of the equator in Chile. Why is it useful to have telescopes in both the northern and southern hemispheres?

37. Is there any place on Earth where all the visible stars are circumpolar? If so, where? Is there any place on Earth where none of the visible stars is circumpolar? If so, where? Explain your answers.

R I V U X G

(NASA/JPL)

38. The above image of the Earth was made by the *Galileo* spacecraft while en route to Jupiter. South America is at the center of the image and Antarctica is at the bottom of the image. (**a**) In which month of the year was this image made? Explain your reasoning. (**b**) When this image was made, was the Earth relatively close to the Sun or relatively distant from the Sun? Explain your reasoning.

39. Figure 2-16 shows the daily path of the Sun across the sky on March 21, June 21, September 22, and December 21 for an observer at 35° north latitude. Sketch drawings of this kind for (**a**) an observer at 35° south latitude; (**b**) an observer at the equator; and (**c**) an observer at the north pole.

40. Suppose that you live at a latitude of 40° N. What is the elevation (angle) of the Sun above the southern horizon at noon (**a**) at the time of the vernal equinox? (**b**) at the time of the winter solstice? Explain your reasoning. Include a drawing as part of your explanation.

41. In the northern hemisphere, houses are designed to have "southern exposure," that is, with the largest windows on the southern side of the house. But in the southern hemisphere houses are designed to have "northern exposure." Why are houses designed this way, and why is there a difference between the hemispheres?

42. The city of Mumbai (formerly Bombay) in India is 19° north of the equator. On how many days of the year, if any, is the Sun at the zenith at midday as seen from Mumbai? Explain your answer.

43. Ancient records show that 2000 years ago, the stars of the constellation Crux (the Southern Cross) were visible in the southern sky from Greece. Today, however, these stars cannot be seen from Greece. What accounts for this change?

44. The Great Pyramid at Giza has a tunnel that points toward the north celestial pole. At the time the pyramid was built, around 2600 B.C., toward which star did it point? Toward which star does this same tunnel point today? (See Figure 2-20.)

45. The photo on the next page shows a statue of the Greek god Atlas. The globe that Atlas is holding represents the celestial sphere, with depictions of several important constellations and the celestial equator. Although the statue dates from around 150 A.D., it has been proposed that the arrangement

R I V U X G

(Scala/Art Resource, NY)

of constellations depicts the sky as it was mapped in an early star atlas that dates from 129 B.C. Explain the reasoning that could lead to such a proposal.

46. Unlike western Europe, Imperial Russia did not use the revised calendar instituted by Pope Gregory XIII. Explain why the Russian Revolution, which started on November 7, 1917, according to the modern calendar, is called "the October revolution" in Russia. What was this date according to the Russian calendar at the time? Explain.

***47.** What is the right ascension of a star that is on the meridian at midnight at the time of the autumnal equinox? Explain.

***48.** The coordinates on the celestial sphere of the summer solstice are R.A. = $6^h\ 0^m\ 0^s$, Decl. = $+23°\ 27'$. What are the right ascension and declination of the winter solstice? Explain your answer.

***49.** Because 24 hours of right ascension takes you all the way around the celestial equator, $24^h = 360°$, what is the angle in the sky (measured in degrees) between a star with R.A. = $8^h\ 0^m\ 0^s$, Decl. = $0°\ 0'\ 0''$ and a second star with R.A. = $11^h\ 20^m\ 0^s$, Decl. = $0°\ 0'\ 0''$? Explain your answer.

***50.** On a certain night, the first star in Advanced Question 49 passes through the zenith at 12:30 A.M. local time. At what time will the second star pass through the zenith? Explain your answer.

***51.** At local noon on March 21, when the Sun is at the vernal equinox, a sidereal clock will say that it is midnight. Explain why.

***52.** (**a**) What is the sidereal time when the vernal equinox rises? (**b**) On what date is the sidereal time nearly equal to the solar time? Explain.

***53.** How would the sidereal and solar days change (**a**) if the Earth's rate of rotation increased, (**b**) if the Earth's rate of rotation decreased, and (**c**) if the Earth's rotation were retrograde (that is, if the Earth rotated about its axis opposite to the direction in which it revolves about the Sun)?

Discussion Questions

WEB LINK 2.5

54. Examine a list of the 88 constellations. Are there any constellations whose names obviously date from modern times? Where are these constellations located? Why do you suppose they do not have archaic names?

55. Describe how the seasons would be different if the Earth's axis of rotation, rather than having its present $23\frac{1}{2}°$ tilt, were tilted (**a**) by 0° or (**b**) by 90°.

56. In William Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar* (act 3, scene 1), Caesar says:

> *But I am constant as the northern star,*
> *Of whose true-fix'd and resting quality*
> *There is no fellow in the firmament.*

Translate Caesar's statement about the "northern star" into modern astronomical language. Is the northern star truly "constant"? Was the northern star the same in Shakespeare's time (1564–1616) as it is today?

Web/eBook Questions

57. Search the World Wide Web for information about the national flags of Australia, New Zealand, and Brazil and the state flag of Alaska. Which stars are depicted on these flags? Explain any similarities or differences among these flags.

58. Some people say that on the date that the Sun is at the vernal equinox, and only on this date, you can stand a raw egg on end. Others say that there is nothing special about the vernal equinox, and that with patience you can stand a raw egg on end on any day of the year. Search the World Wide Web for information about this story and for hints about how to stand an egg on end. Use these hints to try the experiment yourself on a day when the Sun is *not* at the vernal equinox. What do you conclude about the connection between eggs and equinoxes?

WEB LINK 2.6

59. Use the U.S. Naval Observatory Web site to find the times of sunset and sunrise on (**a**) your next birthday and (**b**) the date this assignment is due. (**c**) Are the times the same for the two dates? Explain why or why not.

Activities

Observing Projects

> **Observing tips and tools**
>
> WEB LINK 2.7
>
> Moonlight is so bright that it interferes with seeing the stars. For the best view of the constellations, do your observing when the Moon is below the horizon. You can find the times of moonrise and moonset in your local newspaper or on the World Wide Web. Each monthly issue of the magazines *Sky & Telescope* and *Astronomy* includes much additional observing information.

60. On a clear, cloud-free night, use the star charts at the end of this book to see how many constellations of the zodiac you can identify. Which ones were easy to find? Which were difficult? Are the zodiacal constellations the most prominent ones in the sky?

61. Examine the star charts that are published monthly in such popular astronomy magazines as *Sky & Telescope* and *As-*

tronomy. How do they differ from the star charts at the end of this book? On a clear, cloud-free night, use one of these star charts to locate the celestial equator and the ecliptic. Note the inclination of the Milky Way to the ecliptic and celestial equator. The Milky Way traces out the plane of our galaxy. What do your observations tell you about the orientation of the Earth and its orbit relative to the galaxy's plane?

62. Suppose you wake up before dawn and want to see which constellations are in the sky. Explain how the star charts at the end of this book can be quite useful, even though chart times are given only for the evening hours. Which chart most closely depicts the sky at 4:00 A.M. on the morning that this assignment is due? Set your alarm clock for 4:00 A.M. to see if you are correct.

63. Use the *Starry Night Enthusiast™* program to observe the diurnal motion of the sky. Select **Viewing Location . . .** in the **Options** menu, click on the **List** tab, highlight the name of your town or city and click the **Set Location** button to display the sky where you live. a) In the northern hemisphere, press the "N" key to set the gaze direction to the northern sky. (If your location is in the southern hemisphere, press the "S" key to select your southern sky.) Select **Hide Daylight** under the **View** menu. In the toolbar, click on the **Time Flow Rate** control and set the discrete time step to **1 minute.** Then click on the **Play** button (a triangle that points to the right) to run time forward. (To reduce confusion, remove rapidly moving artificial Earth-orbiting satellites from this view by clicking on **View/Solar System** and turning off **Satellites**). Do the background stars appear to rotate clockwise or counterclockwise? Explain this observation in terms of the Earth's rotation. Are any of the stars circumpolar, that is, do they stay above your horizon for the full 24 hours of a day? b) Now center your field of view on the southern horizon if you live in the northern hemisphere) (or the northern horizon, if you live in the southern hemisphere). Describe what you see. Are any of these stars circumpolar?

64. Use the *Starry Night Enthusiast™* program to observe the Sun's motion on the celestial sphere. Select **Guides > Atlas** in the **Favourites** menu to see the entire celestial sphere as if you were at the center of a transparent Earth. Open the **Find pane** and double-click on the entry for the **Sun** to center it in the view. a) In the toolbar at the top of the main window, set the **Time Flow Rate** to **1 day** and set time to move forward, using the **Play** button (a triangle that points to the right). Observe the Sun for a full year of simulated time. How does the Sun appear to move against the background stars? What path does it follow? Does it ever change direction? b) Open the **Options** pane, expand the **Constellations** layer and select the **Auto Identify, Boundaries and Labels** checkboxes to turn these constellation options on. In the toolbar, click on the **Now** button to return to your present time. Again, open the **Find** pane and double-click on the Sun to center it in your view. In which constellation is the Sun located today? Is this the same as the astrological sign for today's date? Explain your answer in terms of precession. (c) Set the discrete **Time Flow Rate** to **1 day** and click the **Play** button. Through which constellations does the Sun appear to pass over the course of a year?

65. Use the *Starry Night Enthusiast™* program to investigate the orbits of the Earth and some of the other planets around the Sun from a position 4 AU above the North Pole of the Sun. Select **Viewing Location . . .** in the **Options** menu. In the Viewing Location dialog box, select **stationary location** in the **View from** drop box. In the edit boxes beneath the **Cartesian coordinates** label, enter "0" for the **X** and **Y** values and "4 AU" for the **Z** value. Then click the **Set Location** button. You are now at the above position in space. Open the **Find** pane and center the view upon the Sun from this point in space, 4 AU above the North Pole of the Sun. You will now be able to see the orbits of the four inner planets of the Solar System nearly face-on. To display the Earth's orbit, click the checkbox to the right of the label **Earth** in the **Find** pane. a) Can you tell from this view that the Earth's orbit is not a perfect circle, as we learned in Section 2-7? b) In the **Find** pane, click in the checkbox to the right of the labels for the other three inner planets (Mercury, Venus, and Mars) to display their orbits in the view. Of these four inner planets, which have orbits that are clearly noncircular? (You may want to use a ruler to measure the distance from the Sun to various points on each planet's orbit. If the distance is the same at all points then the orbit is circular; otherwise, it is noncircular.) c) Now change your view so that it is in the plane of the Earth's orbit. Select **Viewing Location . . .** from the **Options** menu. In the Viewing Location dialog box, enter "0" for the **X** and **Z** Cartesian coordinates and enter "4 AU" for the **Y** coordinate. This view shows an edge-on view of the orbits of the four inner planets. Do the orbits of the other planets lie in the same plane as the plane of the Earth's orbit (the ecliptic plane)? Which planet's orbit appears to be tilted the most from the Earth's orbit? (You may need to use the **Zoom** controls at the right side of the toolbar to investigate this.) If you were on any of these other planets in the solar system, would the Sun appear to follow exactly the same path across the celestial sphere as is seen from Earth?

Why Astrology Is Not Science

by James Randi

I'm involved in the strange business of telling folks what they should already know. I meet audiences who believe in all sorts of impossible things, often despite their education and intelligence. My job is to explain how science differs from the unproven, illogical assumptions of pseudoscience—and why it matters. Perhaps my best example is the difference between astronomy and astrology.

Both astrology and astronomy arose from the wonders of the night sky, from the stars to comets, planets, the Sun, and the Moon. Surely, humans have long reasoned, there must be some meaning in their motions. Surely the Moon's effect on tides hints at hidden "causes" for strange events. *Judiciary* (literally "judging") astrology therefore attempted to foretell the future—our earthly future. To serve it, *horary* (literally "hourly") astrology carefully tracked the heavens.

It is the latter that has become astronomy. Thanks to its process of careful measurement and testing, we now understand more about the true nature of the starry universe than astrologers could ever have imagined. With the birth of a new science, astronomers had a logical framework based on physical causes and systematic observations.

Astrology remains a popular delusion. Far too many believe today that patterns in the sky govern our lives. They accept the vague tendencies and portents of seers who cast horoscopes. They shouldn't. Just a glance at the tenets of astrology provides ample evidence of its absurdity.

An individual is said to be born under a sign. To the astrologer, the Sun was located "in" that sign at the moment of birth. (Stars are not seen in the daytime, but no matter—a calculation tells where the Sun is.) Each sign takes its name from a constellation, a totally imaginary figure invented for our convenience in referring to stars. Different cultures have different mythical figures up there, and so different schools of astrology assign different meanings to the signs they use.

In the spirit of equal-opportunity swindling, astrologers divide up the year fairly, ignoring variations in the size of constellations. Since Libra is tiny, while Virgo is huge, they chop some of the sky off Virgo and add it—along with bits of Scorpio—to bring Libra up to size. The Sun could well be declared "in" Libra when it is actually outside that constellation.

It gets worse. Science constantly challenges itself and changes. The rules of astrology could not, although they were made up thousands of years ago, and since then the "fixed" stars have moved. In particular, precession of the equinoxes has shifted objects in the sky relative to our calendar. The constellations have changed but astrology has not. If you were born August 7, you are said to be a Leo, but the Sun that day was really in the same part of the sky as the constellation Cancer.

With a theory like this to back it up, we should not be surprised at the bottom line: *A pseudoscience does not work*. Test after test has checked its predictions, and the result is always the same. One such investigator is Shawn Carlson of the University of California, San Diego. As he put it in *Nature* magazine, astrology is "a hopeless cause." Johannes Kepler, the pioneering astronomer, himself cast horoscopes, but they are little remembered today. Owen Gingerich, a historian of science at Harvard, puts it well: Kepler was the astrologer who destroyed astrology.

Astronomy works, and it works very well indeed. That isn't easy. Because we humans tend to find what we want in any body of data, it takes science's careful process of observation, creative insight, and critical thinking to understand and predict changes in nature. As I write, a transit of Ganymede is due next Thursday at 21:47:20. At exactly that time, the satellite of Jupiter will cross in front of its planet as seen from Earth, and yet most of us will never know it. Still other moons of Jupiter may hold fresh clues to the formation of our entire solar system and the conditions for life elsewhere.

For most people, astronomy has too little fantasy or money in it, and they will never experience the beauty in its predictions. The dedicated labors of generations of scientists have enabled us to perform a genuine wonder.

James ("the Amazing") Randi works tirelessly to expose trickery so that others can relish the greater wonder of science. As a magician, he has had his own television show and an enormous public following. As a lecturer, he addresses teachers, students, and others worldwide. His newsletter and column for *The Skeptic* are key resources for educators. His many books include *Flim-Flam!, The Faith Healers,* and *The Mask of Nostradamus,* about a legendary con man with secrets of his own.

Mr. Randi helped found the Committee for the Scientific Investigation of Claims of the Paranormal, and his $10,000 prize for "the performance of any paranormal event . . . under proper observing conditions" has gone unclaimed for more than 25 years. An amateur archeologist and astronomer as well, he lives in Florida with several untalented parrots and the occasional visiting magus.

3

Eclipses and the Motion of the Moon

On March 29, 2006, a rare cosmic spectacle—a total solar eclipse—was visible along a narrow corridor that extended from the coast of Brazil through equatorial Africa and into central Asia. As shown in this digital composite taken in Turkey, the Moon slowly moved over the disk of the Sun. (Time flows from left to right in this image.) For a few brief minutes the Sun was totally covered, darkening the sky and revealing the Sun's thin outer atmosphere, or corona, which glows with an unearthly pearlescent light.

Such eclipses can be seen only on specific dates from special locations on Earth, so not everyone will ever see the Moon cover the Sun in this way. But anyone can find the Moon in the sky and observe how its appearance changes from night to night, from new moon to full moon and back again, and how the times when the Moon rises and sets differ noticeably from one night to the next.

In this chapter our subject is how the Moon moves as seen from the Earth. We will explore why the Moon goes through a regular cycle of phases, and how the Moon's orbit around the Earth leads to solar eclipses as well as lunar eclipses. We will also see how ancient astronomers used their observations of the Moon to determine the size and shape of the Earth, as well as other features of the solar system. Thus, the Moon—which has always loomed large in the minds of poets, lovers, and dreamers—has also played a key role in the development of our modern picture of the universe.

WEB LINK 3.1

R I **V** U X G

The Sun in total eclipse, March 29, 2006. (Stefan Seip)

3-1 The phases of the Moon are caused by its orbital motion

As seen from Earth, both the Sun and the Moon appear to move from west to east on the celestial sphere—that is, relative to the background of stars. They move at very different rates, however. The Sun takes one year to make a complete trip around the imaginary celestial sphere along the path we call the *ecliptic* (Section 2-5). By comparison, the Moon takes only about four weeks. In the past, these similar motions led people to believe that both the Sun and the

You can tell the Moon's position relative to the Earth and Sun by observing its phase

Learning Goals

By reading the sections of this chapter, you will learn

3-1 Why we see the Moon go through phases

3-2 Why we always see the same side of the Moon

3-3 The differences between lunar and solar eclipses

3-4 Why not all lunar eclipses are total eclipses

3-5 Why solar eclipses are visible only from certain special locations on Earth

3-6 How ancient Greek astronomers deduced the sizes of the Earth, the Moon, and the Sun

Figure 3-1 R I **V** U X G

The Earth and the Moon This picture of the Earth and the Moon was taken in 1992 by the *Galileo* spacecraft on its way toward Jupiter. The Sun, which provides the illumination for both the Earth and the Moon, was far to the right and out of the camera's field of view when this photograph was taken. (NASA/JPL)

Moon orbit around the Earth. We now know that only the Moon orbits the Earth, while the Earth-Moon system as a whole (Figure 3-1) orbits the Sun. (In Chapter 4 we will learn how this was discovered.)

One key difference between the Sun and the Moon is the nature of the light that we receive from them. The Sun emits its own light. So do the stars, which are objects like the Sun but much farther away, and so does an ordinary light bulb. By contrast, the light that we see from the Moon is reflected light. This is sunlight that has struck the Moon's surface, bounced off, and ended up in our eyes here on Earth.

CAUTION! You probably associate *reflection* with shiny objects like a mirror or the surface of a still lake. In science, however, the term refers to light bouncing off any object. You see most objects around you by reflected light. When you look at your hand, for example, you are seeing light from the Sun (or from a light fixture) that has been reflected from the skin of your hand and into your eye. In the same way, moonlight is really sunlight that has been reflected by the Moon's surface.

Understanding the Moon's Phases

Figure 3-1 shows both the Moon and the Earth as seen from a spacecraft. When this image was recorded, the Sun was far off to the right. Hence, only the right-hand hemispheres of both worlds were illuminated by the Sun; the left-hand hemispheres were in darkness and are not visible in the picture. In the same way, when we view the Moon from the Earth, we see only the half of the Moon that faces the Sun and is illuminated. However, not all of the illuminated half of the Moon is necessarily facing us. As the Moon moves around the Earth, from one night to the next we see different amounts of the illuminated half of the Moon. These different appearances of the Moon are called **lunar phases.**

INTERACTIVE EXERCISE 3-1

Figure 3-2 shows the relationship between the lunar phase visible from Earth and the position of the Moon in its orbit. For example, when the Moon is at position A, we see it in roughly the same direction in the sky as the Sun. Hence, the dark hemisphere of the Moon faces the Earth. This phase, in which the Moon is barely visible, is called **new moon.** Since a new moon is near the Sun in the sky, it rises around sunrise and sets around sunset.

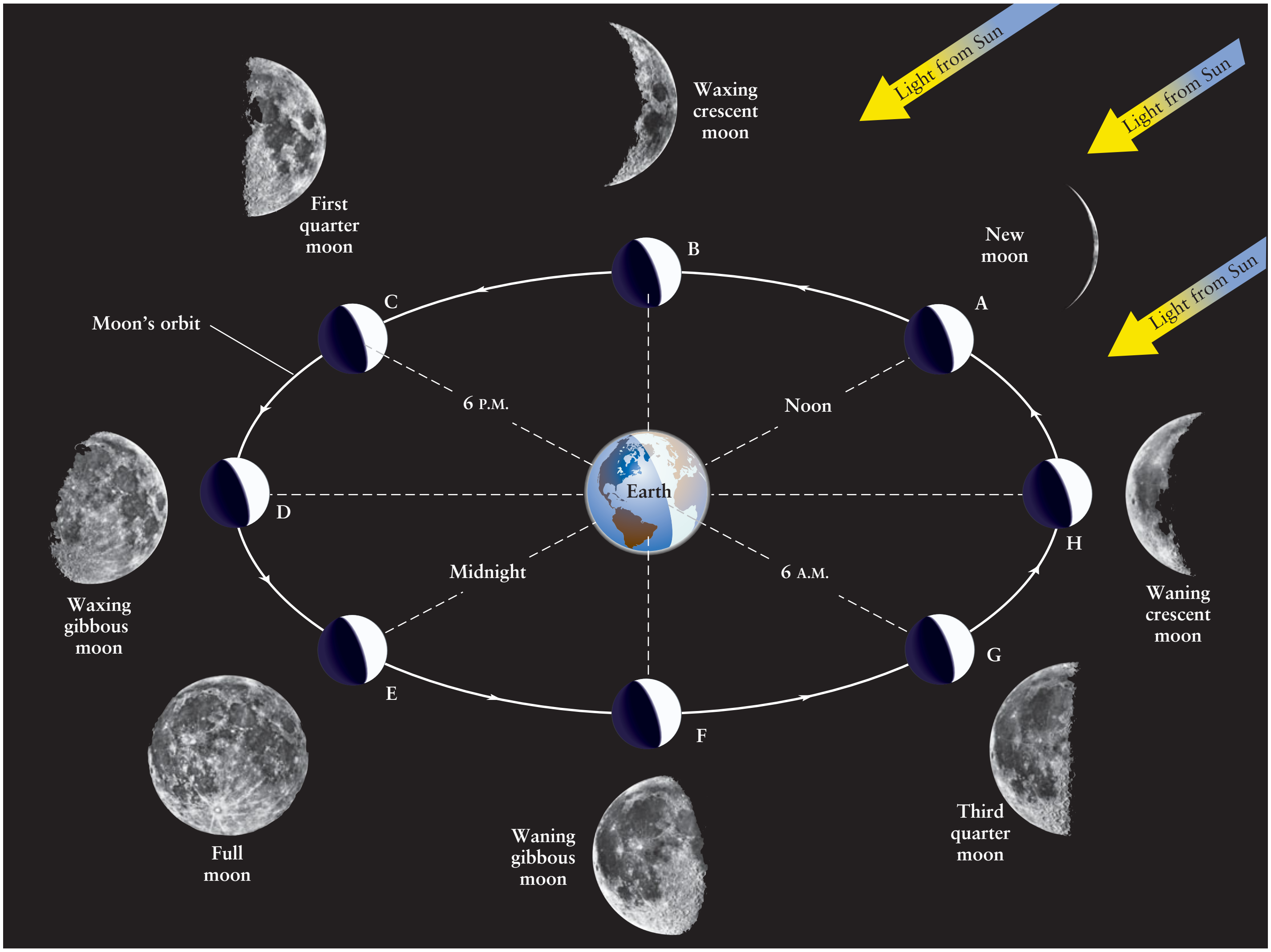
As the Moon continues around its orbit from position A in Figure 3-2, more of its illuminated half becomes exposed to our view. The result, shown at position B, is a phase called **waxing crescent moon** ("waxing" is a synonym for "increasing"). About a week after new moon, the Moon is at position C; we then see half of the Moon's illuminated hemisphere and half of the dark hemisphere. This phase is called **first quarter moon.**

As seen from Earth, a first quarter moon is one-quarter of the way around the celestial sphere from the Sun. It rises and sets about one-quarter of an Earth rotation, or six hours, after the Sun does: moonrise occurs around noon, and moonset occurs around midnight.

CAUTION! Despite the name, a first quarter moon appears to be *half* illuminated, not one-quarter illuminated! The name means that this phase is one-quarter of the way through the complete cycle of lunar phases.

About four days later, the Moon reaches position D in Figure 3-2. Still more of the illuminated hemisphere can now be seen from Earth, giving us the phase called **waxing gibbous moon** ("gibbous" is another word for "swollen"). When you look at the Moon in this phase, as in the waxing crescent and first quarter phases, the illuminated part of the Moon is toward the west. Two weeks after new moon, when the Moon stands opposite the Sun in the sky (position E), we see the fully illuminated hemisphere. This phase is called **full moon.** Because a full moon is opposite the Sun on the celestial sphere, it rises at sunset and sets at sunrise.

Over the following two weeks, we see less and less of the Moon's illuminated hemisphere as it continues along its orbit, and the Moon is said to be *waning* ("decreasing"). While the Moon is waning, its illuminated side is toward the east. The phases are called **waning gibbous moon** (position F), **third quarter moon** (position G, also called *last quarter moon*), and **waning crescent moon** (position H). A third quarter moon appears one-quarter of the way around the celestial sphere from the Sun, but on the opposite side of the celestial sphere from a first quarter moon. Hence, a third quarter moon rises and sets about one-



ANIMATION 3.1

Figure 3-2

Why the Moon Goes Through Phases This figure shows the Moon at eight positions on its orbit, along with photographs of what the Moon looks like at each position as seen from Earth. The changes in phase occur because light from the Sun illuminates one half of the Moon, and as the Moon orbits the Earth we see varying amounts of the Moon's illuminated half. It takes about $29\frac{1}{2}$ days for the Moon to go through a complete cycle of phases. (Photographs from Yerkes Observatory and Lick Observatory)

quarter Earth rotation, or 6 hours, *before* the Sun: moonrise is around midnight and moonset is around noon.

The Moon takes about four weeks to complete one orbit around the Earth, so it likewise takes about four weeks for a complete cycle of phases from new moon to full moon and back to new moon. Since the Moon's position relative to the Sun on the celestial sphere is constantly changing, and since our system of timekeeping is based on the Sun (see Section 2-7), the times of moonrise and moonset are different on different nights. On average the Moon rises and sets about an hour later each night.

Figure 3-2 also explains why the Moon is often visible in the daytime, as shown in Figure 3-3. From any location on Earth, about half of the Moon's orbit is visible at any time. For example, if it is midnight at your location, you are in the middle of the dark side of the Earth that faces away from the Sun. At that time you can easily see the Moon if it is at position C, D, E, F, or G. If it is midday at your location, you are in the middle of the Earth's illuminated side, and the Moon will be easily visible if it is at position A, B, C, G, or H. (The Moon is so bright that it can be seen even against the bright blue sky.) You can see that the Moon is prominent in the midnight sky for about half of its orbit, and prominent in the midday sky for the other half.

CAUTION! A very common misconception about lunar phases is that they are caused by the shadow of the *Earth* falling on the Moon. As Figure 3-2 shows, this is not the case at all. Instead, phases are simply the result of our seeing the illuminated half of the Moon at different angles as the Moon moves around its orbit. To help you better visualize how this works, Box 3-1 describes how you can simulate the cycle shown in Figure 3-2 using ordinary objects on Earth. (As we will learn in Section 3-3, the Earth's shadow does indeed fall on the Moon on rare occasions. When this happens, we see a lunar eclipse.)

Figure 3-3 R I V U X G

The Moon During the Day The Moon can be seen during the daytime as well as at night. The time of day or night when it is visible depends on its phase. [Karl Beath/Gallo Images/Getty Images]

BOX 3-1 The Heavens on the Earth

Phases and Shadows

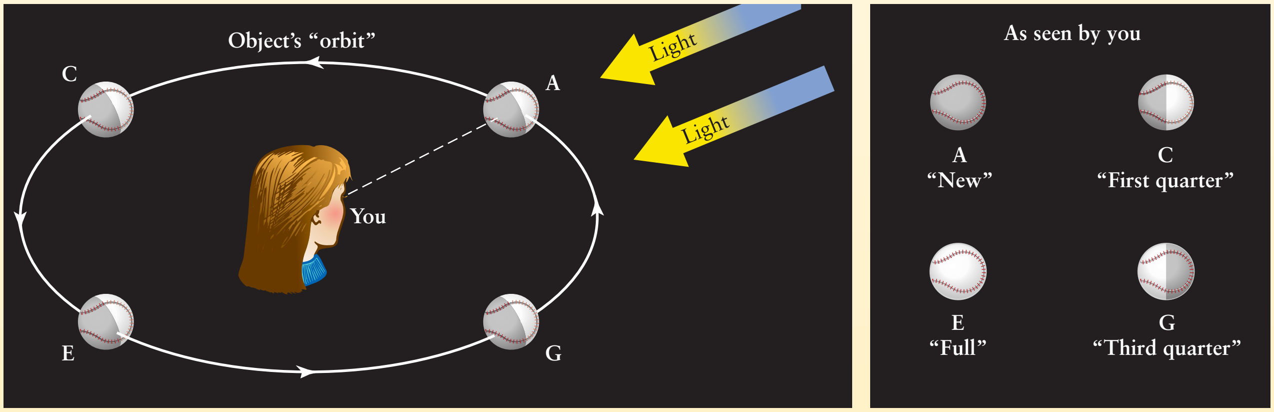
Figure 3-2 shows how the relative positions of the Earth, Moon, and Sun explain the phases of the Moon. You can visualize lunar phases more clearly by doing a simple experiment here on Earth. All you need are a small round object, such as an orange or a baseball, and a bright source of light, such as a street lamp or the Sun.

In this experiment, you play the role of an observer on the Earth looking at the Moon, and the round object plays the role of the Moon. The light source plays the role of the Sun. Hold the object in your right hand with your right arm stretched straight out in front of you, with the object directly between you and the light source (position A in the accompanying illustration). In this orientation the illuminated half of the object faces away from you, like the Moon when it is in its new phase (position A in Figure 3-2).

Now, slowly turn your body to the left so that the object in your hand "orbits" around you (toward positions C, E, and G in the illustration). As you turn, more and more of the illuminated side of the "moon" in your hand becomes visible, and it goes through the same cycle of phases—waxing crescent, first quarter, and waxing gibbous—as does the real Moon. When you have rotated through half a turn so that the light source is directly behind you, you will be looking face on at the illuminated side of the object in your hand. This corresponds to a full moon (position E in Figure 3-2). Make sure your body does not cast a shadow on the "moon" in your hand—that would correspond to a lunar eclipse!

As you continue turning to the left, more of the unilluminated half of the object becomes visible as its phase moves through waning gibbous, third quarter, and waning crescent. When your body has rotated back to the same orientation that you were in originally, the unilluminated half of your hand-held "moon" is again facing toward you, and its phase is again new. If you continue to rotate, the object in your hand repeats the cycle of "phases," just as the Moon does as it orbits around the Earth.

The experiment works best when there is just one light source around. If there are several light sources, such as in a room with several lamps turned on, the different sources will create multiple shadows and it will be difficult to see the phases of your hand-held "moon." If you do the experiment outdoors using sunlight, you may find that it is best to perform it in the early morning or late afternoon when shadows are most pronounced and the Sun's rays are nearly horizontal.



3-2 The Moon always keeps the same face toward the Earth

Although the phase of the Moon is constantly changing, one aspect of its appearance remains the same: it always keeps essentially the same hemisphere, or face, toward the Earth. Thus, you will always see the same craters and mountains on the Moon, no matter when you look at it; the only difference will be the angle at which these surface features are illuminated by the Sun. (You can verify this by carefully examining the photographs of the Moon in Figure 3-2.)

The Moon rotates in a special way: it spins exactly once per orbit

The Moon's Synchronous Rotation

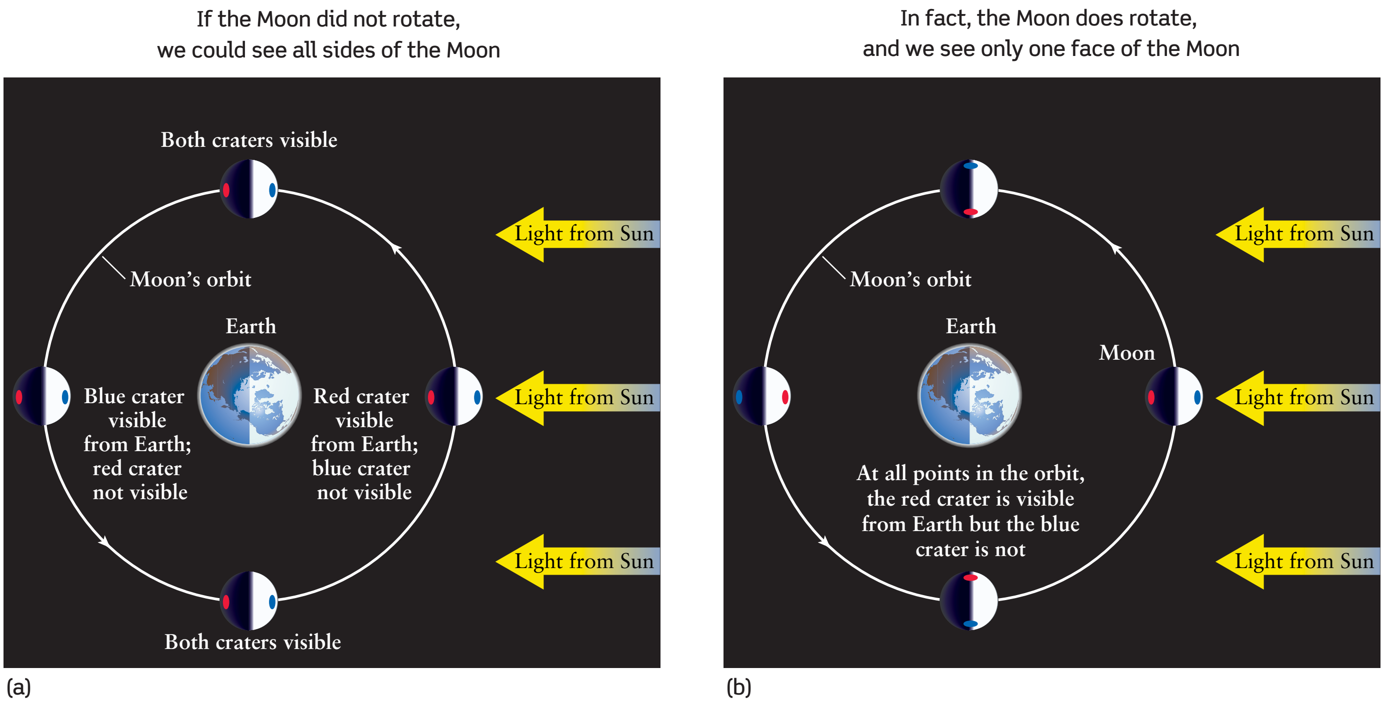
Why is it that we only ever see one face of the Moon? You might think that it is because the Moon does not rotate (unlike the Earth, which rotates around an axis that passes from its north pole to its south pole). To see that this *cannot* be the case, consider Figure 3-4. This figure shows the Earth and the orbiting Moon from a vantage point far above the Earth's north pole. In this figure two craters on the lunar surface have been colored, one in red and one in blue. If the Moon did not rotate on its axis, as in Figure 3-4*a*, at some times the red crater would be visible from Earth, while at other times the blue crater would be visible. Thus, we would see different parts of the lunar surface over time, which does not happen in reality.

In fact, the Moon always keeps the same face toward us because it *is* rotating, but in a very special way: It takes exactly as long to rotate on its axis as it does to make one orbit around the Earth. This situation is called **synchronous rotation.** As Figure 3-4*b* shows, this keeps the crater shown in red always facing the Earth, so that we always see the same face of the Moon. In Chapter 4 we will learn why the Moon's rotation and orbital motion are in step with each other.

An astronaut standing at the spot shown in red in Figure 3-4*b* would spend two weeks (half of a lunar orbit) in darkness, or lunar nighttime, and the next two weeks in sunlight, or lunar daytime. Thus, as seen from the Moon, the Sun rises and sets, and no part of the Moon is perpetually in darkness. This means that there really is no "dark side of the Moon." The side of the Moon that constantly faces away from the Earth is properly called the *far* side. The Sun rises and sets on the far side just as on the side toward the Earth. Hence, the blue crater on the far side of the Moon in Figure 3-4*b* is in sunlight for half of each lunar orbit.

Sidereal and Synodic Months

The time for a complete lunar "day"—the same as the time that it takes the Moon to rotate once on its axis—is about four weeks. (Because the Moon's rotation is synchronous, it takes the same time for one complete lunar orbit.) It also takes about four weeks for the Moon to complete one cycle of its phases as seen from Earth. This regular cycle of phases inspired our ancestors to invent the concept of a month. For historical reasons, none of which



ANIMATION 3.2

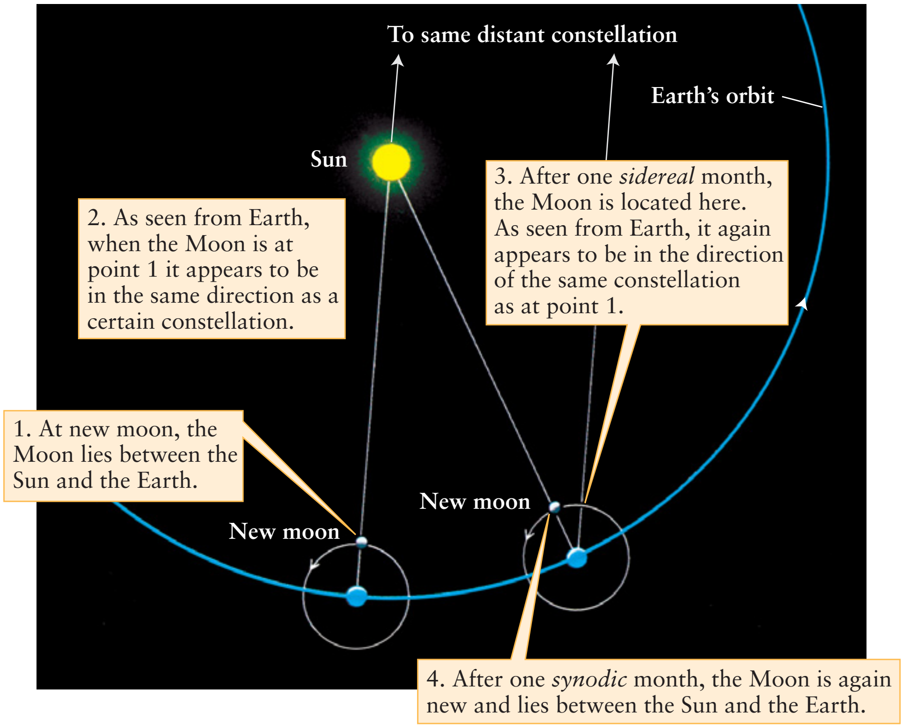
Figure 3-4

The Moon's Rotation These diagrams show the Moon at four points in its orbit as viewed from high above the Earth's north pole. **(a)** If the Moon did not rotate, then at various times the red crater would be visible from Earth while at other times the blue crater would be visible. Over a complete orbit, the entire surface of the Moon would be visible. **(b)** In reality, the Moon rotates on its north-south axis. Because the Moon makes one rotation in exactly the same time that it makes one orbit around the Earth, we see only one face of the Moon.

ANIMATION 3.3

Figure 3-5

The Sidereal and Synodic Months The sidereal month is the time the Moon takes to complete one full revolution around the Earth with respect to the background stars. However, because the Earth is constantly moving along its orbit about the Sun, the Moon must travel through slightly more than 360° of its orbit to get from one new moon to the next. Thus, the synodic month—the time from one new moon to the next—is longer than the sidereal month.



has much to do with the heavens, the calendar we use today has months of differing lengths. Astronomers find it useful to define two other types of months, depending on whether the Moon's motion is measured relative to the stars or to the Sun. Neither corresponds exactly to the familiar months of the calendar.

The **sidereal month** is the time it takes the Moon to complete one full orbit of the Earth, as measured with respect to the stars. This true orbital period is equal to about 27.32 days. The **synodic month,** or *lunar month*, is the time it takes the Moon to complete one cycle of phases (that is, from new moon to new moon or from full moon to full moon) and thus is measured with respect to the Sun rather than the stars. The length of the "day" on the Moon is a synodic month, not a sidereal month.

The synodic month is longer than the sidereal month because the Earth is orbiting the Sun while the Moon goes through its phases. As Figure 3-5 shows, the Moon must travel *more* than 360° along its orbit to complete a cycle of phases (for example, from one new moon to the next). Because of this extra distance, the synodic month is equal to about 29.53 days, about two days longer than the sidereal month.

Both the sidereal month and synodic month vary somewhat from one orbit to another, the latter by as much as half a day. The reason is that the Sun's gravity sometimes causes the Moon to speed up or slow down slightly in its orbit, depending on the relative positions of the Sun, Moon, and Earth. Furthermore, the Moon's orbit changes slightly from one month to the next.

3-3 Eclipses occur only when the Sun and Moon are both on the line of nodes

From time to time the Sun, Earth, and Moon all happen to lie along a straight line. When this occurs, the shadow of the Earth can fall on the Moon or the shadow of the Moon can fall on the Earth. Such phenomena are called **eclipses.** They are perhaps the most dramatic astronomical events that can be seen with the naked eye.

The tilt of the Moon's orbit makes lunar and solar eclipses rare events

A **lunar eclipse** occurs when the Moon passes through the Earth's shadow. This occurs when the Sun, Earth, and Moon are in a straight line, with the Earth between the Sun and Moon so that the Moon is at full phase (position E in Figure 3-2). At this point in the Moon's orbit, the face of the Moon seen from Earth would normally be fully illuminated by the Sun. Instead, it appears quite dim because the Earth casts a shadow on the Moon.

A **solar eclipse** occurs when the Earth passes through the Moon's shadow. As seen from Earth, the Moon moves in front of the Sun. Once again, this can happen only when the Sun, Moon, and Earth are in a straight line. However, for a solar eclipse to occur, the Moon must be between the Earth and the Sun. Therefore, a solar eclipse can occur only at new moon (position A in Figure 3-2).

CAUTION! Both new moon and full moon occur at intervals of $29\frac{1}{2}$ days. Hence, you might expect that there would be a solar eclipse every $29\frac{1}{2}$ days, followed by a lunar eclipse about two weeks (half a lunar orbit) later. But in fact, there are only a few solar eclipses and lunar eclipses per year. Solar and lunar eclipses are so infrequent because the plane of the Moon's orbit and the plane of the Earth's orbit are not exactly aligned, as Figure 3-6 shows. The angle between the plane of the Earth's orbit and the plane of the Moon's orbit is about 5°. Because of this tilt, new moon and full moon usually occur when the Moon is either above or below the plane of the Earth's orbit. When the Moon is not in the plane of the Earth's orbit, the Sun, Moon, and Earth cannot align perfectly, and an eclipse cannot occur.

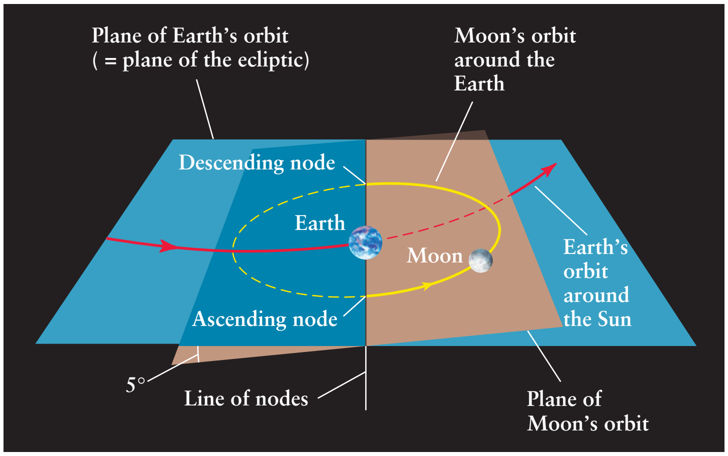


Figure 3-6

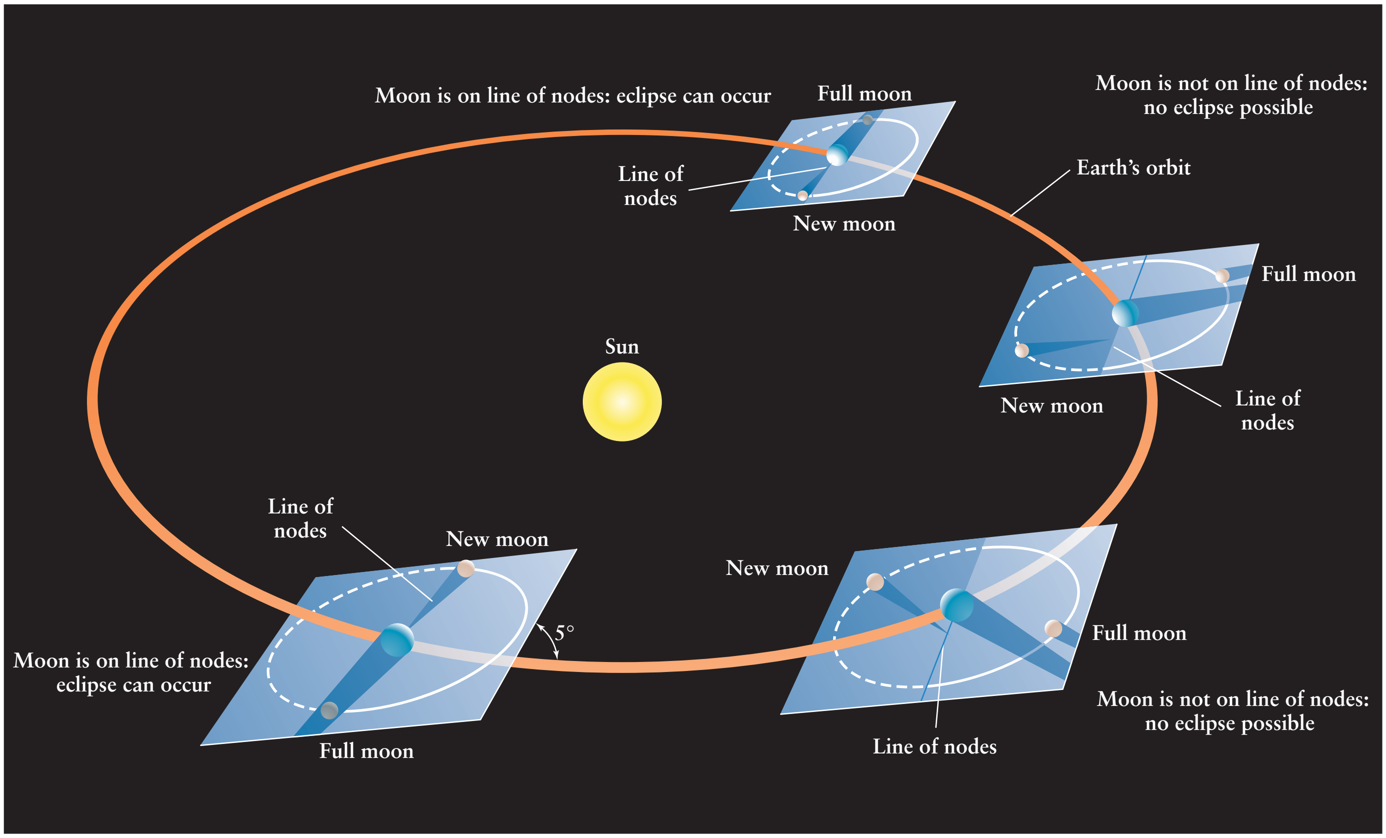
The Inclination of the Moon's Orbit This drawing shows the Moon's orbit around the Earth (in yellow) and part of the Earth's orbit around the Sun (in red). The plane of the Moon's orbit (shown in brown) is tilted by about 5° with respect to the plane of the Earth's orbit, also called the plane of the ecliptic (shown in blue). These two planes intersect along a line called the line of nodes.

In order for the Sun, Earth, and Moon to be lined up for an eclipse, the Moon must lie in the same plane as the Earth's orbit around the Sun. As we saw in Section 2-5, this plane is called the *ecliptic plane* because it is the same as the plane of the Sun's apparent path around the sky, or ecliptic (see Figure 2-14). Thus, when an eclipse occurs, the Moon appears from Earth to be on the ecliptic—which is how the ecliptic gets its name.

The planes of the Earth's orbit and the Moon's orbit intersect along a line called the **line of nodes**, shown in Figure 3-6. The line of nodes passes through the Earth and is pointed in a particular direction in space. Eclipses can occur only if the line of nodes is pointed toward the Sun—that is, if the Sun lies on or near the line of nodes—and if, at the same time, the Moon lies on or very near the line of nodes. Only then do the Sun, Earth, and Moon lie in a line straight enough for an eclipse to occur (Figure 3-7).

LOOKING DEEPER 3.1

Anyone who wants to predict eclipses must know the orientation of the line of nodes. But the line of nodes is gradually shifting because of the gravitational pull of the Sun on the Moon. As a result, the line of nodes rotates slowly westward. Astronomers calculate such details to fix the dates and times of upcoming eclipses.



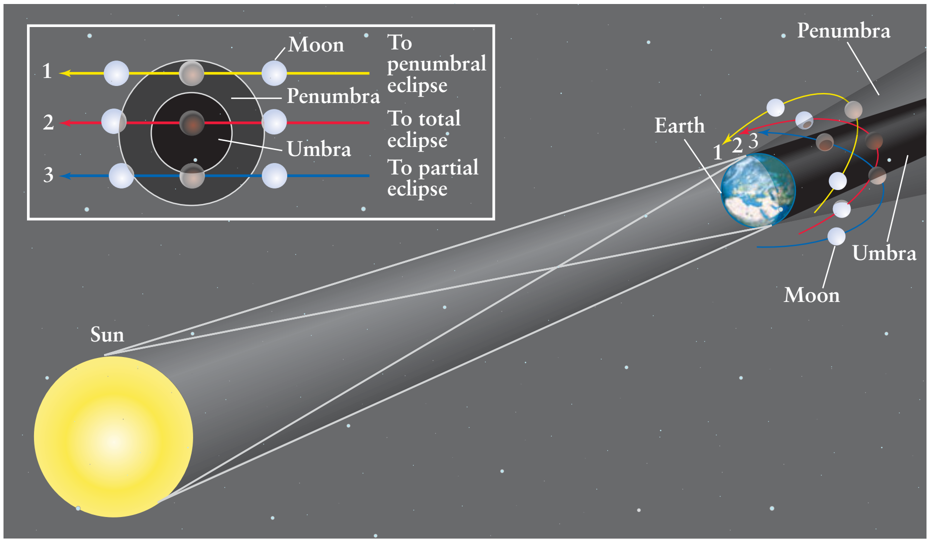
INTERACTIVE EXERCISE 3.2

Figure 3-7

Conditions for Eclipses Eclipses can take place only if the Sun and Moon are both very near to or on the line of nodes. Only then can the Sun, Earth, and Moon all lie along a straight line. A solar eclipse occurs only if the Moon is very near the line of nodes at new moon; a lunar eclipse occurs only if the Moon is very near the line of nodes at full moon. If the Sun and Moon are not near the line of nodes, the Moon's shadow cannot fall on the Earth and the Earth's shadow cannot fall on the Moon.

INTERACTIVE EXERCISE 3.3

Figure 3-8



Three Types of Lunar Eclipse People on the nighttime side of the Earth see a lunar eclipse when the Moon moves through the Earth's shadow. In the umbra, the darkest part of the shadow, the Sun is completely covered by the Earth. The penumbra is less dark because only part of the Sun is covered by the Earth. The three paths show the motion of the Moon if the lunar eclipse is penumbral (Path 1, in yellow), total (Path 2, in red), or partial (Path 3, in blue). The inset shows these same paths, along with the umbra and penumbra, as viewed from the Earth.

There are at least two—but never more than five—solar eclipses each year. The last year in which five solar eclipses occurred was 1935. The least number of eclipses possible (two solar, zero lunar) happened in 1969. Lunar eclipses occur just about as frequently as solar eclipses, but the maximum possible number of eclipses (lunar and solar combined) in a single year is seven.

3-4 The character of a lunar eclipse depends on the alignment of the Sun, Earth, and Moon

The character of a lunar eclipse depends on exactly how the Moon travels through the Earth's shadow. As Figure 3-8 shows, the shadow of the Earth has two distinct parts. In the **umbra**, the darkest part of the shadow, no portion of the Sun's surface can be seen. A portion of the Sun's surface is visible in the **penumbra**, which therefore is not quite as dark. Most people notice a lunar eclipse only if the Moon passes into the Earth's umbra. As this umbral phase of the eclipse begins, a bite seems to be taken out of the Moon.

A lunar eclipse is most impressive when total, but can also be partial or penumbral

The inset in Figure 3-8 shows the different ways in which the Moon can pass into the Earth's shadow. When the Moon passes through only the Earth's penumbra (Path 1), we see a **penumbral eclipse.** During a penumbral eclipse, the Earth blocks only part of the Sun's light and so none of the lunar surface is completely shaded. Because the Moon still looks full but only a little dimmer than usual, penumbral eclipses are easy to miss. If the Moon travels completely into the umbra (Path 2), a **total lunar eclipse** occurs. If only part of the Moon passes through the umbra (Path 3), we see a **partial lunar eclipse.**

If you were on the Moon during a total lunar eclipse, the Sun would be hidden behind the Earth. But some sunlight would be visible through the thin ring of atmosphere around the Earth, just as you can see sunlight through a person's hair if they stand with their head between your eyes and the Sun. As a result, a small amount of light reaches the Moon during a total lunar eclipse, and so the Moon does not completely disappear from the sky as seen from Earth. Most of the sunlight that passes through the Earth's atmosphere is red, and thus the eclipsed Moon glows faintly in reddish hues, as Figure 3-9 shows. (We'll see in Chapter 5 how our atmosphere causes this reddish color.)

Lunar eclipses occur at full moon, when the Moon is directly opposite the Sun in the sky. Hence, a lunar eclipse can be seen at any place on Earth where the Sun is below the horizon (that is, where it is nighttime). A lunar eclipse has the maximum possible duration if the Moon travels directly through the center of the umbra. The Moon's speed through the Earth's shadow is roughly 1 kilometer per second (3600 kilometers per hour, or 2280 miles per hour), which means that **totality**—the period when the Moon is completely within the Earth's umbra—can last for as long as 1 hour and 42 minutes.

WEB LINK 3.2

On average, two or three lunar eclipses occur in a year. Table 3-1 lists all 12 lunar eclipses from 2007 to 2011. Of all lunar eclipses, roughly one-third are total, one-third are partial, and one-third are penumbral.

3-5 Solar eclipses also depend on the alignment of the Sun, Earth, and Moon

As seen from Earth, the angular diameter of the Moon is almost exactly the same as the angular diameter of the far larger but more distant Sun—about 0.5°. Thanks to this coincidence of nature, the Moon just "fits" over the Sun during a **total solar eclipse.**

Total Solar Eclipses

A total solar eclipse is a dramatic event. The sky begins to darken, the air temperature falls, and winds increase as the Moon gradually covers more and more of the Sun's disk. All nature responds: Birds go to roost,

The Sun's tenuous outer atmosphere is revealed during a total solar eclipse

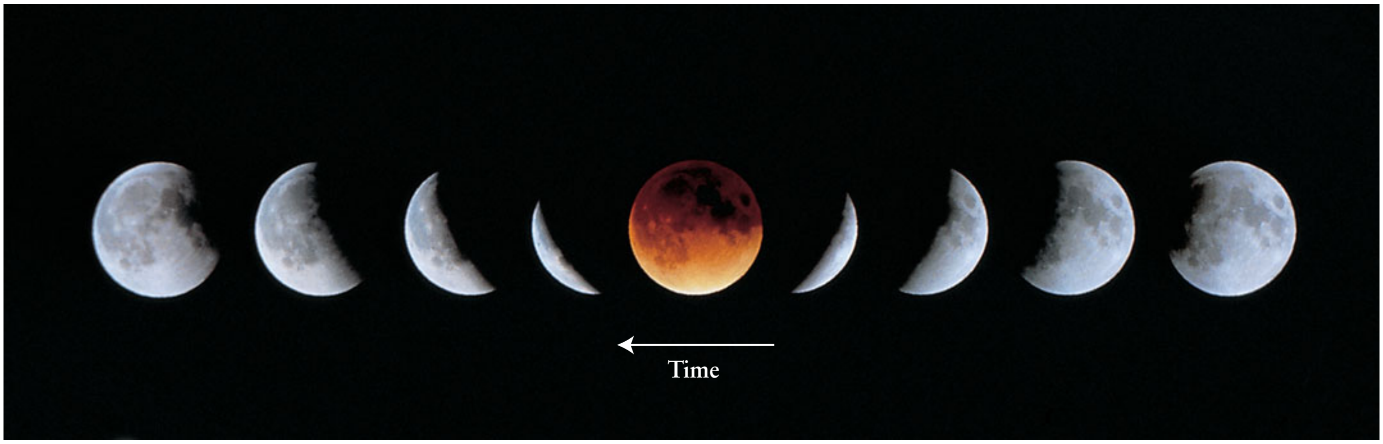


Figure 3-9 R I V U X G

A Total Lunar Eclipse This sequence of nine photographs was taken over a 3-hour period during the lunar eclipse of January 20, 2000. The sequence, which runs from right to left, shows the Moon moving through the Earth's umbra. During the total phase of the eclipse (shown in the center), the Moon has a distinct reddish color. (Fred Espenak, NASA/Goddard Space Flight Center; ©2000 Fred Espenak, MrEclipse.com)

flowers close their petals, and crickets begin to chirp as if evening had arrived. As the last few rays of sunlight peek out from behind the edge of the Moon and the eclipse becomes total, the landscape around you is bathed in an eerie gray or, less frequently, in shimmering bands of light and dark. Finally, for a few minutes the Moon completely blocks out the dazzling solar disk and not much else (Figure 3-10*a*). The **solar corona**—the Sun's thin, hot outer atmosphere, which is normally too dim to be seen—blazes forth in the darkened daytime sky (Figure 3-10*b*). It is an awe-inspiring sight.

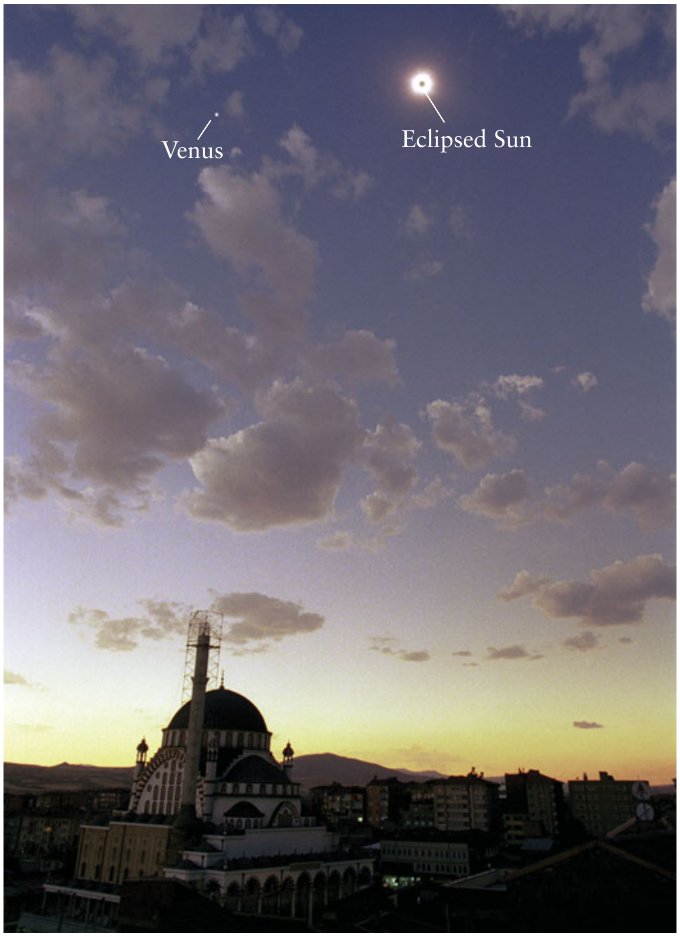
CAUTION! If you are fortunate enough to see a solar eclipse, keep in mind that the only time when it is safe to look at the Sun is during **totality,** when the solar disk is blocked by the Moon and only the solar corona is visible. Viewing this magnificent spectacle cannot harm you in any way. But you must *never* look directly at the Sun when even a portion of its intensely brilliant disk is exposed. *If you look directly at the Sun at any time without a special filter approved for solar viewing, you will suffer permanent eye damage or blindness.*

To see the remarkable spectacle of a total solar eclipse, you must be inside the darkest part of the Moon's shadow, also called the umbra, where the Moon completely blocks the Sun. Because the Sun and the Moon have nearly the same angular diameter as seen from Earth, only the tip of the Moon's umbra reaches the

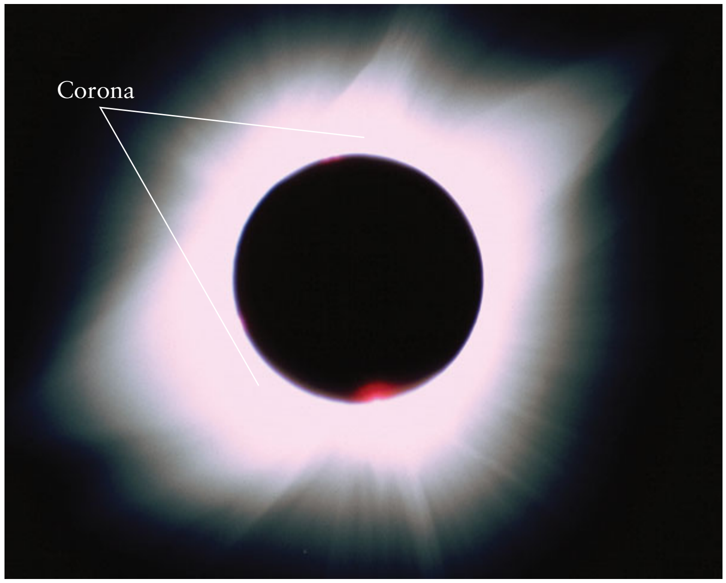
Table 3-1 Lunar Eclipses, 2007–2011

Date	Type	Where visible	Duration of totality (h = hours, m = minutes)
2007 March 3	Total	Americas, Europe, Africa, Asia	1h 14m
2007 August 28	Total	Eastern Asia, Australia, Pacific, Americas	1h 31m
2008 February 21	Total	Central Pacific, Americas, Europe, Africa	51m
2008 August 16	Partial	South America, Europe, Africa, Asia, Australia	—
2009 February 9	Penumbral	Europe, Asia, Australia, Pacific, North America	—
2009 July 7	Penumbral	Australia, Pacific, Americas	—
2009 August 6	Penumbral	Americas, Europe, Africa, Asia	—
2009 December 31	Partial	Europe, Africa, Asia, Australia	—
2010 June 26	Partial	Asia, Australia, Pacific, Americas	—
2010 December 21	Total	Asia, Australia, Pacific, Americas, Europe	1h 13m
2011 June 15	Total	South America, Europe, Africa, Asia, Australia	1h 41m
2011 December 10	Total	Europe, Africa, Asia, Australia, Pacific, North America	52m

Eclipse predictions by Fred Espenak, NASA/Goddard Space Flight Center. All dates are given in standard astronomical format: year, month, day.



(a)



(b)

Figure 3-10 R I V U X G

A Total Solar Eclipse **(a)** This photograph shows the total solar eclipse of August 11, 1999, as seen from Elâziğ, Turkey. The sky is so dark that the planet Venus can be seen to the left of the eclipsed Sun. **(b)** When the Moon completely covers the Sun's disk during a total eclipse, the faint solar corona is revealed. (Fred Espenak, MrEclipse.com)

Earth's surface (Figure 3-11). As the Earth rotates, the tip of the umbra traces an **eclipse path** across the Earth's surface. Only those locations within the eclipse path are treated to the spectacle of a total solar eclipse. The inset in Figure 3-11 shows the dark spot on the Earth's surface produced by the Moon's umbra.

Partial Solar Eclipses

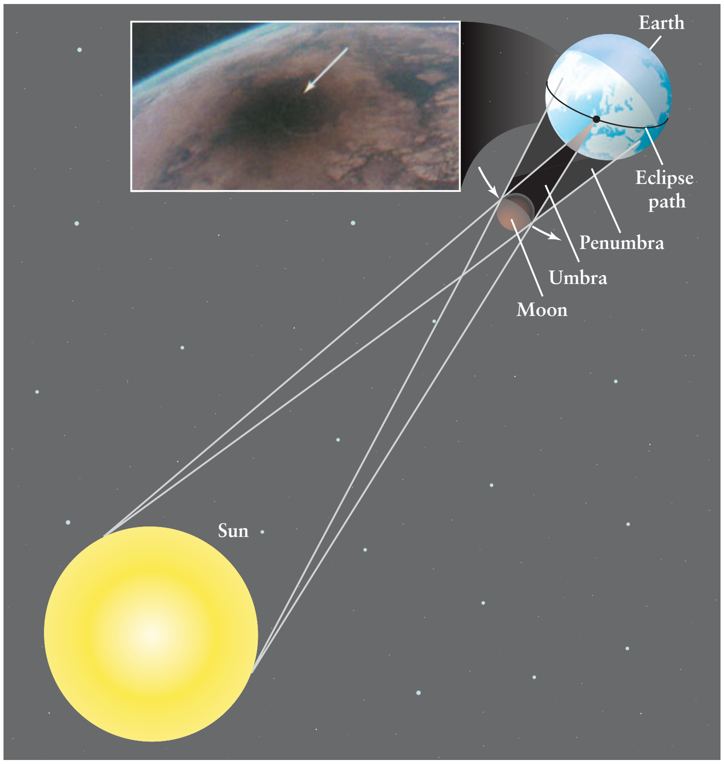
Immediately surrounding the Moon's umbra is the region of partial shadow called the penumbra. As seen from this area, the Sun's surface appears only partially covered by the Moon. During a solar eclipse, the Moon's penumbra covers a large portion of the Earth's surface, and anyone standing inside the penumbra sees a **partial solar eclipse.** Such eclipses are much less interesting events than total solar eclipses, which is why astronomy enthusiasts strive to be inside the eclipse path. If you are within the eclipse path, you will see a partial eclipse before and after the brief period of totality (see the photograph that opens this chapter).

The width of the eclipse path depends primarily on the Earth-Moon distance during totality. The eclipse path is widest if the Moon happens to be at **perigee,** the point in its orbit nearest the Earth. In this case the width of the eclipse path can be as great as 270 kilometers (170 miles). In most eclipses, however, the path is much narrower.

Annular Solar Eclipses

In some eclipses the Moon's umbra does not reach all the way to the Earth's surface. This can happen if the Moon is at or near **apogee**, its farthest position from Earth. In this case, the Moon appears too small to cover the Sun completely. The result is a third type of solar eclipse, called an **annular eclipse.** During an annular eclipse, a thin ring of the Sun is seen around the edge of the Moon (Figure 3-12). The length of the Moon's umbra is nearly 5000 kilometers (3100 miles) less than the average distance between the Moon and the Earth's surface. Thus, the Moon's shadow often fails to reach the Earth even when the Sun, Moon, and Earth are properly aligned for an eclipse. Hence, annular eclipses are slightly more common—as well as far less dramatic—than total eclipses.

Even during a total eclipse, most people along the eclipse path observe totality for only a few moments. The Earth's rotation, coupled with the orbital motion of the Moon, causes the umbra to race eastward along the eclipse path at speeds in excess of 1700 kilometers per hour (1060 miles per hour). Because of the umbra's high speed, totality never lasts for more than $7\frac{1}{2}$ minutes. In a typical total solar eclipse, the Sun-Moon-Earth alignment and the Earth-Moon distance are such that totality lasts much less than this maximum.



ANIMATION 3.4

Figure 3-11 R I V U X G

The Geometry of a Total Solar Eclipse During a total solar eclipse, the tip of the Moon's umbra reaches the Earth's surface. As the Earth and Moon move along their orbits, this tip traces an eclipse path across the Earth's surface. People within the eclipse path see a total solar eclipse as the tip moves over them. Anyone within the penumbra sees only a partial eclipse. The inset photograph was taken from the *Mir* space station during the August 11, 1999, total solar eclipse (the same eclipse shown in Figure 3-10). The tip of the umbra appears as a black spot on the Earth's surface. At the time the photograph was taken, this spot was 105 km (65 mi) wide and was crossing the English Channel at 3000 km/h (1900 mi/h). (Photograph by Jean-Pierre Haigneré, Centre National d'Etudes Spatiales, France/GSFS)

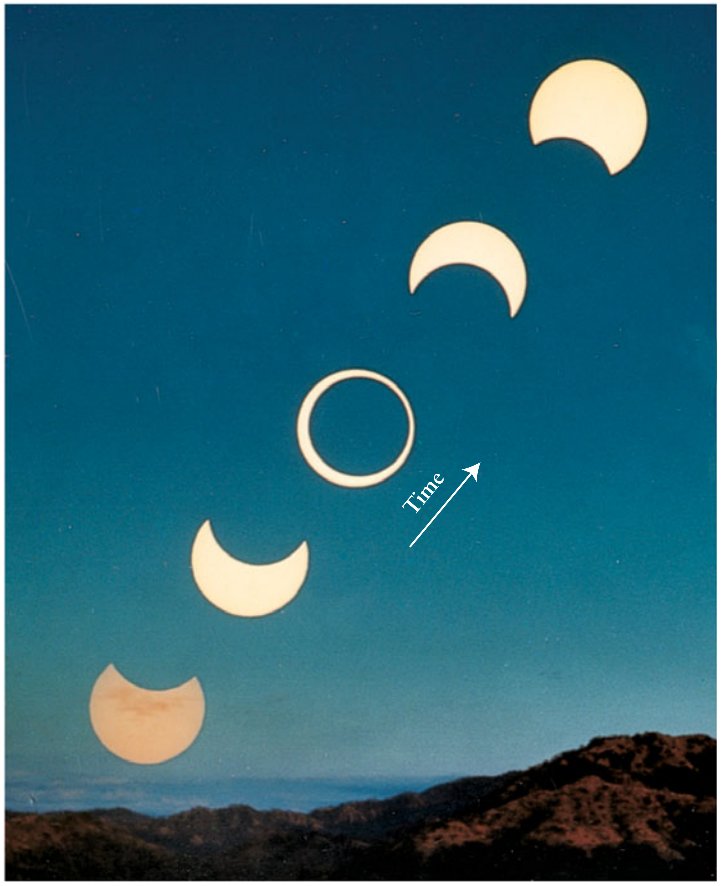


Figure 3-12 R I V U X G

An Annular Solar Eclipse This composite of six photographs taken at sunrise in Costa Rica shows the progress of an annular eclipse of the Sun on December 24, 1973. (Five photographs were made of the Sun, plus one of the hills and sky.) Note that at mideclipse the limb, or outer edge, of the Sun is visible around the Moon. (Courtesy of Dennis di Cicco)

WEB LINK 3.2

The details of solar eclipses are calculated well in advance. They are published in such reference books as the *Astronomical Almanac* and are available on the World Wide Web. Figure 3-13 shows the eclipse paths for all total solar eclipses from 1997 to 2020. Table 3-2 lists all the total, annular, and partial eclipses from 2007 to 2011, including the maximum duration of totality for total eclipses.

Ancient astronomers achieved a limited ability to predict eclipses. In those times, religious and political leaders who were able to predict such awe-inspiring events as eclipses must have made a tremendous impression on their followers. One of three priceless manuscripts to survive the devastating Spanish Conquest shows that the Mayan astronomers of Mexico and Guatemala had a fairly reliable method for predicting eclipses. The great Greek astronomer Thales of Miletus is said to have predicted the famous eclipse of 585 B.C., which occurred during the middle of a war. The sight was so unnerving that the soldiers put down their arms and declared peace.

In retrospect, it seems that what ancient astronomers actually produced were eclipse "warnings" of various degrees of reliability rather than true predictions. Working with historical records, these astronomers generally sought to discover cycles and regularities from which future eclipses could be anticipated. Box 3-2 describes how you might produce eclipse warnings yourself.

3-6 Ancient astronomers measured the size of the Earth and attempted to determine distances to the Sun and Moon

The prediction of eclipses was not the only problem attacked by ancient astronomers. More than 2000 years ago, centuries before sailors of Columbus's era crossed the oceans, Greek astronomers were fully aware that the Earth is not flat. They had come to this conclusion using a combination of observation and logical

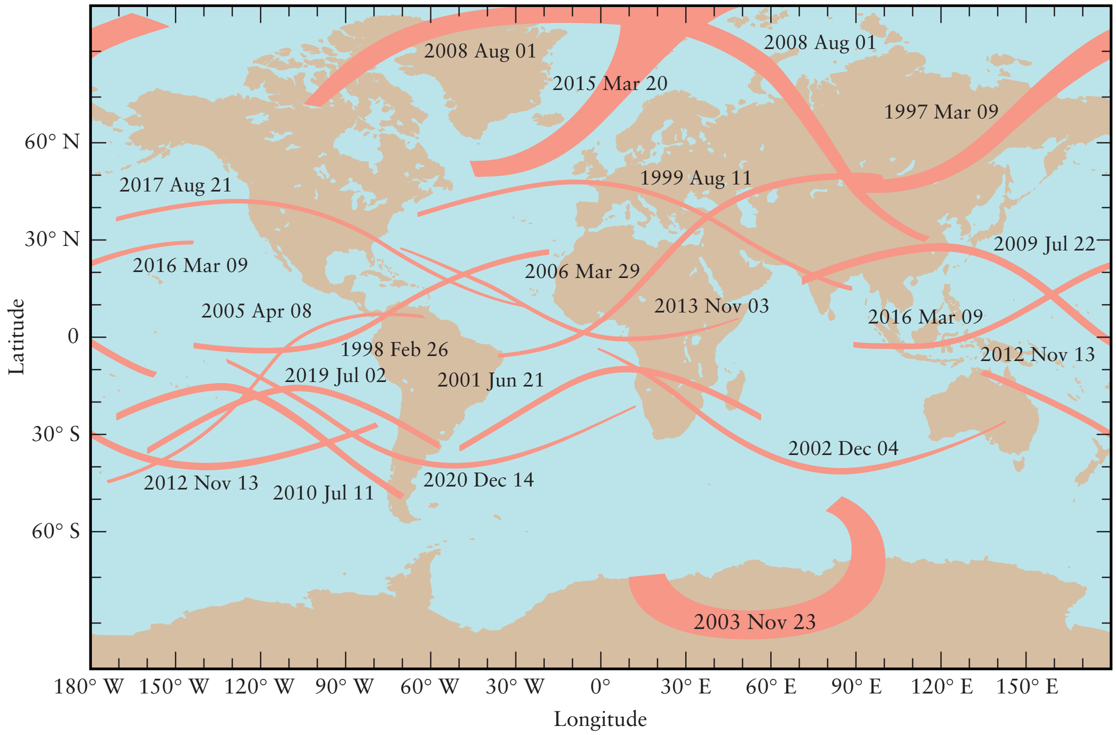


Figure 3-13

Eclipse Paths for Total Eclipses, 1997–2020 This map shows the eclipse paths for all 18 total solar eclipses occurring from 1997 through 2020. In each eclipse, the Moon's shadow travels along the eclipse path in a generally eastward direction across the Earth's surface. (Courtesy of Fred Espenak, NASA/Goddard Space Flight Center)

deduction, much like modern scientists. The Greeks noted that during lunar eclipses, when the Moon passes through the Earth's shadow, the edge of the shadow is always circular. Because a sphere is the only shape that always casts a circular shadow from any angle, they concluded that the Earth is spherical.

The ideas of geometry made it possible for Greek scholars to estimate cosmic distances

Eratosthenes and the Size of the Earth

Around 200 B.C., the Greek astronomer Eratosthenes devised a way to measure the circumference of the spherical Earth. It was known that on the date of the summer solstice (the first day of summer; see Section 2-5) in the town of Syene in Egypt, near present-day Aswan, the Sun shone directly down the vertical shafts of water wells. Hence, at local noon on that day, the Sun was at

Table 3-2 Solar Eclipses, 2007–2011

Date	Type	Where visible	Notes
2007 March 19	Partial	Asia, Alaska	87% eclipsed
2007 September 11	Partial	South America, Antarctica	75% eclipsed
2008 February 7	Annular	Antarctica, eastern Australia, New Zealand	—
2008 August 1	Total	Northeast North America, Europe, Asia	Maximum duration of totality 2m 27s
2009 January 26	Annular	Southern Africa, Antarctica, southeast Asia, Australia	—
2009 July 22	Total	Eastern Asia, Pacific Ocean, Hawaii	Maximum duration of totality 6m 39s
2010 January 15	Annular	Africa, Asia	—
2010 July 11	Total	Pacific Ocean, South America	Maximum duration of totality 5m 20s
2011 January 4	Partial	Europe, Africa, central Asia	86% eclipsed
2011 June 1	Partial	Eastern Asia, northern North America, Iceland	60% eclipsed
2011 July 1	Partial	Indian Ocean	10% eclipsed
2011 November 25	Partial	Southern Africa, Antarctica, Australia, New Zealand	91% eclipsed

Eclipse predictions by Fred Espenak, NASA/Goddard Space Flight Center. All dates are given in standard astronomical format: year, month, day.

BOX 3-2 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Predicting Solar Eclipses

Suppose that you observe a solar eclipse in your hometown and want to figure out when you and your neighbors might see another eclipse. How would you begin?

First, remember that a solar eclipse can occur only if the line of nodes points toward the Sun at the same time that there is a new moon (see Figure 3-7). Second, you must know that it takes 29.53 days (one synodic month) to go from one new moon to the next. Because solar eclipses occur only during new moon, you must wait several whole lunar months for the proper alignment to occur again.

However, there is a complication: The line of nodes gradually shifts its position with respect to the background stars. It takes 346.6 days to move from one alignment of the line of nodes pointing toward the Sun to the next identical alignment. This period is called the **eclipse year.**

Therefore, to predict when you will see another solar eclipse, you need to know how many whole lunar months equal some whole number of eclipse years. This will tell you how long you will have to wait for the next virtually identical alignment of the Sun, the Moon, and the line of nodes. By trial and error, you find that 223 lunar months is the same length of time as 19 eclipse years, because

$$223 \times 29.53 \text{ days} = 19 \times 346.6 \text{ days} = 6585 \text{ days}$$

This calculation is accurate to within a few hours. A more accurate calculation gives an interval, called the **saros,** that is about one-third day longer, or 6585.3 days (18 years, 11.3 days). Eclipses separated by the saros interval are said to form an *eclipse series.*

You might think that you and your neighbors would simply have to wait one full saros interval to go from one solar eclipse to the next. However, because of the extra one-third day, the Earth will have rotated by an extra 120° (one-third of a complete rotation) when the next solar eclipse of a particular series occurs. The eclipse path will thus be one-third of the way around the world from you. Therefore, you must wait three full saros intervals (54 years, 34 days) before the eclipse path comes back around to your part of the Earth. The illustration shows a series of six solar eclipse paths, each separated from the next by one saros interval.

There is evidence that ancient Babylonian astronomers knew about the saros interval. However, the discovery of the saros is more likely to have come from lunar eclipses than solar eclipses. If you are far from the eclipse path, there is a good chance that you could fail to notice a solar eclipse. Even if half the Sun is covered by the Moon, the remaining solar surface provides enough sunlight for the outdoor illumination not to be greatly diminished. By contrast, anyone on the nighttime side of the Earth can see an eclipse of the Moon unless clouds block the view.

the zenith (see Section 2-4) as seen from Syene. Eratosthenes knew that the Sun never appeared at the zenith at his home in the Egyptian city of Alexandria, which is on the Mediterranean Sea almost due north of Syene. Rather, on the summer solstice in Alexandria, the position of the Sun at local noon was about 7° south of the zenith (Figure 3-14). This angle is about one-fiftieth of a complete circle, so he concluded that the distance from Alexandria to Syene must be about one-fiftieth of the Earth's circumference.

In Eratosthenes's day, the distance from Alexandria to Syene was said to be 5000 stades. Therefore, Eratosthenes found the Earth's circumference to be

$$50 \times 5000 \text{ stades} = 250{,}000 \text{ stades}$$

Unfortunately, no one today is sure of the exact length of the Greek unit called the stade. One guess is that the stade was about one-sixth of a kilometer, which would mean that Eratosthenes obtained a circumference for the Earth of about 42,000 kilometers. This is remarkably close to the modern value of 40,000 kilometers.

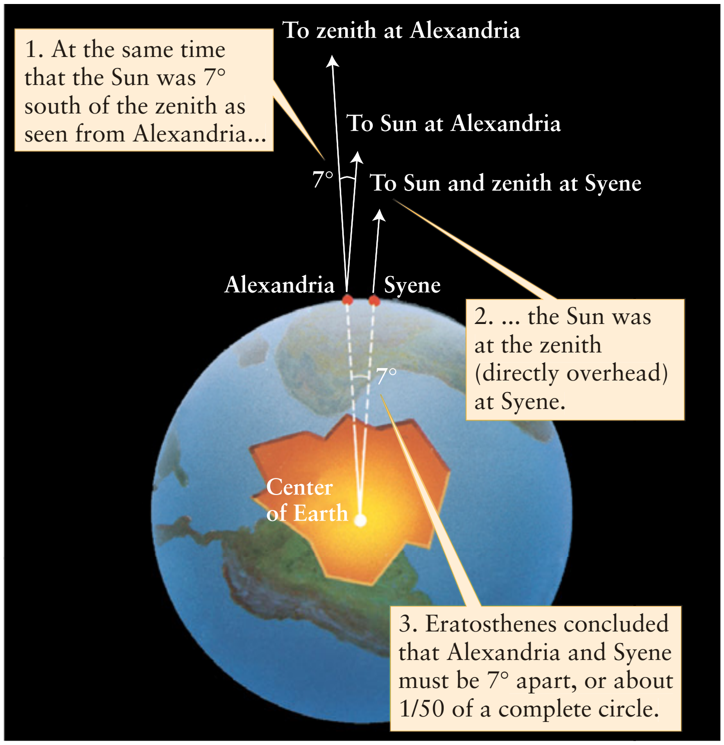
Aristarchus and Distances in the Solar System

Eratosthenes was only one of several brilliant astronomers to emerge from the so-called Alexandrian school, which by his time had a distinguished tradition. One of the first Alexandrian astronomers, Aristarchus of Samos, had proposed a method of determining the relative distances to the Sun and Moon, perhaps as long ago as 280 B.C.

Aristarchus knew that the Sun, Moon, and Earth form a right triangle at the moment of first or third quarter moon, with the right angle at the location of the Moon (Figure 3-15). He estimated that, as seen from Earth, the angle between the Moon and the Sun at first and third quarters is 87°, or 3° less than a right angle. Using the rules of geometry, Aristarchus concluded that the Sun is about 20 times farther from us than is the Moon. We now know that Aristarchus erred in measuring angles and that the

Figure 3-14

Eratosthenes's Method of Determining the Diameter of the Earth Around 200 B.C., Eratosthenes used observations of the Sun's position at noon on the summer solstice to show that Alexandria and Syene were about 7° apart on the surface of the Earth. This angle is about one-fiftieth of a circle, so the distance between Alexandria and Syene must be about one-fiftieth of the Earth's circumference.



average distance to the Sun is about 390 times larger than the average distance to the Moon. It is nevertheless impressive that people were trying to measure distances across the solar system more than 2000 years ago.

Aristarchus also made an equally bold attempt to determine the relative sizes of the Earth, Moon, and Sun. From his observations of how long the Moon takes to move through the Earth's shadow during a lunar eclipse, Aristarchus estimated the diame-

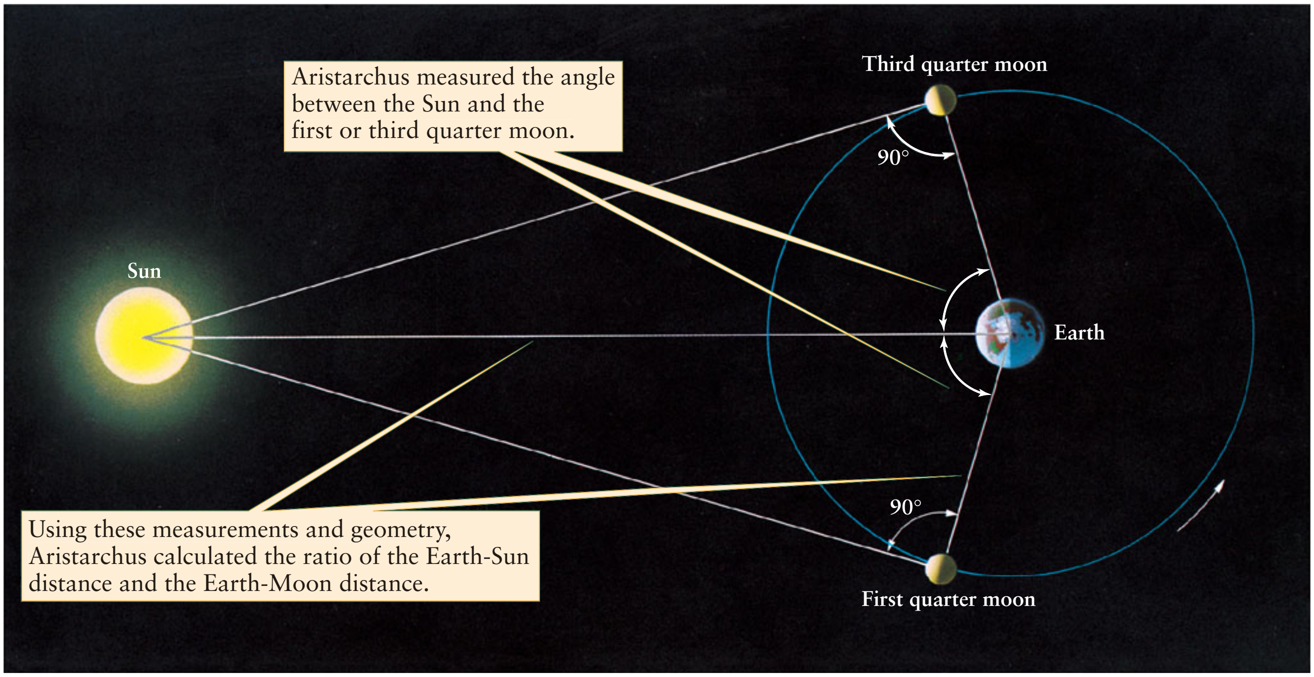


Figure 3-15

Aristarchus's Method of Determining Distances to the Sun and Moon Aristarchus knew that the Sun, Moon, and Earth form a right triangle at first and third quarter phases. Using geometrical arguments, he calculated the relative lengths of the sides of these triangles, thereby obtaining the distances to the Sun and Moon.

Table 3-3 Comparison of Ancient and Modern Astronomical Measurements

	Ancient (km)	Modern (km)
Earth's diameter	13,000	12,756
Moon's diameter	4,300	3,476
Sun's diameter	9×10^4	1.39×10^6
Earth-Moon distance	4×10^5	3.84×10^5
Earth-Sun distance	10^7	1.50×10^8

ter of the Earth to be about 3 times larger than the diameter of the Moon. To determine the diameter of the Sun, Aristarchus simply pointed out that the Sun and the Moon have the same angular size in the sky. Therefore, their diameters must be in the same proportion as their distances (see part *a* of the figure in Box 1-1). In other words, because Aristarchus thought the Sun to be 20 times farther from the Earth than the Moon, he concluded that the Sun must be 20 times larger than the Moon. Once Eratosthenes had measured the Earth's circumference, astronomers of the Alexandrian school could estimate the diameters of the Sun and Moon as well as their distances from Earth.

Table 3-3 summarizes some ancient and modern measurements of the sizes of Earth, the Moon, and the Sun and the distances between them. Some of these ancient measurements are far from the modern values. Yet the achievements of our ancestors still stand as impressive applications of observation and reasoning and important steps toward the development of the scientific method.

Key Words

Terms preceded by an asterisk (*) are discussed in the Boxes.

annular eclipse, p. 54
apogee, p. 54
eclipse, p. 50
eclipse path, p. 54
*eclipse year, p. 57
first quarter moon, p. 46
full moon, p. 46
line of nodes, p. 51
lunar eclipse, p. 50
lunar phases, p. 46
new moon, p. 46
partial lunar eclipse, p. 52
partial solar eclipse, p. 54
penumbra (*plural* penumbrae), p. 52
penumbral eclipse, p. 52
perigee, p. 54
*saros, p. 57
sidereal month, p. 50
solar corona, p. 53
solar eclipse, p. 50
synchronous rotation, p. 49
synodic month, p. 50
third quarter moon, p. 46
totality (lunar eclipse), p. 52
totality (solar eclipse), p. 53
total lunar eclipse, p. 52
total solar eclipse, p. 52
umbra (*plural* umbrae), p. 52
waning crescent moon, p. 46
waning gibbous moon, p. 46
waxing crescent moon, p. 46
waxing gibbous moon, p. 46

Key Ideas

Lunar Phases: The phases of the Moon occur because light from the Moon is actually reflected sunlight. As the relative positions of the Earth, the Moon, and the Sun change, we see more or less of the illuminated half of the Moon.

Length of the Month: Two types of months are used in describing the motion of the Moon.

• With respect to the stars, the Moon completes one orbit around the Earth in a sidereal month, averaging 27.32 days.

• The Moon completes one cycle of phases (one orbit around the Earth with respect to the Sun) in a synodic month, averaging 29.53 days.

The Moon's Orbit: The plane of the Moon's orbit is tilted by about 5° from the plane of the Earth's orbit, or ecliptic.

• The line of nodes is the line where the planes of the Moon's orbit and the Earth's orbit intersect. The gravitational pull of the Sun gradually shifts the orientation of the line of nodes with respect to the stars.

Conditions for Eclipses: During a lunar eclipse, the Moon passes through the Earth's shadow. During a solar eclipse, the Earth passes through the Moon's shadow.

• Lunar eclipses occur at full moon, while solar eclipses occur at new moon.

• Either type of eclipse can occur only when the Sun and Moon are both on or very near the line of nodes. If this condition is not met, the Earth's shadow cannot fall on the Moon and the Moon's shadow cannot fall on the Earth.

Umbra and Penumbra: The shadow of an object has two parts: the umbra, within which the light source is completely blocked, and the penumbra, where the light source is only partially blocked.

Lunar Eclipses: Depending on the relative positions of the Sun, Moon, and Earth, lunar eclipses may be total (the Moon passes completely into the Earth's umbra), partial (only part of the Moon passes into the Earth's umbra), or penumbral (the Moon passes only into the Earth's penumbra).

Solar Eclipses: Solar eclipses may be total, partial, or annular.

• During a total solar eclipse, the Moon's umbra traces out an eclipse path over the Earth's surface as the Earth rotates. Observers outside the eclipse path but within the penumbra see only a partial solar eclipse.

• During an annular eclipse, the umbra falls short of the Earth, and the outer edge of the Sun's disk is visible around the Moon at mideclipse.

The Moon and Ancient Astronomers: Ancient astronomers such as Aristarchus and Eratosthenes made great progress in determining the sizes and relative distances of the Earth, the Moon, and the Sun.

Questions

Review Questions

Questions preceded by an asterisk (*) involve topics discussed in the Boxes.

1. Explain the difference between sunlight and moonlight.
2. (**a**) Explain why the Moon exhibits phases. (**b**) A common misconception about the Moon's phases is that they are caused by the Earth's shadow. Use Figure 3-2 to explain why this not correct.

3. How would the sequence and timing of lunar phases be affected if the Moon moved around its orbit (**a**) in the same direction, but at twice the speed; (**b**) at the same speed, but in the opposite direction? Explain your answers.
4. At approximately what time does the Moon rise when it is (**a**) a new moon; (**b**) a first quarter moon; (**c**) a full moon; (**d**) a third quarter moon?
5. Astronomers sometimes refer to lunar phases in terms of the *age* of the Moon. This is the time that has elapsed since new moon phase. Thus, the age of a full moon is half of a $29\frac{1}{2}$-day synodic period, or approximately 15 days. Find the approximate age of (**a**) a waxing crescent moon; (**b**) a third quarter moon; (**c**) a waning gibbous moon.
6. If you lived on the Moon, would you see the Earth go through phases? If so, would the sequence of phases be the same as those of the Moon as seen from Earth, or would the sequence be reversed? Explain using Figure 3-2.
7. Is the far side of the Moon (the side that can never be seen from Earth) the same as the dark side of the Moon? Explain.
8. (**a**) If you lived on the Moon, would you see the Sun rise and set, or would it always be in the same place in the sky? Explain. (**b**) Would you see the Earth rise and set, or would it always be in the same place in the sky? Explain using Figure 3-4.
9. What is the difference between a sidereal month and a synodic month? Which is longer? Why?
10. On a certain date the Moon is in the direction of the constellation Gemini as seen from Earth. When will the Moon next be in the direction of Gemini: one sidereal month later, or one synodic month later? Explain.
11. What is the difference between the umbra and the penumbra of a shadow?
12. Why doesn't a lunar eclipse occur at every full moon and a solar eclipse at every new moon?
13. What is the line of nodes? Why is it important to the subject of eclipses?
14. What is a penumbral eclipse of the Moon? Why do you suppose that it is easy to overlook such an eclipse?
15. Why is the duration of totality different for different total lunar eclipses, as shown in Table 3-1?
16. Can one ever observe an annular eclipse of the Moon? Why or why not?
17. If you were looking at the Earth from the side of the Moon that faces the Earth, what would you see during (**a**) a total lunar eclipse? (**b**) a total solar eclipse? Explain your answers.
18. If there is a total eclipse of the Sun in April, can there be a lunar eclipse three months later in July? Why or why not?
19. Which type of eclipse—lunar or solar—do you think most people on Earth have seen? Why?
20. How is an annular eclipse of the Sun different from a total eclipse of the Sun? What causes this difference?

*21. What is the saros? How did ancient astronomers use it to predict eclipses?

22. How did Eratosthenes measure the size of the Earth?
23. How did Aristarchus try to estimate the distance from the Earth to the Sun and Moon?
24. How did Aristarchus try to estimate the diameters of the Sun and Moon?

Advanced Questions

Problem-solving tips and tools

To estimate the average angular speed of the Moon along its orbit (that is, how many degrees around its orbit the Moon travels per day), divide 360° by the length of a sidereal month. It is helpful to know that the saros interval of 6585.3 days equals 18 years and $11\frac{1}{3}$ days if the interval includes 4 leap years, but is 18 years and $10\frac{1}{3}$ days if it includes 5 leap years.

25. The dividing line between the illuminated and unilluminated halves of the Moon is called the *terminator*. The terminator appears curved when there is a crescent or gibbous moon, but appears straight when there is a first quarter or third quarter moon (see Figure 3-2). Describe how you could use these facts to explain to a friend why lunar phases cannot be caused by the Earth's shadow falling on the Moon.
26. What is the phase of the Moon if it rises at (**a**) midnight; (**b**) sunrise; (**c**) halfway between sunset and midnight; (**d**) halfway between noon and sunset? Explain your answers.
27. The Moon is highest in the sky when it crosses the meridian (see Figure 2-21), halfway between the time of moonrise and the time of moonset. At approximately what time does the Moon cross the meridian if it is (**a**) a new moon; (**b**) a first quarter moon; (**c**) a full moon; (**d**) a third quarter moon? Explain your answers.
28. The Moon is highest in the sky when it crosses the meridian (see Figure 2-21), halfway between the time of moonrise and the time of moonset. What is the phase of the Moon if it is highest in the sky at (**a**) midnight; (**b**) sunrise; (**c**) noon; (**d**) sunset? Explain your answers.
29. Suppose it is the first day of autumn in the northern hemisphere. What is the phase of the Moon if the Moon is located at (**a**) the vernal equinox? (**b**) the summer solstice? (**c**) the autumnal equinox? (**d**) the winter solstice? Explain your answers. (*Hint:* Make a drawing showing the relative positions of the Sun, Earth, and Moon. Compare with Figure 3-2.)

R I V U X G

(NASA/JSC)

30. The above photograph of the Earth was taken by the crew of the *Apollo 8* spacecraft as they orbited the Moon. A portion

of the lunar surface is visible at the right-hand side of the photo. In this photo, the Earth is oriented with its north pole approximately at the top. When this photo was taken, was the Moon waxing or waning as seen from Earth? Explain your answer with a diagram.

31. (**a**) The Moon moves noticeably on the celestial sphere over the space of a single night. To show this, calculate how long it takes the Moon to move through an angle equal to its own angular diameter ($\frac{1}{2}°$) against the background of stars. Give your answer in hours. (**b**) Through what angle (in degrees) does the Moon move during a 12-hour night? Can you notice an angle of this size? (*Hint:* See Figure 1-10.)

32. During an occultation, or "covering up," of Jupiter by the Moon, an astronomer notices that it takes the Moon's edge 90 seconds to cover Jupiter's disk completely. If the Moon's motion is assumed to be uniform and the occultation was "central" (that is, center over center), find the angular diameter of Jupiter. (*Hint:* Assume that Jupiter does not appear to move against the background of stars during this brief 90-second interval. You will need to convert the Moon's angular speed from degrees per day to arcseconds per second.)

33. The plane of the Moon's orbit is inclined at a 5° angle from the ecliptic, and the ecliptic is inclined at a $23\frac{1}{2}°$ angle from the celestial equator. Could the Moon ever appear at your zenith if you lived at (**a**) the equator; (**b**) the south pole? Explain your answers.

34. How many more sidereal months than synodic months are there in a year? Explain.

35. Suppose the Earth moved a little faster around the Sun, so that it took a bit less than one year to make a complete orbit. If the speed of the Moon's orbit around the Earth were unchanged, would the length of the sidereal month be the same, longer, or shorter than it is now? What about the synodic month? Explain your answers.

36. If the Moon revolved about the Earth in the same orbit but in the opposite direction, would the synodic month be longer or shorter than the sidereal month? Explain your reasoning.

37. One definition of a "blue moon" is the second full moon within the same calendar month. There is usually only one full moon within a calendar month, so the phrase "once in a blue moon" means "hardly ever." Why are blue moons so rare? Are there any months of the year in which it would be impossible to have two full moons? Explain your answer.

38. You are watching a lunar eclipse from some place on the Earth's night side. Will you see the Moon enter the Earth's shadow from the east or from the west? Explain your reasoning.

39. The total lunar eclipse of October 28, 2004, was visible from South America. The duration of totality was 1 hour, 21 minutes. Was this total eclipse also visible from Australia, on the opposite side of the Earth? Explain your reasoning.

40. During a total solar eclipse, the Moon's umbra moves in a generally eastward direction across the Earth's surface. Use a drawing like Figure 3-11 to explain why the motion is eastward, not westward.

41. A total solar eclipse was visible from Africa on March 29, 2006 (see Figure 3-10). Draw what the eclipse would have looked like as seen from France, to the north of the path of totality. Explain the reasoning behind your drawing.

42. Figures 3-11 and 3-13 show that the path of a total eclipse is quite narrow. Use this to explain why a glow is visible all around the horizon when you are viewing a solar eclipse during totality (see Figure 3-10*a*).

43. (**a**) Suppose the diameter of the Moon were doubled, but the orbit of the Moon remained the same. Would total solar eclipses be more common, less common, or just as common as they are now? Explain. (**b**) Suppose the diameter of the Moon were halved, but the orbit of the Moon remained the same. Explain why there would be *no* total solar eclipses.

44. Just as the distance from the Earth to the Moon varies somewhat as the Moon orbits the Earth, the distance from the Sun to the Earth changes as the Earth orbits the Sun. The Earth is closest to the Sun at its *perihelion*; it is farthest from the Sun at its *aphelion*. In order for a total solar eclipse to have the maximum duration of totality, should the Earth be at perihelion or aphelion? Assume that the Earth-Moon distance is the same in both situations. As part of your explanation, draw two pictures like Figure 3-11, one with the Earth relatively close to the Sun and one with the Earth relatively far from the Sun.

***45.** On March 29, 2006, residents of northern Africa were treated to a total solar eclipse. (**a**) On what date and over what part of the world will the next total eclipse of that series occur? Explain. (**b**) On what date might you next expect a total eclipse of that series to be visible from northern Africa? Explain.

Discussion Questions

46. Describe the cycle of lunar phases that would be observed if the Moon moved around the Earth in an orbit perpendicular to the plane of the Earth's orbit. Would it be possible for both solar and lunar eclipses to occur under these circumstances? Explain your reasoning.

47. How would a lunar eclipse look if the Earth had no atmosphere? Explain your reasoning.

48. In his 1885 novel *King Solomon's Mines*, H. Rider Haggard described a total solar eclipse that was seen in both South Africa and in the British Isles. Is such an eclipse possible? Why or why not?

49. Why do you suppose that total solar eclipse paths fall more frequently on oceans than on land? (You may find it useful to look at Figure 3-13.)

50. Examine Figure 3-13, which shows all of the total solar eclipses from 1997 to 2020. What are the chances that you might be able to travel to one of the eclipse paths? Do you think you might go through your entire life without ever seeing a total eclipse of the Sun?

Web/eBook Questions

ANIMATION 3.1

51. Access the animation "The Moon's Phases" in Chapter 3 of the *Universe* Web site or eBook. This shows the Earth-Moon system as seen from a vantage point looking down onto the north pole. (**a**) Describe where you would be on the diagram if you are on the equator and the time is 6:00 P.M. (**b**) If it is 6:00 P.M. and you are standing on Earth's equator, would a third quarter moon be visible? Why or why not? If it would be visible, describe its appearance.

52. Search the World Wide Web for information about the next total lunar eclipse. Will the total phase of the eclipse be visible from your location? If not, will the penumbral phase be visible? Draw a picture showing the Sun, Earth, and Moon when the totality is at its maximum duration, and indicate your location on the drawing of the Earth.

53. Search the World Wide Web for information about the next total solar eclipse. Through which major cities, if any, does the path of totality pass? What is the maximum duration of totality? At what location is this maximum duration observed? Will this eclipse be visible (even as a partial eclipse) from your location? Draw a picture showing the Sun, Earth, and Moon when the totality is at its maximum duration, and indicate your location on the drawing of the Earth.

54. Access the animation "A Solar Eclipse Viewed from the Moon" in Chapter 3 of the *Universe* Web site or eBook. This shows the solar eclipse of August 11, 1999, as viewed from the Moon. Using a diagram, explain why the stars and the Moon's shadow move in the directions shown in this animation.

Activities

Observing Projects

55. Observe the Moon on each clear night over the course of a month. On each night, note the Moon's location among the constellations and record that location on a star chart that also shows the ecliptic. After a few weeks, your observations will begin to trace the Moon's orbit. Identify the orientation of the line of nodes by marking the points where the Moon's orbit and the ecliptic intersect. On what dates is the Sun near the nodes marked on your star chart? Compare these dates with the dates of the next solar and lunar eclipses.

56. It is quite possible that a lunar eclipse will occur while you are taking this course. Look up the date of the next lunar eclipse in Table 3-1, on the World Wide Web, or in the current issue of a reference such as the *Astronomical Almanac* or *Astronomical Phenomena*. Then make arrangements to observe this lunar eclipse. You can observe the eclipse with the naked eye, but binoculars or a small telescope will enhance your viewing experience. If the eclipse is partial or total, note the times at which the Moon enters and exits the Earth's umbra. If the eclipse is penumbral, can you see any changes in the Moon's brightness as the eclipse progresses?

57. Use the *Starry Night Enthusiast™* program to observe the motion of the Moon. (**a**) Display the entire celestial sphere, including the part below the horizon, by moving to the Atlas mode. You do this by selecting **Favourites > Guides > Atlas.** Here, you will see the sky, containing the background stars and the planets, overlaid by a coordinate grid. One axis, the **Right Ascension** axis, is the extension of the Earth's equator on to the sky and is marked in hours along the **Celestial Equator.** At right angles to this equator are the **Declination** lines at constant Right Ascension, converging upon the North and South Celestial Poles. These poles are the extensions of the two ends of the Earth's spin axis. You can use the Hand Tool to explore this coordinate system by moving your viewpoint around the sky. (Move the mouse while holding down the mouse button to achieve this motion.) Across this sky, inclined at an angle to the celestial equator, is the **Ecliptic,** or the path along which the Sun appears to move across our sky. This is the plane of the Earth's orbit. (If this green line does not appear, open the **Options** pane and check that the **Ecliptic** is selected in the **Guides** layer.) Use the Hand Tool to move the sky around to find the **Moon,** which will be close to, but not on, the ecliptic plane. Once you have found the Moon, use the Hand tool to move the Moon to the right-hand side of the main window. On the toolbar across the top of the main window, click on the **Time Flow Rate** control (immediately to the right of the date and time display) and set the discrete time step to **1 sidereal day.** Then advance time in one-sidereal-day intervals by clicking on the **Step Time Forward** button (the icon consisting of a black vertical line and right-pointing triangle to the far right of the time controls). You will note that the background sky remains fixed, as expected when time moves ahead in sidereal- day intervals. How does the Moon appear to move against the background of stars? Does it ever change direction? (**b**) Use this **Step Time Forward** button to determine how many days elapse between successive times when the Moon is on the ecliptic. Then move forward in time to a date when the Moon is on the ecliptic and either full or new. What type of eclipse will occur on that date? Confirm your answer by comparing with Tables 3-1 and 3-2 or with lists of eclipses on the World Wide Web.

58. Use the *Starry Night Enthusiast™* program to examine the Moon as seen from space. Select **Solar System > Inner Solar System** in the **Favourites** menu. Click the **Stop** button in the toolbar to stop time flow. Then, click on the **Find** tab and double-click on the entry for the Moon in the Find pane in order to center the view on the Moon. Close the Find pane and zoom in on the Moon by clicking and holding the mouse cursor on the **Decrease current elevation** button (the downward-pointing arrow to the left of the Home button in the toolbar) to approach the Moon until detail is visible on the lunar surface. You can now view the Moon from any angle by holding down the **Shift** key while holding down the mouse button (the left button on a two-button mouse) and dragging the mouse. This is equivalent to flying a spaceship around the Moon at a constant distance. (**a**) Use this technique to rotate the Moon and view it from different perspectives. How does the phase of the Moon change as you rotate it around? (*Hint:* Compare with Box 3-1.) (**b**) Rotate the Moon until you can also see the Sun and note particularly the Moon's phase when it is in front of the Sun. Explain how your observations show that the phases of the Moon cannot be caused by the Earth's shadow falling on the Moon.

Collaborative Exercise

59. Using a bright light source at the center of a darkened room, or a flashlight, use your fist held at arm's length to demonstrate the difference between a full moon and a lunar eclipse. (Use yourself or a classmate as the Earth.) How must your fist "orbit" the Earth so that lunar eclipses do not happen at every full moon? Create a simple sketch to illustrate your answers.

Archaeoastronomy and Ethnoastronomy

by Mark Hollabaugh

Many years ago I read astronomer John Eddy's *National Geographic* article about the Wyoming Medicine Wheel. A few years later I visited this archaeological site in the Bighorn Mountains and started on the major preoccupation of my career.

Archaeoastronomy combines astronomy and archaeology. You may be familiar with sites such as Stonehenge or the Mayan ruins of the Yucatán. You may not know that there are many archaeological sites in the United States that demonstrate the remarkable understanding a people, usually known as the Anasazi, had about celestial motions (see Figure 2-1). Chaco Canyon, Hovenweep, and Chimney Rock in the Four Corners area of the Southwest preserve ruins from this ancient Pueblo culture.

Moonrise at Chimney Rock in southern Colorado provides a good example of the Anasazi's knowledge of the lunar cycles. If you watched the rising of the Moon for many, many years, you would discover that the Moon's northernmost rising point undergoes an 18.6-year cycle. Dr. McKim Malville of the University of Colorado discovered that the Anasazi who lived there knew of the lunar standstill cycle and watched the northernmost rising of the Moon between the twin rock pillars of Chimney Rock.

My own specialty is the ethnoastronomy of the Lakota, or Teton Sioux, who flourished on the Great Plains of what are now Nebraska, the Dakotas, and Wyoming. Ethnoastronomy combines ethnography with astronomy. As an ethnoastronomer, I am less concerned with physical evidence in the form of ruins and more interested in myths, legends, religious belief, and current practices. In my quest to understand the astronomical thinking and customs of the nineteenth-century Lakota, I have traveled to museums, archives, and libraries in Nebraska, Colorado, Wyoming, South Dakota, and North Dakota. I frequently visit the Pine Ridge and Rosebud Reservations in South Dakota. The Lakota, and other Plains Indians, had a rich tradition of understanding celestial motions and developed an even richer explanation of why things appear the way they do in the sky.

My first professional contribution to ethnoastronomy was in 1996 at the Fifth Oxford International Conference on Astronomy in Culture held in Santa Fe, New Mexico. I had noticed that images of eclipses often appeared in Lakota winter counts—their method of making a historic record of events. The great Leonid meteor shower of 1833 appears in almost every Plains Indian winter count. As I looked at the hides or in ledger books recording these winter counts, I wondered why the Sun, the Moon, and the stars are so common among the Lakota of 150 years ago. My curiosity led me to look deeper: What did the Lakota think about eclipses? Why does their central ritual, the Sun Dance, focus on the Sun? Why do so many legends involve the stars?

The Lakota observed lunar and solar eclipses. Perhaps they felt they had the power to restore the eclipsed Sun or Moon. In August 1869, an Indian agency physician in South Dakota told the Lakota there would be an eclipse. When the Sun disappeared from view, the Lakota began firing their guns in the air. In their minds, they were more powerful than the white doctor because the result of their action was to restore the Sun.

The Lakota used a lunar calendar. Their names for the months came from the world around them. October was the moon of falling leaves. In some years, there actually are 13 new moons, and they often called this extra month the "Lost Moon." The lunar calendar often dictated the timing of their sacred rites. Although the Lakota were never dogmatic about it, they preferred to hold their most important ceremony, the Sun Dance, at the time of the full moon in June, which is when the summer solstice occurs.

Why did the Lakota pay attention to the night sky? Lakota elder Ringing Shield's statement about Polaris, recorded in the late nineteenth century, provides a clue: "One star never moves and it is *wakan*. Other stars move in a circle about it. They are dancing in the dance circle." For the Lakota, a driving force in their culture was a quest to understand the nature of the sacred, or *wakan*. Anything hard to understand or different from the ordinary was *wakan*.

Reaching for the stars, as far away as they are, was a means for the Lakota to bring the incomprehensible universe a bit closer to the earth. Their goal was the same as what Dr. Sandra M. Faber says in her essay "Why Astronomy?" at the end of Chapter 1, "a perspective on human existence and its relation to the cosmos."

Mark Hollabaugh teaches physics and astronomy at Normandale Community College, in Bloomington, Minnesota. A graduate of St. Olaf College, he earned his Ph.D. in science education at the University of Minnesota. He has also taught at St. Olaf College, Augsburg College, and the U.S. Air Force Academy. As a boy he watched the dance of the northern lights and the flash of meteors. Meeting *Apollo 13* commander Jim Lovell and going for a ride in Roger Freedman's airplane are as close as he came to his dream of being an astronaut.

This page intentionally left blank

4 Gravitation and the Waltz of the Planets

RIVUXG

An astronaut orbits the Earth attached to the International Space Station's manipulator arm. (NASA)

Sixty years ago the idea of humans orbiting the Earth or sending spacecraft to other worlds was regarded as science fiction. Today science fiction has become commonplace reality. Literally thousands of artificial satellites orbit our planet to track weather, relay signals for communications and entertainment, and collect scientific data about the Earth and the universe. Humans live and work in Earth orbit (as in the accompanying photograph), have ventured as far as the Moon, and have sent dozens of robotic spacecraft to explore all the planets of the solar system.

While we think of spaceflight as an innovation of the twentieth century, we can trace its origins to a series of scientific revolutions that began in the 1500s. The first of these revolutions overthrew the ancient idea that the Earth is an immovable object at the center of the universe, around which moved the Sun, the Moon, and the planets. In this chapter we will learn how Nicolaus Copernicus, Tycho Brahe, Johannes Kepler, and Galileo Galilei helped us understand that the Earth is itself one of several planets orbiting the Sun.

We will learn, too, about Isaac Newton's revolutionary discovery of why the planets move in the way that they do. This was just one aspect of Newton's immense body of work, which included formulating the fundamental laws of physics and developing a precise mathematical description of the force of gravitation—the force that holds the planets in their orbits.

Gravitation proves to be a truly universal force: it guides spacecraft as they journey across the solar system, and keeps satellites and astronauts in their orbits. In this chapter you will learn more about this important force of nature, which plays a central role in all parts of astronomy.

4-1 Ancient astronomers invented geocentric models to explain planetary motions

Since the dawn of civilization, scholars have attempted to explain the nature of the universe. The ancient Greeks were the first to use the principle that still guides scientists today: *The universe can be described and understood logically*. For example, more than 2500 years ago Pythagoras and his followers put forth the idea that nature can be described with mathematics. About 200 years later, Aristotle asserted that the universe is governed by physical laws. One of the most important tasks before the scholars of ancient Greece was to create a model (see Section 1-1) to explain the motions of objects in the heavens.

Learning Goals

By reading the sections of this chapter, you will learn

4-1 How ancient astronomers attempted to explain the motions of the planets

4-2 What led Copernicus to a Sun-centered model of planetary motion

4-3 How Tycho's naked-eye observations of the sky revolutionized ideas about the heavens

4-4 How Kepler deduced the shapes of the orbits of the planets

4-5 How Galileo's pioneering observations with a telescope supported a Sun-centered model

4-6 The ideas behind Newton's laws, which govern the motion of all physical objects, including the planets

4-7 Why planets stay in their orbits and don't fall into the Sun

4-8 What causes ocean tides on Earth

The Greek Geocentric Model

Most Greek scholars assumed that the Sun, the Moon, the stars, and the planets revolve about a stationary Earth. A model of this kind, in which the Earth is at the center of the universe, is called a **geocentric model.** Similar ideas were held by the scholars of ancient China.

The scholars of ancient Greece imagined that the planets followed an ornate combination of circular paths

Today we recognize that the stars are not merely points of light on an immense celestial sphere. But in fact this is how the ancient Greeks regarded the stars in their geocentric model of the universe. To explain the diurnal motions of the stars, they assumed that the celestial sphere was *real,* and that it rotated around the stationary Earth once a day.

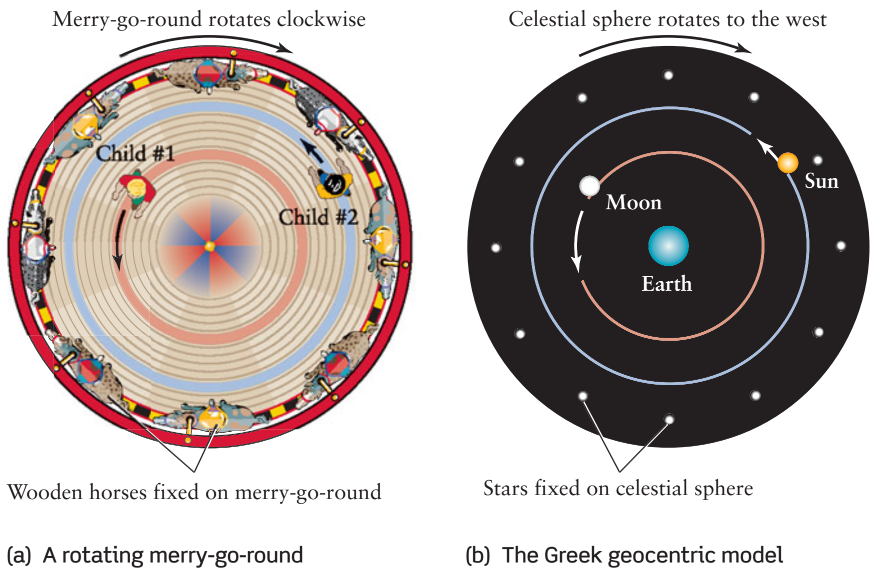
The Sun and Moon both participated in this daily rotation of the sky, which explained their rising and setting motions. To explain why the Sun and Moon both move slowly with respect to the stars, the ancient Greeks imagined that both of these objects orbit around the Earth.

ANALOGY Imagine a merry-go-round that rotates clockwise as seen from above, as in Figure 4-1*a*. As it rotates, two children walk slowly counterclockwise at different speeds around the merry-go-round's platform. Thus, the children rotate along with the merry-go-round and also change their positions with respect to the merry-go-round's wooden horses. This scene is analogous to the way the ancient Greeks pictured the motions of the stars, Sun, and Moon. In their model, the celestial sphere rotated to the west around a stationary Earth (Figure 4-1*b*). The stars rotate along with the celestial sphere just as the wooden horses rotate along with the merry-go-round in Figure 4-1*a*. The Sun and Moon are analogous to the two children; they both turn westward with the celestial sphere, making one complete turn each day, and also move slowly eastward at different speeds with respect to the stars.

The geocentric model of the heavens also had to explain the motions of the planets. The ancient Greeks and other cultures of that time knew of five planets: Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn, each of which is a bright object in the night sky. For example, when Venus is at its maximum brilliancy, it is 16 times brighter than the brightest star. (By contrast, Uranus and Neptune are quite dim and were not discovered until after the invention of the telescope.)

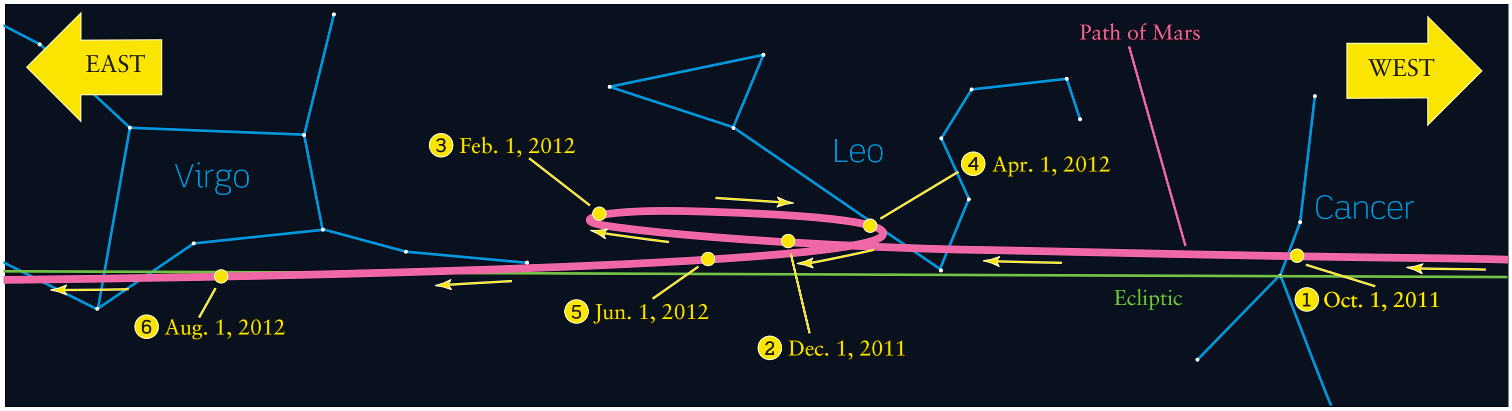
Like the Sun and Moon, all of the planets rise in the east and set in the west once a day. And like the Sun and Moon, from night to night the planets slowly move on the celestial sphere, that is, with respect to the background of stars. However, the character of this motion on the celestial sphere is quite different for the planets. Both the Sun and the Moon always move from west to east on the celestial sphere, that is, opposite the direction in which the celestial sphere appears to rotate. The Sun follows the path called the ecliptic (see Section 2-5), while the Moon follows a path that is slightly inclined to the ecliptic (see Section 3-3). Furthermore, the Sun and the Moon each move at relatively constant speeds around the celestial sphere. (The Moon's speed is faster than that of the Sun: It travels all the way around the celestial sphere in about a month while the Sun takes an entire year.) The planets, too, appear to move along paths that are close to the ecliptic. The difference is that each of the planets appears to wander back and forth on the celestial sphere with varying speed. As an example, Figure 4-2 shows the wandering motion of Mars with respect to the background of stars during 2011 and 2012. (This figure shows that the name *planet* is well deserved; it comes from a Greek word meaning "wanderer.")

CAUTION! On a map of the Earth with north at the top, west is to the left and east is to the right. Why, then, is *east* on the left and *west* on the right in Figure 4-2? The answer is that a map of the Earth is a view looking downward at the ground from above, while a star map like Figure 4-2 is a view looking upward at the sky. If the constellation Leo in Figure 4-2 were directly overhead, Virgo would be toward the eastern horizon and Cancer would be toward the western horizon.



ANIMATION 4.1

Figure 4-1
A Merry-Go-Round Analogy **(a)** Two children walk at different speeds around a rotating merry-go-round with its wooden horses. **(b)** In an analogous way, the ancient Greeks imagined that the Sun and Moon move around the rotating celestial sphere with its fixed stars. Thus, the Sun and Moon move from east to west across the sky every day and also move slowly eastward from one night to the next relative to the background of stars.



ANIMATION 4.2

Figure 4-2

The Path of Mars in 2011–2012 From October 2011 through August 2012, Mars will move across the zodiacal constellations Cancer, Leo, and Virgo. Mars's motion will be direct (from west to east, or from right to left in this figure) most of the time but will be retrograde (from east to west, or from left to right in this figure) during February and March 2011. Notice that the speed of Mars relative to the stars is not constant: The planet travels farther across the sky from October 1 to December 1 than it does from December 1 to February 1.

Most of the time planets move slowly eastward relative to the stars, just as the Sun and Moon do. This eastward progress is called **direct motion.** For example, Figure 4-2 shows that Mars will be in direct motion from October 2011 through January 2012 and from April through August 2012. Occasionally, however, the planet will seem to stop and then back up for several weeks or months. This occasional westward movement is called **retrograde motion.** Mars will undergo retrograde motion during February and March 2012 (see Figure 4-2), and will do so again about every $22\frac{1}{2}$ months. All the other planets go through retrograde motion, but at different intervals. In the language of the merry-go-round analogy in Figure 4-1, the Greeks imagined the planets as children walking around the rotating merry-go-round but who keep changing their minds about which direction to walk!

CAUTION! Whether a planet is in direct or retrograde motion, over the course of a single night you will see it rise in the east and set in the west. That's because both direct and retrograde motions are much slower than the apparent daily rotation of the sky. Hence, they are best detected by mapping the position of a planet against the background stars from night to night over a long period. Figure 4-2 is a map of just this sort.

The Ptolemaic System

Explaining the nonuniform motions of the five planets was one of the main challenges facing the astronomers of antiquity. The Greeks developed many theories to account for retrograde motion and the loops that the planets trace out against the background stars. One of the most successful and enduring models was originated by Apollonius of Perga and by Hipparchus in the second century B.C. and expanded upon by Ptolemy, the last of the great Greek astronomers, during the second century A.D. Figure 4-3*a* sketches the basic concept, usually called the **Ptolemaic system.** Each planet is assumed to move in a small circle called an **epicycle,** whose center in turn moves in a larger circle, called a **deferent,** which is centered approximately on the Earth. Both the epicycle and deferent rotate in the same direction, shown as counterclockwise in Figure 4-3*a*.

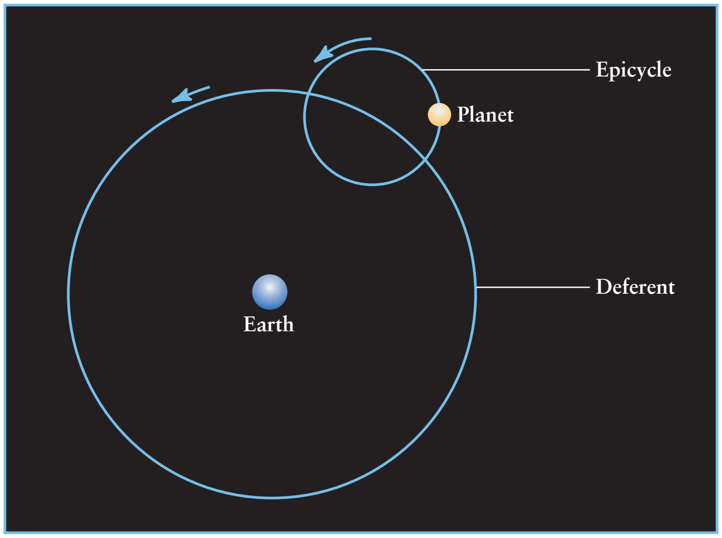
As viewed from Earth, the epicycle moves eastward along the deferent. Most of the time the eastward motion of the planet on its epicycle adds to the eastward motion of the epicycle on the deferent (Figure 4-3*b*). Then the planet is seen to be in direct (eastward) motion against the background stars. However, when the planet is on the part of its epicycle nearest Earth, the motion of the planet along the epicycle is opposite to the motion of the epicycle along the deferent. The planet therefore appears to slow down and halt its usual eastward movement among the constellations, and actually goes backward in retrograde (westward) motion for a few weeks or months (Figure 4-3*c*). Thus, the concept of epicycles and deferents enabled Greek astronomers to explain the retrograde loops of the planets.

Using the wealth of astronomical data in the library at Alexandria, including records of planetary positions for hundreds of years, Ptolemy deduced the sizes and rotation rates of the epicycles and deferents needed to reproduce the recorded paths of the planets. After years of tedious work, Ptolemy assembled his calculations into 13 volumes, collectively called the *Almagest*. His work was used to predict the positions and paths of the Sun, Moon, and planets with unprecedented accuracy. In fact, the *Almagest* was so successful that it became the astronomer's bible, and for more than 1000 years, the Ptolemaic system endured as a useful description of the workings of the heavens.

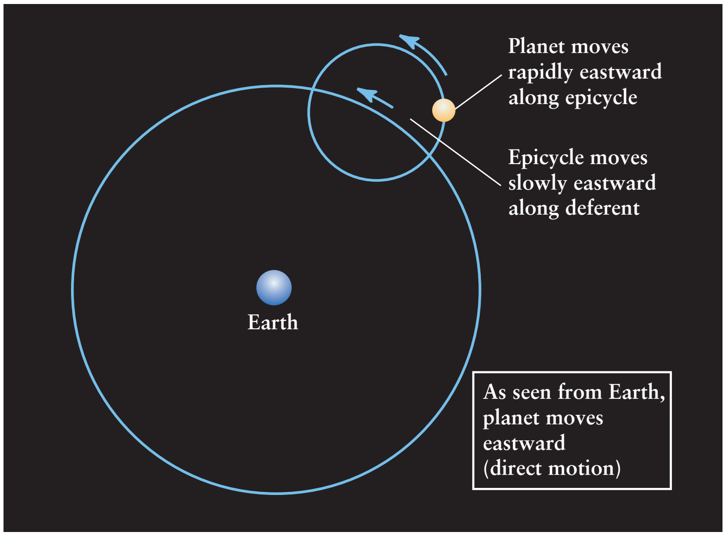
A major problem posed by the Ptolemaic system was a philosophical one: It treated each planet independent of the others. There was no rule in the *Almagest* that related the size and rotation speed of one planet's epicycle and deferent to the corresponding sizes and speeds for other planets. This problem made the Ptolemaic system very unsatisfying to many Islamic and European astronomers of the Middle Ages. They felt that a correct model of the universe should be based on a simple set of underlying principles that applied to all of the planets.

WEB LINK 4.2

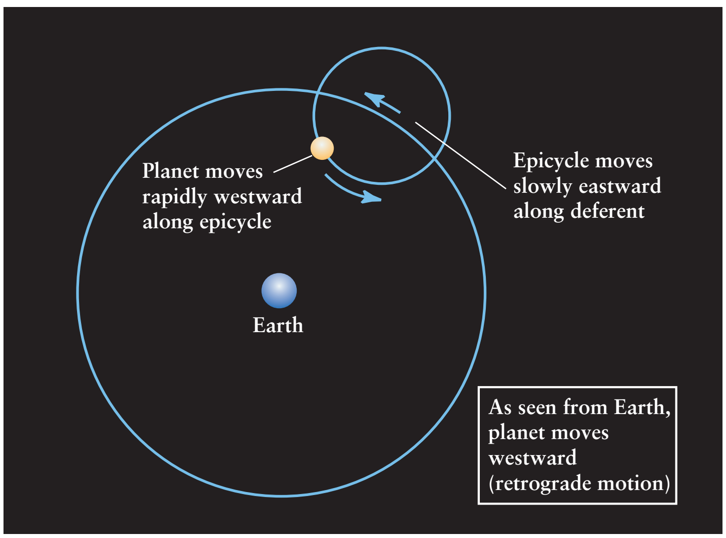
The idea that simple, straightforward explanations of phenomena are most likely to be correct is called **Occam's razor,** after William of Occam (or Ockham), the fourteenth-century English philosopher who first expressed it.



(a) Planetary motion modeled as a combination of circular motions



(b) Modeling direct motion



(c) Modeling retrograde motion

ANIMATION 4.3

Figure 4-3

A Geocentric Explanation of Retrograde Motion **(a)** The ancient Greeks imagined that each planet moves along an epicycle, which in turn moves along a deferent centered approximately on the Earth. The planet moves along the epicycle more rapidly than the epicycle moves along the deferent. **(b)** At most times the eastward motion of the planet on the epicycle adds to the eastward motion of the epicycle on the deferent. Then the planet moves eastward in direct motion as seen from Earth. **(c)** When the planet is on the inside of the deferent, its motion along the epicycle is westward. Because this motion is faster than the eastward motion of the epicycle on the deferent, the planet appears from Earth to be moving westward in retrograde motion.

(The “razor” refers to shaving extraneous details from an argument or explanation.) Although Occam’s razor has no proof or verification, it appeals to the scientist’s sense of beauty and elegance, and it has helped lead to the simple and powerful laws of nature that scientists use today. In the centuries that followed, Occam’s razor would help motivate a new and revolutionary view of the universe.

4-2 Nicolaus Copernicus devised the first comprehensive heliocentric model

During the first half of the sixteenth century, a Polish lawyer, physician, canon of the church, and gifted mathematician named Nicolaus Copernicus (Figure 4-4) began to construct a new model of the universe. His model, which placed the Sun at the center, explained the motions of the planets in a more natural way than the Ptolemaic system. As we will see, it also helped lay the foundations of modern physical science. But Copernicus was not the first to conceive a Sun-centered model of planetary motion. In the third century B.C., the Greek astronomer Aristarchus suggested such a model as a way to explain retrograde motion.

A Heliocentric Model Explains Retrograde Motion

Imagine riding on a fast racehorse. As you pass a slowly walking pedestrian, he appears to move backward, even though he is traveling in the same direction as you and your horse. This sort of simple observation inspired Aristarchus to formulate a **heliocentric** (Sun-centered) **model** in which all the planets, including Earth, revolve about the Sun. Different planets take different lengths of time to complete an orbit, so from time to time one planet will overtake another, just as a fast-moving horse overtakes a person on foot. When the Earth overtakes Mars, for example, Mars appears to move backward in retrograde motion, as Figure 4-5 shows. Thus, in the heliocentric picture, the occasional retrograde motion of a planet is merely the result of the Earth’s motion.

The retrograde motion of the planets is a result of our viewing the universe from a moving Earth

As we saw in Section 3-6, Aristarchus demonstrated that the Sun is bigger than the Earth (see Table 3-3). This made it sensible to imagine the Earth orbiting the larger Sun. He also imagined that the Earth rotated on its axis once a day, which explained

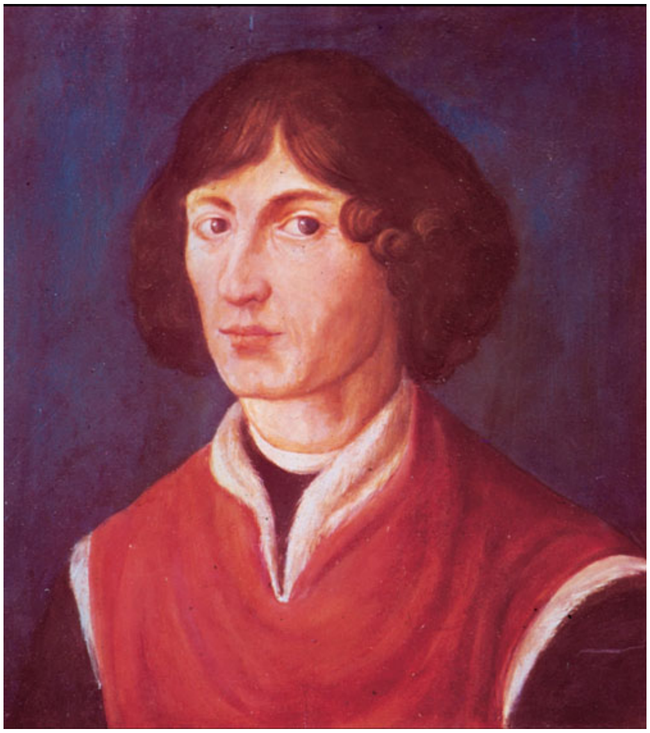


Figure 4-4

Nicolaus Copernicus (1473–1543) Copernicus was the first person to work out the details of a heliocentric system in which the planets, including the Earth, orbit the Sun. (E. Lessing/Magnum)

the daily rising and setting of the Sun, Moon, and planets and the diurnal motions of the stars. To explain why the apparent motions of the planets never take them far from the ecliptic, Aristarchus proposed that the orbits of the Earth and all the planets must lie in nearly the same plane. (Recall from Section 2-5 that the ecliptic is the projection onto the celestial sphere of the plane of the Earth's orbit.)

This heliocentric model is conceptually much simpler than an Earth-centered system, such as that of Ptolemy, with all its "circles upon circles." In Aristarchus's day, however, the idea of an orbiting, rotating Earth seemed inconceivable, given the Earth's apparent stillness and immobility. Nearly 2000 years would pass before a heliocentric model found broad acceptance.

Copernicus and the Arrangement of the Planets

In the years after 1500, Copernicus came to realize that a heliocentric model has several advantages beyond providing a natural explanation of retrograde motion. In the Ptolemaic system, the arrangement of the planets—that is, which are close to the Earth and which are far away—was chosen in large part by guesswork. But using a heliocentric model, Copernicus could determine the arrangement of the planets without ambiguity.

Copernicus realized that because Mercury and Venus are always observed fairly near the Sun in the sky, their orbits must be smaller than the Earth's. Planets in such orbits are called **inferior planets** (Figure 4-6). The other visible planets—Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn—are sometimes seen on the side of the celestial sphere opposite the Sun, so these planets appear high above the horizon at midnight (when the Sun is far below the horizon). When this

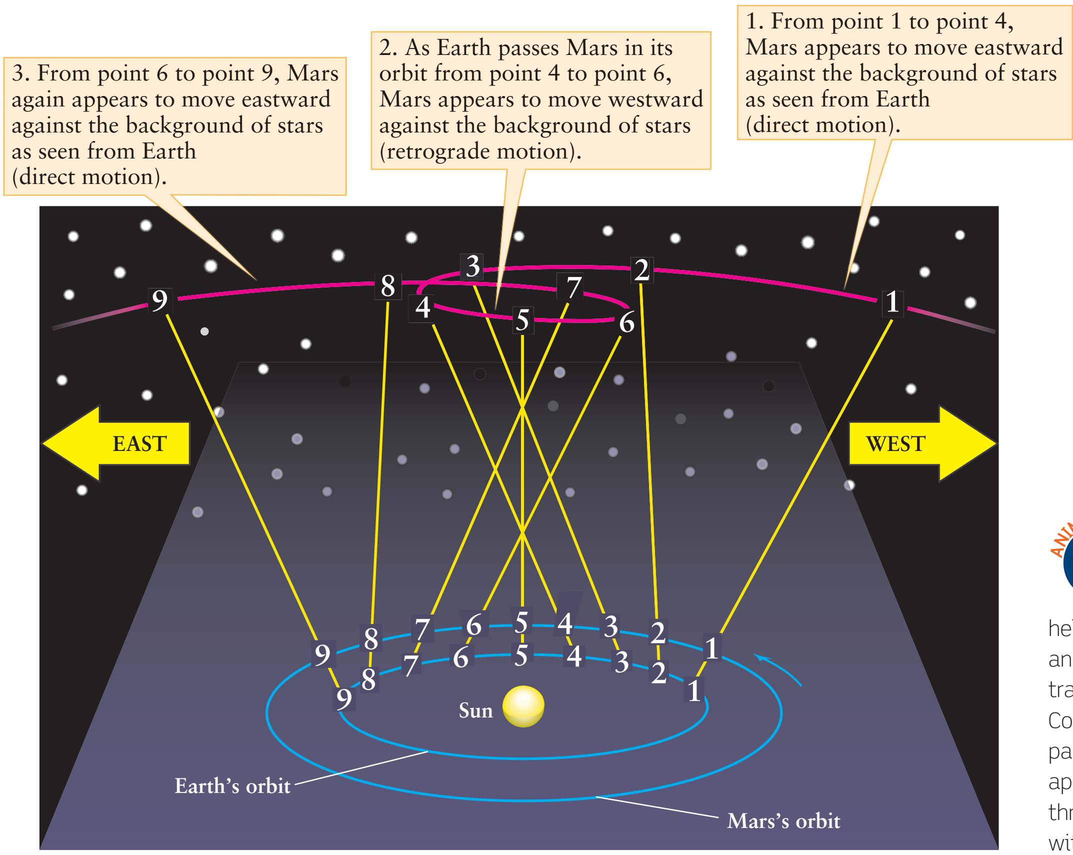


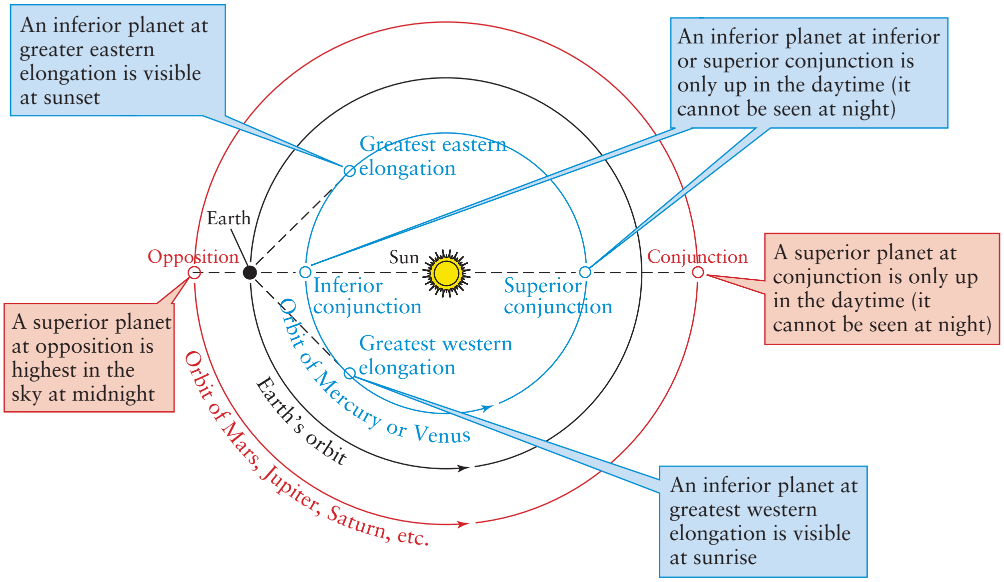
Figure 4-5

A Heliocentric Explanation of Retrograde Motion In the heliocentric model of Aristarchus, the Earth and the other planets orbit the Sun. The Earth travels around the Sun more rapidly than Mars. Consequently, as the Earth overtakes and passes this slower-moving planet, Mars appears for a few months (from points 4 through 6) to fall behind and move backward with respect to the background of stars.

INTERACTIVE EXERCISE 4.1

Figure 4-6

Planetary Orbits and Configurations When and where in the sky a planet can be seen from Earth depends on the size of its orbit and its location on that orbit. Inferior planets have orbits smaller than the Earth's, while superior planets have orbits larger than the Earth's. (Note that in this figure you are looking down onto the solar system from a point far above the Earth's northern hemisphere.)



happens, the Earth must lie between the Sun and these planets. Copernicus therefore concluded that the orbits of Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn must be larger than the Earth's orbit. Hence, these planets are called **superior planets.**

Uranus and Neptune, as well as Pluto and a number of other small bodies called asteroids that also orbit the Sun, were discovered after the telescope was invented (and after the death of Copernicus). All of these can be seen at times in the midnight sky, so these also have orbits larger than the Earth's.

The heliocentric model also explains why planets appear in different parts of the sky on different dates. Both inferior planets (Mercury and Venus) go through cycles: The planet is seen in the west after sunset for several weeks or months, then for several weeks or months in the east before sunrise, and then in the west after sunset again.

Figure 4-6 shows the reason for this cycle. When Mercury or Venus is visible after sunset, it is near **greatest eastern elongation.** (The angle between the Sun and a planet as viewed from Earth is called the planet's **elongation.**) The planet's position in the sky is as far east of the Sun as possible, so it appears above the western horizon after sunset (that is, to the east of the Sun) and is often called an "evening star." At **greatest western elongation,** Mercury or Venus is as far west of the Sun as it can possibly be. It then rises before the Sun, gracing the predawn sky as a "morning star" in the east. When Mercury or Venus is at **inferior conjunction,** it is between us and the Sun, and it is moving from the evening sky into the morning sky. At **superior conjunction,** when the planet is on the opposite side of the Sun, it is moving back into the evening sky.

A superior planet such as Mars, whose orbit is larger than the Earth's, is best seen in the night sky when it is at **opposition.** At this point the planet is in the part of the sky opposite the Sun and is highest in the sky at midnight. This is also when the planet appears brightest, because it is closest to us. But when a superior planet like Mars is located behind the Sun at **conjunction,** it is above the horizon during the daytime and thus is not well placed for nighttime viewing.

Planetary Periods and Orbit Sizes

The Ptolemaic system has no simple rules relating the motion of one planet to another. But Copernicus showed that there *are* such rules in a heliocentric model. In particular, he found a correspondence between the time a planet takes to complete one orbit—that is, its **period**—and the size of the orbit.

Determining the period of a planet takes some care, because the Earth, from which we must make the observations, is also moving. Realizing this, Copernicus was careful to distinguish between two different periods of each planet. The **synodic period** is the time that elapses between two successive identical configurations as seen from Earth—from one opposition to the next, for example, or from one conjunction to the next. The **sidereal period** is the true orbital period of a planet, the time it takes the planet to complete one full orbit of the Sun relative to the stars.

The synodic period of a planet can be determined by observing the sky, but the sidereal period has to be found by calculation. Copernicus figured out how to do this (Box 4-1). Table 4-1 shows the results for all of the planets.

Table 4-1 Synodic and Sidereal Periods of the Planets

Planet	Synodic period	Sidereal period
Mercury	116 days	88 days
Venus	584 days	225 days
Earth	—	1.0 year
Mars	780 days	1.9 years
Jupiter	399 days	11.9 years
Saturn	378 days	29.5 years
Uranus	370 days	84.1 years
Neptune	368 days	164.9 years

BOX 4-1 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Relating Synodic and Sidereal Periods

We can derive a mathematical formula that relates a planet's sidereal period (the time required for the planet to complete one orbit) to its synodic period (the time between two successive identical configurations). To start with, let's consider an inferior planet (Mercury or Venus) orbiting the Sun as shown in the accompanying figure. Let P be the planet's sidereal period, S the planet's synodic period, and E the Earth's sidereal period or sidereal year (see Section 2-8), which Copernicus knew to be nearly $365\frac{1}{4}$ days.

The rate at which the Earth moves around its orbit is the number of degrees around the orbit divided by the time to complete the orbit, or $360°/E$ (equal to a little less than 1° per day). Similarly, the rate at which the inferior planet moves along its orbit is $360°/P$.

During a given time interval, the angular distance that the Earth moves around its orbit is its rate, $(360°/E)$, multiplied by the length of the time interval. Thus, during a time S, or one synodic period of the inferior planet, the Earth covers an angular distance of $(360°/E)S$ around its orbit. In that same time, the inferior planet covers an angular distance of $(360°/P)S$. Note, however, that the inferior planet has gained one full lap on the Earth, and hence has covered 360° more than the Earth has (see the figure). Thus, $(360°/P)S = (360°/E)S + 360°$. Dividing each term of this equation by $360°S$ gives

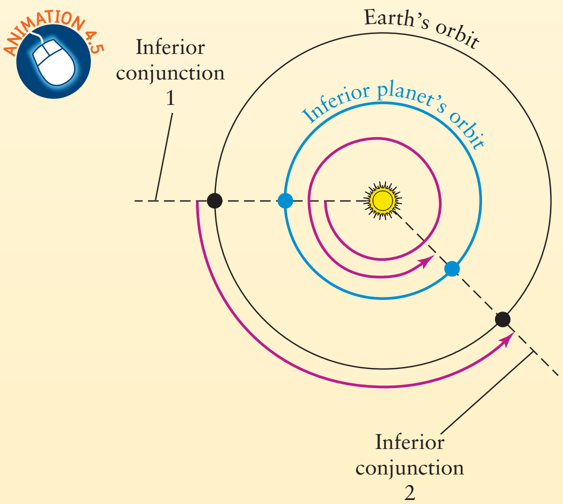
For an inferior planet:

$$\frac{1}{P} = \frac{1}{E} + \frac{1}{S}$$

P = inferior planet's sidereal period

E = Earth's sidereal period = 1 year

S = inferior planet's synodic period



A similar analysis for a superior planet (for example, Mars, Jupiter, or Saturn) yields

For a superior planet:

$$\frac{1}{P} = \frac{1}{E} - \frac{1}{S}$$

P = superior planet's sidereal period

E = Earth's sidereal period = 1 year

S = superior planet's synodic period

Using these formulas, we can calculate a planet's sidereal period P from its synodic period S. Often astronomers express P, E, and S in terms of years, by which they mean Earth years of approximately 365.26 days.

EXAMPLE: Jupiter has an observed synodic period of 398.9 days, or 1.092 years. What is its sidereal period?

Situation: Our goal is to find the sidereal period of Jupiter, a superior planet.

Tools: Since Jupiter is a superior planet, we use the second of the two equations given above to determine the sidereal period P.

Answer: We are given the Earth's sidereal period E = 1 year and Jupiter's synodic period S = 1.092 years. Using the equation $1/P = 1/E - 1/S$,

$$\frac{1}{P} = \frac{1}{1} - \frac{1}{1.092} = 0.08425,$$

so

$$P = \frac{1}{0.08425} = 11.87 \text{ years}$$

Review: Our answer means that it takes 11.87 years for Jupiter to complete one full orbit of the Sun. This is greater than the Earth's 1-year sidereal period because Jupiter's orbit is larger than the Earth's orbit. Jupiter's synodic period of 1.092 years is the time from one opposition to the next, or the time that elapses from when the Earth overtakes Jupiter to when it next overtakes Jupiter. This is so much shorter than the sidereal period because Jupiter moves quite slowly around its orbit. The Earth overtakes it a little less often than once per Earth orbit, that is, at intervals of a little bit more than a year.

Table 4-2 Average Distances of the Planets from the Sun

Planet	Copernican value (AU*)	Modern value (AU)
Mercury	0.38	0.39
Venus	0.72	0.72
Earth	1.00	1.00
Mars	1.52	1.52
Jupiter	5.22	5.20
Saturn	9.07	9.55
Uranus	—	19.19
Neptune	—	30.07

**1 AU = 1 astronomical unit = average distance from the Earth to the Sun.*

To find a relationship between the sidereal period of a planet and the size of its orbit, Copernicus still had to determine the relative distances of the planets from the Sun. He devised a straightforward geometric method of determining the relative distances of the planets from the Sun using trigonometry. His answers turned out to be remarkably close to the modern values, as shown in Table 4-2.

The distances in Table 4-2 are given in terms of the astronomical unit, which is the average distance from Earth to the Sun (Section 1-7). Copernicus did not know the precise value of this distance, so he could only determine the *relative* sizes of the orbits of the planets. One method used by modern astronomers to determine the astronomical unit is to measure the Earth-Venus distance very accurately using radar. At the same time, they measure the angle in the sky between Venus and the Sun, and then calculate the Earth-Sun distance using trigonometry. In this way, the astronomical unit is found to be 1.496×10^8 km (92.96 million miles). Once the astronomical unit is known, the average distances from the Sun to each of the planets in kilometers can be determined from Table 4-2. A table of these distances is given in Appendix 2.

By comparing Tables 4-1 and 4-2, you can see the unifying relationship between planetary orbits in the Copernican model: The farther a planet is from the Sun, the longer it takes to travel around its orbit (that is, the longer its sidereal period). That is so for *two* reasons: (1) the larger the orbit, the farther a planet must travel to complete an orbit; and (2) the larger the orbit, the slower a planet moves. For example, Mercury, with its small orbit, moves at an average speed of 47.9 km/s (107,000 mi/h). Saturn travels around its large orbit much more slowly, at an average speed of 9.64 km/s (21,600 mi/h). The older Ptolemaic model offers no such simple relations between the motions of different planets.

The Shapes of Orbits in the Copernican Model

At first, Copernicus assumed that Earth travels around the Sun along a circular path. He found that perfectly circular orbits could not accurately describe the paths of the other planets, so he had to add an epicycle to each planet. This was *not* to explain retrograde motion, which Copernicus realized was because of the differences in orbital speeds of different planets, as shown in Figure 4-5. Rather, the small epicycles helped Copernicus account for slight variations in each planet's speed along its orbit.

Even though he clung to the old notion that orbits must be made up of circles, Copernicus had shown that a heliocentric model could explain the motions of the planets. He compiled his ideas and calculations into a book entitled *De revolutionibus orbium coelestium* (On the Revolutions of the Celestial Spheres), which was published in 1543, the year of his death.

For several decades after Copernicus, most astronomers saw little reason to change their allegiance from the older geocentric model of Ptolemy. The predictions that the Copernican model makes for the apparent positions of the planets are, on average, no better or worse than those of the Ptolemaic model. The test of Occam's razor does not really favor either model, because both use a combination of circles to describe each planet's motion.

More concrete evidence was needed to convince scholars to abandon the old, comfortable idea of a stationary Earth at the center of the universe. The story of how this evidence was accumulated begins nearly 30 years after the death of Copernicus, when a young Danish astronomer pondered the nature of a new star in the heavens.

4-3 Tycho Brahe's astronomical observations disproved ancient ideas about the heavens

On November 11, 1572, a bright star suddenly appeared in the constellation of Cassiopeia. At first, it was even brighter than Venus, but then it began to grow dim. After 18 months, it faded from view. Modern astronomers recognize this event as a supernova explosion, the violent death of a massive star.

A supernova explosion and a comet revealed to Tycho that our universe is more dynamic than had been imagined

In the sixteenth century, however, the vast majority of scholars held with the ancient teachings of Aristotle and Plato, who had argued that the heavens are permanent and unalterable. Consequently, the "new star" of 1572 could not really be a star at all, because the heavens do not change; it must instead be some sort of bright object quite near the Earth, perhaps not much farther away than the clouds overhead.

The 25-year-old Danish astronomer Tycho Brahe (1546–1601) realized that straightforward observations might reveal the distance to the new star. It is common experience that when you walk from one place to another, nearby objects appear to change position against the background of more distant objects. This phenomenon, whereby the apparent position of an object changes because of the motion of the observer, is called **parallax.** If the new star was nearby, then its position should shift against the background stars over the course of a single night because Earth's rotation changes our viewpoint. Figure 4-7 shows this predicted shift. (Actually, Tycho believed that the heavens rotate about the Earth, as in the Ptolemaic model, but the net effect is the same.)

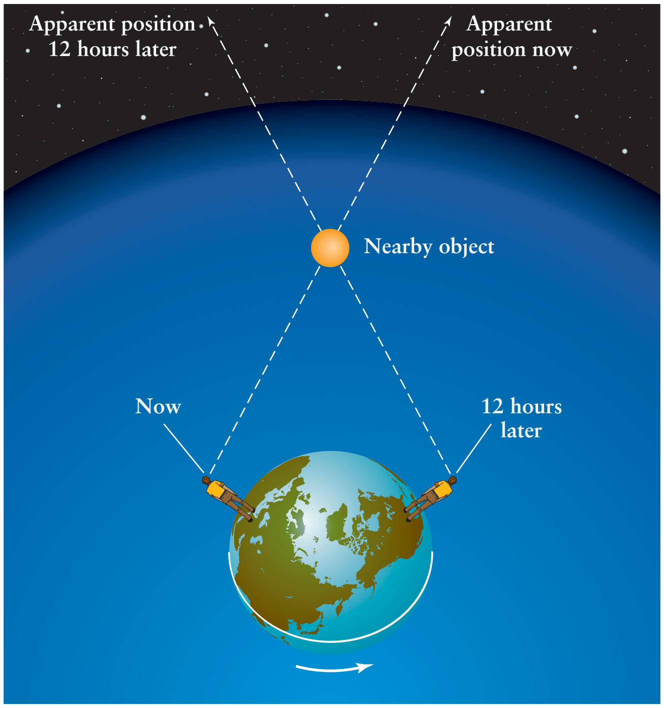


Figure 4-7

A Nearby Object Shows a Parallax Shift Tycho Brahe argued that if an object is near the Earth, an observer would have to look in different directions to see that object over the course of a night and its position relative to the background stars would change. Tycho failed to measure such changes for a supernova in 1572 and a comet in 1577. He therefore concluded that these objects were far from the Earth.

Tycho's careful observations failed to disclose any parallax. The farther away an object is, the less it appears to shift against the background as we change our viewpoint, and the smaller the parallax. Hence, the new star had to be quite far away, farther from Earth than anyone had imagined. This was the first evidence that the "unchanging" stars were in fact changeable.

Tycho also attempted to measure the parallax of a bright comet that appeared in 1577 and, again, found it too small to measure. Thus, the comet also had to be far beyond the Earth. Furthermore, because the comet's position relative to the stars changed from night to night, its motion was more like a planet than a star. But most scholars of Tycho's time taught that the motions of the planets had existed in unchanging form since the beginning of the universe. If new objects such as comets could appear and disappear within the realm of the planets, the conventional notions of planetary motions needed to be revised.

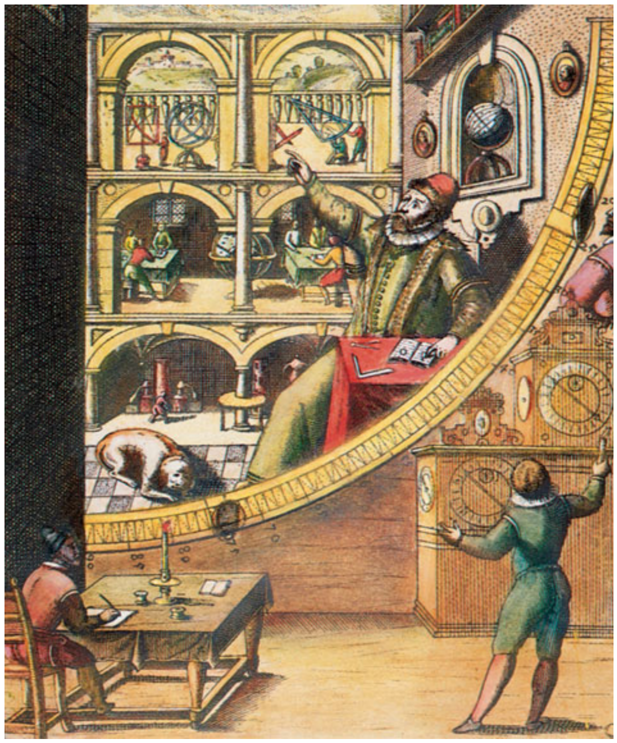
Tycho's observations showed that the heavens are by no means pristine and unchanging. This discovery flew in the face of nearly 2000 years of astronomical thought. In support of these revolutionary observations, the king of Denmark financed the construction of two magnificent observatories for Tycho's use on the island of Hven, just off the Danish coast. The bequest for these two observatories—Uraniborg ("heavenly castle") and Stjerneborg ("star castle")—allowed Tycho to design and have built a set of astronomical instruments vastly superior in quality to any earlier instruments (Figure 4-8).

Tycho and the Positions of the Planets

With this state-of-the-art equipment, Tycho proceeded to measure the positions of stars and planets with unprecedented accuracy. In addition, he and his assistants were careful to make several observations of the same star or planet with different instruments, in order to identify any errors that might be caused by the instruments themselves. This painstaking approach to mapping the heavens revolutionized the practice of astronomy and is used by astronomers today.

A key goal of Tycho's observations during this period was to test the ideas Copernicus had proposed decades earlier about the Earth going around the Sun. Tycho argued that if the Earth was in motion, then nearby stars should appear to shift their positions with respect to background stars as we orbit the Sun. Tycho failed to detect any such parallax, and he concluded that the Earth was at rest and the Copernican system was wrong.

On this point Tycho was in error, for nearby stars do in fact shift their positions as he had suggested. But even the nearest stars are so far away that the shifts in their positions are less than an arcsecond, too small to be seen with the naked eye. Tycho would have needed a telescope to detect the parallax that he was looking for, but the telescope was not invented until after his death in



WEB LINK 4.4

Figure 4-8

Tycho Brahe (1546–1601) Observing This contemporary illustration shows Tycho Brahe with some of the state-of-the-art measuring apparatus at Uraniborg, one of the two observatories that he built under the patronage of Frederik II of Denmark. (This magnificent observatory lacked a telescope, which had not yet been invented.) The data that Tycho collected were crucial to the development of astronomy in the years after his death. (Photo Researchers, Inc.)

WEB LINK 4.5

Figure 4-9

Johannes Kepler (1571–1630) By analyzing Tycho Brahe's detailed records of planetary positions, Kepler developed three general principles, called Kepler's laws, that describe how the planets move about the Sun. Kepler was the first to realize that the orbits of the planets are ellipses and not circles. (E. Lessing/Magnum)

1601. Indeed, the first accurate determination of stellar parallax was not made until 1838.

Although he remained convinced that the Earth was at the center of the universe, Tycho nonetheless made a tremendous contribution toward putting the heliocentric model on a solid foundation. From 1576 to 1597, he used his instruments to make comprehensive measurements of the positions of the planets with an accuracy of 1 arcminute. This is as well as can be done with the naked eye and was far superior to any earlier measurements. Within the reams of data that Tycho compiled lay the truth about the motions of the planets. The person who would extract this truth was a German mathematician who became Tycho's assistant in 1600, a year before the great astronomer's death. His name was Johannes Kepler (Figure 4-9).

4-4 Johannes Kepler proposed elliptical paths for the planets about the Sun

The task that Johannes Kepler took on at the beginning of the seventeenth century was to find a model of planetary motion that agreed completely with Tycho's extensive and very accurate observations of planetary positions. To do this, Kepler found that he had to break with an ancient prejudice about planetary motions.

Kepler's ideas apply not just to the planets, but to all orbiting celestial objects

Elliptical Orbits and Kepler's First Law

Astronomers had long assumed that heavenly objects move in circles, which were considered the most perfect and harmonious of all geometric shapes. They believed that if a perfect God resided in heaven along with the stars and planets, then the motions of these objects must be perfect too. Against this context, Kepler dared to try to explain planetary motions with noncircular curves. In particular, he found that he had the best success with a particular kind of curve called an **ellipse.**

You can draw an ellipse by using a loop of string, two thumbtacks, and a pencil, as shown in Figure 4-10*a*. Each thumbtack in the figure is at a **focus** (plural **foci**) of the ellipse; an ellipse has two foci. The longest diameter of an ellipse, called the **major axis,** passes through both foci. Half of that distance is called the **semimajor axis** and is usually designated by the letter *a*. A circle is a special case of an ellipse in which the two foci are at the same point (this corresponds to using only a single thumbtack in Figure 4-10*a*). The semimajor axis of a circle is equal to its radius.

By assuming that planetary orbits were ellipses, Kepler found, to his delight, that he could make his theoretical calculations match precisely to Tycho's observations. This important discovery, first published in 1609, is now called **Kepler's first law:**

The orbit of a planet about the Sun is an ellipse with the Sun at one focus.

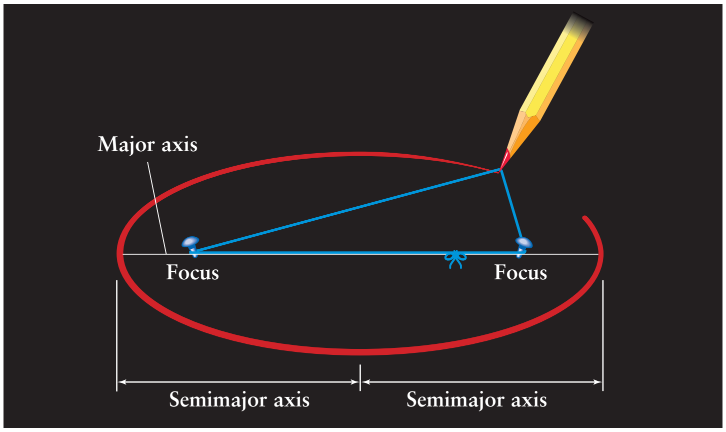
The semimajor axis *a* of a planet's orbit is the average distance between the planet and the Sun.

CAUTION! The Sun is at one focus of a planet's elliptical orbit, but there is *nothing* at the other focus. This "empty focus" has geometrical significance, because it helps to define the shape of the ellipse, but plays no other role.

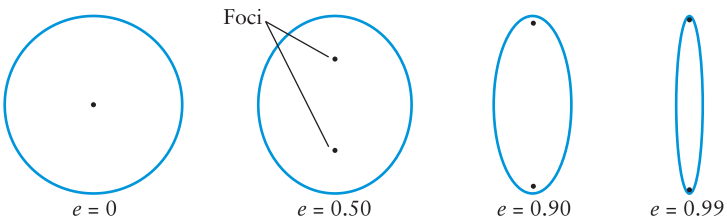
Ellipses come in different shapes, depending on the elongation of the ellipse. The shape of an ellipse is described by its **eccentricity,** designated by the letter *e*. The value of *e* can range from 0 (a circle) to just under 1 (nearly a straight line). The greater the eccentricity, the more elongated the ellipse. Figure 4-10*b* shows a few examples of ellipses with different eccentricities. Because a circle is a special case of an ellipse, it is possible to have a perfectly circular orbit. But all of the objects that orbit the Sun have orbits that are at least slightly elliptical. The most circular of any planetary orbit is that of Venus, with an eccentricity of just 0.007; Mercury's orbit has an eccentricity of 0.206, and a number of small bodies called comets move in very elongated orbits with eccentricities just less than 1.

Orbital Speeds and Kepler's Second Law

Once he knew the shape of a planet's orbit, Kepler was ready to describe exactly *how* it moves on that orbit. As a planet travels in an elliptical orbit, its distance from the Sun varies. Kepler realized that the speed of a planet also varies along its orbit. A planet moves most rapidly when it is nearest the Sun, at a point on its orbit called **perihelion.** Conversely, a planet moves most slowly when it is farthest from the Sun, at a point called **aphelion** (Figure 4-11).



(a) The geometry of an ellipse



(b) Ellipses with different eccentricities

Figure 4-10

Ellipses (a) To draw an ellipse, use two thumbtacks to secure the ends of a piece of string, then use a pencil to pull the string taut. If you move the pencil while keeping the string taut, the pencil traces out an ellipse. The thumbtacks are located at the two foci of the ellipse. The major axis is the greatest distance across the ellipse; the semimajor axis is half of this distance. **(b)** A series of ellipses with the same major axis but different eccentricities. An ellipse can have any eccentricity from $e = 0$ (a circle) to just under $e = 1$ (virtually a straight line).

After much trial and error, Kepler found a way to describe just how a planet's speed varies as it moves along its orbit. Figure 4-11 illustrates this discovery, also published in 1609. Suppose that it takes 30 days for a planet to go from point *A* to point *B*. During that time, an imaginary line joining the Sun and the planet sweeps out a nearly triangular area. Kepler discovered that a line joining the Sun and the planet also sweeps out exactly the same area during any other 30-day interval. In other words, if the planet also takes 30 days to go from point *C* to point *D*, then the two shaded segments in Figure 4-11 are equal in area. **Kepler's second law** can be stated thus:

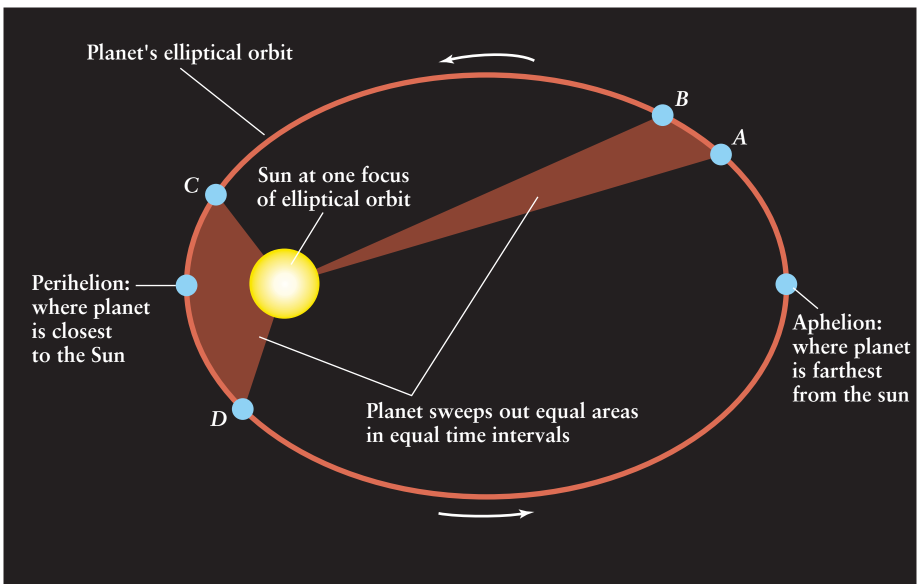
A line joining a planet and the Sun sweeps out equal areas in equal intervals of time.

This relationship is also called the **law of equal areas.** In the idealized case of a circular orbit, a planet would have to move at a constant speed around the orbit in order to satisfy Kepler's second law.

ANALOGY An analogy for Kepler's second law is a twirling ice skater holding weights in each hand. If the skater moves the weights closer to her body by pulling her arms straight in, her rate of spin increases and the weights move faster; if she extends her arms so the weights move away from her body, her rate of spin decreases and the weights slow down. Just like the weights, a planet in an elliptical orbit travels at a higher speed when it moves closer to the Sun (toward perihelion) and travels at a lower speed when it moves away from the Sun (toward aphelion).

Orbital Periods and Kepler's Third Law

Kepler's second law describes how the speed of a given planet changes as it orbits the Sun. Kepler also deduced from Tycho's data a relationship that can be used to compare the motions of *different* planets. Published in 1618 and now called **Kepler's third law,** it states a relationship between the size of a planet's orbit and the time the planet takes to go once around the Sun:



ANIMATION 4.6

Figure 4-11

Kepler's First and Second Laws According to Kepler's first law, a planet travels around the Sun along an elliptical orbit with the Sun at one focus. According to his second law, a planet moves fastest when closest to the Sun (at perihelion) and slowest when farthest from the Sun (at aphelion). As the planet moves, an imaginary line joining the planet and the Sun sweeps out equal areas in equal intervals of time (from *A* to *B* or from *C* to *D*). By using these laws in his calculations, Kepler found a perfect fit to the apparent motions of the planets.

BOX 4-2 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Using Kepler's Third Law

Kepler's third law relates the sidereal period P of an object orbiting the Sun to the semimajor axis a of its orbit:

$$P^2 = a^3$$

You must keep two essential points in mind when working with this equation:

1. The period P *must* be measured in years, and the semimajor axis a *must* be measured in astronomical units (AU). Otherwise you will get nonsensical results.

2. This equation applies *only* to the special case of an object, like a planet, that orbits the Sun. If you want to analyze the orbit of the Moon around the Earth, of a spacecraft around Mars, or of a planet around a distant star, you must use a different, generalized form of Kepler's third law. We discuss this alternative equation in Section 4-7 and Box 4-4.

EXAMPLE: The average distance from Venus to the Sun is 0.72 AU. Use this to determine the sidereal period of Venus.

Situation: The average distance from the Venus to the Sun is the semimajor axis a of the planet's orbit. Our goal is to calculate the planet's sidereal period P.

Tools: To relate a and P we use Kepler's third law, $P^2 = a^3$.

Answer: We first cube the semimajor axis (multiply it by itself twice):

$$a^3 = (0.72)^3 = 0.72 \times 0.72 \times 0.72 = 0.373$$

According to Kepler's third law this is also equal to P^2, the square of the sidereal period. So, to find P, we have to "undo" the square, that is, take the square root. Using a calculator, we find

$$P = \sqrt{P^2} = \sqrt{0.373} = 0.61$$

Review: The sidereal period of Venus is 0.61 years, or a bit more than seven Earth months. This makes sense: A planet with a smaller orbit than the Earth's (an inferior planet) must have a shorter sidereal period than the Earth.

EXAMPLE: A certain small asteroid (a rocky body a few tens of kilometers across) takes eight years to complete one orbit around the Sun. Find the semimajor axis of the asteroid's orbit.

Situation: We are given the sidereal period $P = 8$ years, and are to determine the semimajor axis a.

Tools: As in the preceding example, we relate a and P using Kepler's third law, $P^2 = a^3$.

Answer: We first square the period:

$$P^2 = 8^2 = 8 \times 8 = 64$$

From Kepler's third law, this is also equal to a^3. To determine a, we must take the *cube root* of a^3, that is, find the number whose cube is 64. If your calculator has a cube root function, denoted by the symbol $\sqrt[3]{\ }$, you can use it to find that the cube root of 64 is 4: $\sqrt[3]{64} = 4$. Otherwise, you can determine by trial and error that the cube of 4 is 64:

$$4^3 = 4 \times 4 \times 4 = 64$$

Because the cube of 4 is 64, it follows that the cube root of 64 is 4 (taking the cube root "undoes" the cube).

With either technique you find that the orbit of this asteroid has semimajor axis $a = 4$ AU.

Review: The period is greater than 1 year, so the semimajor axis is greater than 1 AU. Note that $a = 4$ AU is intermediate between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter (see Table 4-3). Many asteroids are known with semimajor axes in this range, forming a region in the solar system called the asteroid belt.

The square of the sidereal period of a planet is directly proportional to the cube of the semimajor axis of the orbit.

Kepler's third law says that the larger a planet's orbit—that is, the larger the semimajor axis, or average distance from the planet to the Sun—the longer the sidereal period, which is the time it takes the planet to complete an orbit. From Kepler's third law one can show that the larger the semimajor axis, the slower the average speed at which the planet moves around its orbit. (By contrast, Kepler's *second* law describes how the speed of a given planet is sometimes faster and sometimes slower than its average speed.) This qualitative relationship between orbital size and orbital speed is just what Aristarchus and Copernicus used to explain retrograde motion, as we saw in Section 4-2. Kepler's great contribution was to make this relationship a quantitative one.

It is useful to restate Kepler's third law as an equation. If a planet's sidereal period P is measured in years and the length of its semimajor axis a is measured in astronomical units (AU), where 1 AU is the average distance from the Earth to the Sun (see Section 1-7), then Kepler's third law is

Kepler's third law

$$P^2 = a^3$$

P = planet's sidereal period, in years

a = planet's semimajor axis, in AU

Table 4-3 A Demonstration of Kepler's Third Law ($P^2 = a^3$)

Planet	Sidereal period P (years)	Semimajor axis a (AU)	P^2	a^3
Mercury	0.24	0.39	0.06	0.06
Venus	0.61	0.72	0.37	0.37
Earth	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
Mars	1.88	1.52	3.53	3.51
Jupiter	11.86	5.20	140.7	140.6
Saturn	29.46	9.55	867.9	871.0
Uranus	84.10	19.19	7,072	7,067
Neptune	164.86	30.07	27,180	27,190

Kepler's third law states that $P^2 = a^3$ for each of the planets. The last two columns of this table demonstrate that this relationship holds true to a very high level of accuracy.

If you know either the sidereal period of a planet or the semimajor axis of its orbit, you can find the other quantity using this equation. Box 4-2 gives some examples of how this is done.

We can verify Kepler's third law for all of the planets, including those that were discovered after Kepler's death, using data from Tables 4-1 and 4-2. If Kepler's third law is correct, for each planet the numerical values of P^2 and a^3 should be equal. This is indeed true to very high accuracy, as Table 4-3 shows.

The Significance of Kepler's Laws

Kepler's laws are a landmark in the history of astronomy. They made it possible to calculate the motions of the planets with better accuracy than any geocentric model ever had, and they helped to justify the idea of a heliocentric model. Kepler's laws also pass the test of Occam's razor, for they are simpler in every way than the schemes of Ptolemy or Copernicus, both of which used a complicated combination of circles.

But the significance of Kepler's laws goes beyond understanding planetary orbits. These same laws are also obeyed by spacecraft orbiting the Earth, by two stars revolving about each other in a binary star system, and even by galaxies in their orbits about each other. Throughout this book, we shall use Kepler's laws in a wide range of situations.

As impressive as Kepler's accomplishments were, he did not prove that the planets orbit the Sun, nor was he able to explain why planets move in accordance with his three laws. These advances were made by two other figures who loom large in the history of astronomy: Galileo Galilei and Isaac Newton.

4-5 Galileo's discoveries with a telescope strongly supported a heliocentric model

When Dutch opticians invented the telescope during the first decade of the seventeenth century, astronomy was changed forever. The scholar who used this new tool to amass convincing evidence that the planets orbit the Sun, not the Earth, was the Italian mathematician and physical scientist Galileo Galilei (Figure 4-12).

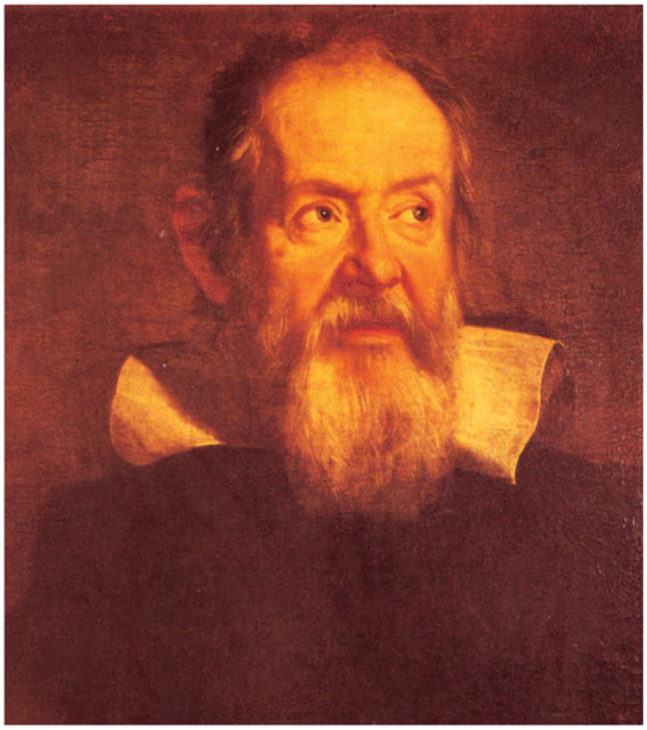
Galileo used the cutting-edge technology of the 1600s to radically transform our picture of the universe

While Galileo did not invent the telescope, he was the first to point one of these new devices toward the sky and to publish his observations. Beginning in 1610, he saw sights of which no one had ever dreamed. He discovered mountains on the Moon, sunspots on the Sun, and the rings of Saturn, and he was the first to see that the Milky Way is not a featureless band of light but rather "a mass of innumerable stars."

The Phases of Venus

One of Galileo's most important discoveries with the telescope was that Venus exhibits phases like those of the Moon (Figure 4-13). Galileo also noticed that the apparent size of Venus as seen through his telescope was related to the planet's phase. Venus appears small at gibbous phase and largest at crescent phase. There is also a correlation between the phases of Venus and the planet's angular distance from the Sun.

Figure 4-14 shows that these relationships are entirely compatible with a heliocentric model in which the Earth and Venus both go around the Sun. They are also completely *incompatible* with the Ptolemaic system, in which the Sun and Venus both orbit



WEB LINK 4.6

Figure 4-12

Galileo Galilei (1564–1642) Galileo was one of the first people to use a telescope to observe the heavens. He discovered craters on the Moon, sunspots on the Sun, the phases of Venus, and four moons orbiting Jupiter. His observations strongly suggested that the Earth orbits the Sun, not vice versa. (Eric Lessing/Art Resource)

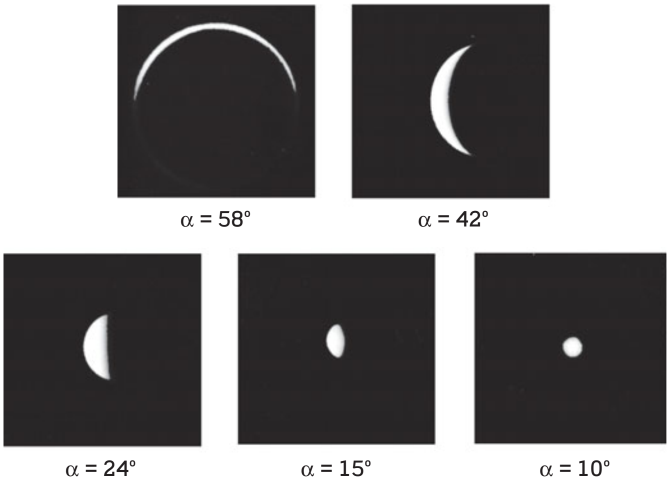


Figure 4-13 R I V U X G

The Phases of Venus This series of photographs shows how the appearance of Venus changes as it moves along its orbit. The number below each view is the angular diameter α of the planet in arcseconds. Venus has the largest angular diameter when it is a crescent, and the smallest angular diameter when it is gibbous (nearly full). (New Mexico State University Observatory)

the Earth. To explain why Venus is never seen very far from the Sun, the Ptolemaic model had to assume that the deferents of Venus and of the Sun move together in lockstep, with the epicycle of Venus centered on a straight line between the Earth and the Sun (Figure 4-15). In this model, Venus was never on the opposite side of the Sun from the Earth, and so it could never have shown the gibbous phases that Galileo observed.

The Moons of Jupiter

Galileo also found more unexpected evidence for the ideas of Copernicus. In 1610 Galileo discovered four moons, now called the Galilean satellites, orbiting Jupiter (Figure 4-16). He realized that they were orbiting Jupiter because they appeared to move back and forth from one side of the planet to the other. Figure 4-17 shows confirming observations made by Jesuit observers in 1620. Astronomers soon realized that the larger the orbit of one of the moons around Jupiter, the slower that moon moves and the longer it takes that moon to travel around its orbit. These are the same relationships that Copernicus deduced for the motions of the planets around the Sun. Thus, the moons of Jupiter behave like a Copernican system in miniature.

Galileo's telescopic observations constituted the first fundamentally new astronomical data in almost 2000 years. Contradicting prevailing opinion and religious belief, his discoveries strongly suggested a heliocentric structure of the universe. The Roman Catholic Church, which was a powerful political force in Italy and whose

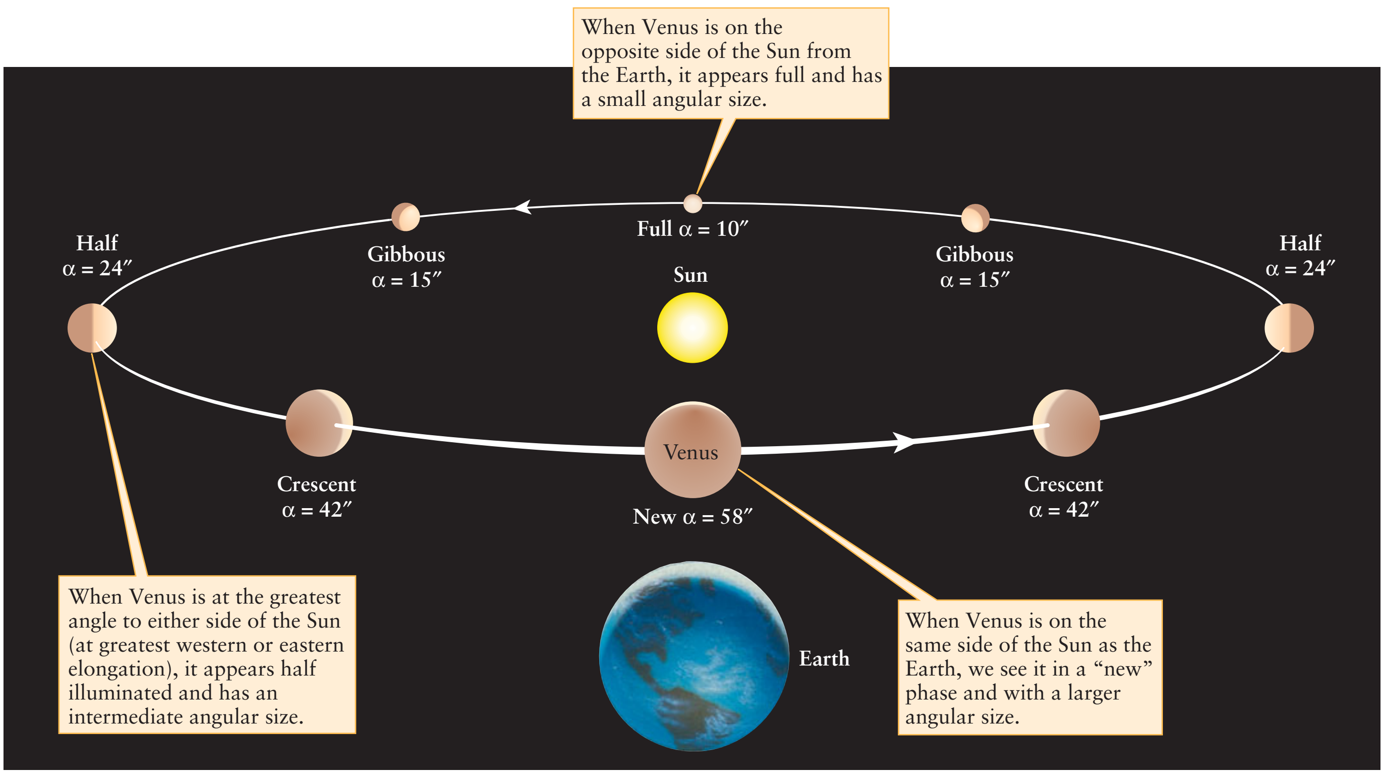


Figure 4-14

The Changing Appearance of Venus Explained in a Heliocentric Model A heliocentric model, in which the Earth and Venus both orbit the Sun, provides a natural explanation for the changing appearance of Venus shown in Figure 4-13.

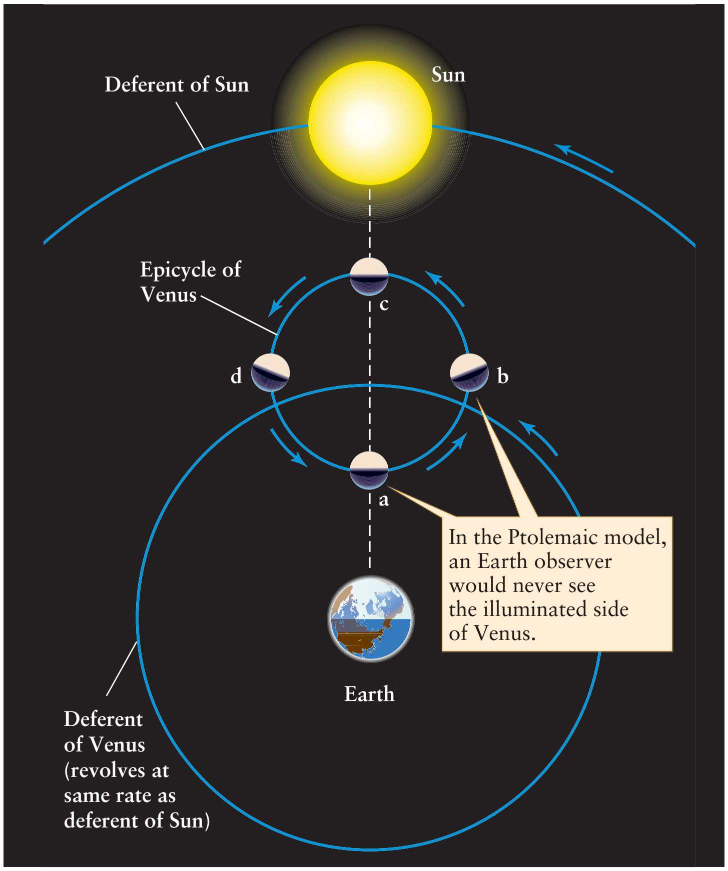


Figure 4-15

The Appearance of Venus in the Ptolemaic Model In the geocentric Ptolemaic model the deferents of Venus and the Sun rotate together, with the epicycle of Venus centered on a line (shown dashed) that connects the Sun and the Earth. In this model an Earth observer would never see Venus as more than half illuminated. (At positions *a* and *c*, Venus appears in a "new" phase; at positions *b* and *d*, it appears as a crescent. Compare with Figure 3-2, which shows the phases of the Moon.) Because Galileo saw Venus in nearly fully illuminated phases, he concluded that the Ptolemaic model must be incorrect.

doctrine at the time placed the Earth at the center of the universe, cautioned Galileo not to advocate a heliocentric model. He nonetheless persisted and was sentenced to spend the last years of his life under house arrest "for vehement suspicion of heresy." Nevertheless, there was no turning back. (The Roman Catholic Church lifted its ban against Galileo's heliocentric ideas in the 1700s.)

While Galileo's observations showed convincingly that the Ptolemaic model was entirely wrong and that a heliocentric model is the more nearly correct one, he was unable to provide a complete explanation of why the Earth should orbit the Sun and not vice versa. The first person who was able to provide such an explanation was the Englishman Isaac Newton, born on Christmas Day of 1642, a dozen years after the death of Kepler and the same year that Galileo died. While Kepler and Galileo revolutionized our understanding of planetary motions, Newton's contribution was far greater: He deduced the basic laws that govern all motions on Earth as well as in the heavens.

Figure 4-16 R I **V** U X G

Jupiter and Its Largest Moons This photograph, taken by an amateur astronomer with a small telescope, shows the four Galilean satellites alongside an overexposed image of Jupiter. Each satellite is bright enough to be seen with the unaided eye, were it not overwhelmed by the glare of Jupiter. (Courtesy of C. Holmes)

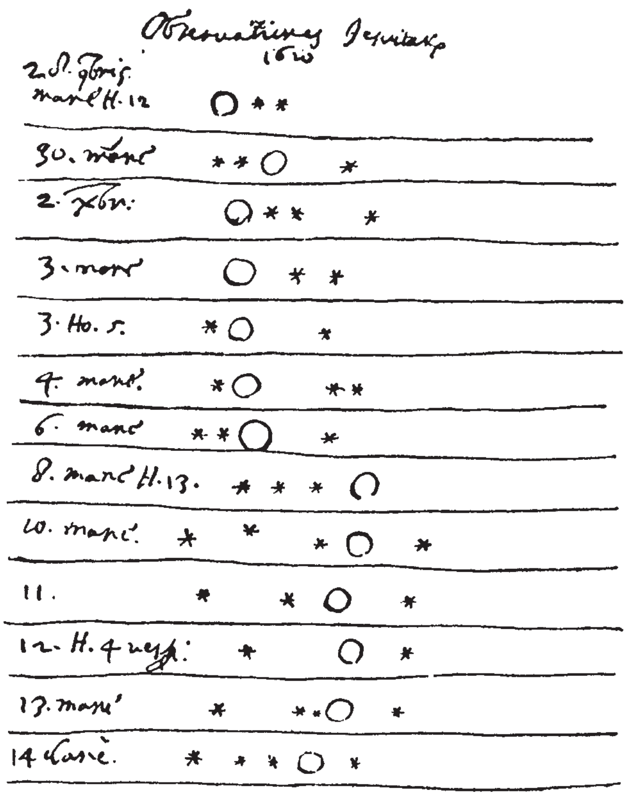


Figure 4-17

Early Observations of Jupiter's Moons In 1610 Galileo discovered four "stars" that move back and forth across Jupiter from one night to the next. He concluded that these are four moons that orbit Jupiter, much as our Moon orbits the Earth. This drawing shows notations made by Jesuit observers on successive nights in 1620. The circle represents Jupiter and the stars its moons. Compare the drawing numbered 13 with the photograph in Figure 4-16. (Yerkes Observatory)

4-6 Isaac Newton formulated three laws that describe fundamental properties of physical reality

Until the mid-seventeenth century, virtually all attempts to describe the motions of the heavens were *empirical,* or based directly on data and observations. From Ptolemy to Kepler, astronomers would adjust their ideas and calculations by trial and error until they ended up with answers that agreed with observation.

The same laws of motion that hold sway on Earth apply throughout the universe

Isaac Newton (Figure 4-18) introduced a new approach. He began with three quite general statements, now called **Newton's laws of motion.** These laws, deduced from experimental observation, apply to all forces and all objects. Newton then showed that Kepler's three laws follow logically from these laws of motion and from a formula for the force of gravity that he derived from observation.

In other words, Kepler's laws are not just an empirical description of the motions of the planets, but a direct consequence of the fundamental laws of physical matter. Using this deeper insight into the nature of motions in the heavens, Newton and his successors were able to describe accurately not just the orbits of the planets but also the orbits of the Moon and comets.

WEB LINK 4.7

Figure 4-18

Isaac Newton (1642–1727) Using mathematical techniques that he devised, Isaac Newton formulated the law of universal gravitation and demonstrated that the planets orbit the Sun according to simple mechanical rules. (National Portrait Gallery, London)

Newton's First Law

Newton's laws of motion describe objects on Earth as well as in the heavens. Thus, we can understand each of these laws by considering the motions of objects around us. We begin with **Newton's first law of motion:**

An object remains at rest, or moves in a straight line at a constant speed, unless acted upon by a net outside force.

By **force** we mean any push or pull that acts on the object. An *outside* force is one that is exerted on the object by something other than the object itself. The net, or total, outside force is the combined effect of all of the individual outside forces that act on the object.

Right now, you are demonstrating the first part of Newton's first law. As you sit in your chair reading this, there are two outside forces acting on you: The force of gravity pulls you downward, and the chair pushes up on you. These two forces are of equal strength but of opposite direction, so their effects cancel—there is no *net* outside force. Hence, your body remains at rest as stated in Newton's first law. If you try to lift yourself out of your chair by grabbing your knees and pulling up, you will remain at rest because this force is not an outside force.

CAUTION! The second part of Newton's first law, about objects in motion, may seem to go against common sense. If you want to make this book move across the floor in a straight line at a constant speed, you must continually push on it. You might therefore think that there *is* a net outside force, the force of your push. But another force also acts on the book—the force of friction as the book rubs across the floor. As you push the book across the floor, the force of your push exactly balances the force of friction, so again there is no net outside force. The effect is to make the book move in a straight line at constant speed, just as Newton's first law says. If you stop pushing, there will be nothing to balance the effects of friction. Then there will be a net outside force and the book will slow to a stop.

Newton's first law tells us that if no net outside force acts on a moving object, there can be no net outside force acting on that object. This means that a net outside force *must* be acting on the planets. To see why, note that a planet moving through empty space encounters no friction, so the planet would tend to fly off into space at a steady speed along a straight line if there were no other outside force acting on it. Because this does not happen, Newton concluded that a force *must* act continuously on the planets to keep them in their elliptical orbits.

Newton's Second Law

Newton's second law describes how the motion of an object *changes* if there is a net outside force acting on it. To appreciate Newton's second law, we must first understand three quantities that describe motion—speed, velocity, and acceleration.

Speed is a measure of how fast an object is moving. Speed and direction of motion together constitute an object's **velocity.**

Compared with a car driving north at 100 km/h (62 mi/h), a car driving east at 100 km/h has the same speed but a different velocity. We can restate Newton's first law to say that an object has a constant velocity (its speed and direction of motion do not change) if no net outside force acts on the object.

Acceleration is the rate at which velocity changes. Because velocity involves both speed and direction, acceleration can result from changes in either. Contrary to popular use of the term, acceleration does not simply mean speeding up. A car is accelerating if it is speeding up, and it is also accelerating if it is slowing down or turning (that is, changing the direction in which it is moving).

You can verify these statements about acceleration if you think about the sensations of riding in a car. If the car is moving with a constant velocity (in a straight line at a constant speed), you feel the same as if the car were not moving at all. But you can feel it when the car accelerates in any way: You feel thrown back in your seat if the car speeds up, thrown forward if the car slows down, and thrown sideways if the car changes direction in a tight turn. In Box 4-3 we discuss the reasons for these sensations, along with other applications of Newton's laws to everyday life.

An apple falling from a tree is a good example of acceleration that involves only an increase in speed. Initially, at the moment the stem breaks, the apple's speed is zero. After 1 second, its downward speed is 9.8 meters per second, or 9.8 m/s (32 feet per second, or 32 ft/s). After 2 seconds, the apple's speed is twice this, or 19.6 m/s. After 3 seconds, the speed is 29.4 m/s. Because the apple's speed increases by 9.8 m/s for each second of free fall, the rate of acceleration is 9.8 meters per second per second, or 9.8 m/s^2 (32 ft/s^2). Thus, the Earth's gravity gives the apple a constant acceleration of 9.8 m/s^2 downward, toward the center of the Earth.

A planet revolving about the Sun along a perfectly circular orbit is an example of acceleration that involves change of direction only. As the planet moves along its orbit, its speed remains

BOX 4-3 — The Heavens on the Earth

Newton's Laws in Everyday Life

In our study of astronomy, we use Newton's three laws of motion to help us understand the motions of objects in the heavens. But you can see applications of Newton's laws every day in the world around you. By considering these everyday applications, we can gain insight into how Newton's laws apply to celestial events that are far removed from ordinary human experience.

Newton's *first* law, or principle of inertia, says that an object at rest naturally tends to remain at rest and that an object in motion naturally tends to remain in motion. This explains the sensations that you feel when riding in an automobile. When you are waiting at a red light, your car and your body are both at rest. When the light turns green and you press on the gas pedal, the car accelerates forward but your body attempts to stay where it was. Hence, the seat of the accelerating car pushes forward into your body, and it feels as though you are being pushed back in your seat.

Once the car is up to cruising speed, your body wants to keep moving in a straight line at this cruising speed. If the car makes a sharp turn to the left, the right side of the car will move toward you. Thus, you will feel as though you are being thrown to the car's right side (the side on the outside of the turn). If you bring the car to a sudden stop by pressing on the brakes, your body will continue moving forward until the seat belt stops you. In this case, it feels as though you are being thrown toward the front of the car.

Newton's *second* law states that the net outside force on an object equals the product of the object's mass and its acceleration. You can accelerate a crumpled-up piece of paper to a pretty good speed by throwing it with a moderate force. But if you try to throw a heavy rock by using the same force, the acceleration will be much less because the rock has much more mass than the crumpled paper. Because of the smaller acceleration, the rock will leave your hand moving at only a slow speed.

Automobile airbags are based on the relationship between force and acceleration. It takes a large force to bring a fast-moving object suddenly to rest because this requires a large acceleration. In a collision, the driver of a car not equipped with airbags is jerked to a sudden stop and the large forces that act can cause major injuries. But if the car has airbags that deploy in an accident, the driver's body will slow down more gradually as it contacts the airbag, and the driver's acceleration will be less. (Remember that *acceleration* can refer to slowing down as well as to speeding up.) Hence, the force on the driver and the chance of injury will both be greatly reduced.

Newton's *third* law, the principle of action and reaction, explains how a car can accelerate at all. It is not correct to say that the engine pushes the car forward, because Newton's second law tells us that it takes a force acting from outside the car to make the car accelerate. Rather, the engine makes the wheels and tires turn, and the tires push backward on the ground. (You can see this backward force in action when a car drives through wet ground and sprays mud backward from the tires.) From Newton's third law, the ground must exert an equally large forward force on the car, and this is the force that pushes the car forward.

You use the same principles when you walk: You push backward on the ground with your foot, and the ground pushes forward on you. Icy pavement or a freshly waxed floor have greatly reduced friction. In these situations, your feet and the surface under you can exert only weak forces on each other, and it is much harder to walk.

constant. Nevertheless, the planet is continuously being accelerated because its direction of motion is continuously changing.

Newton's second law of motion says that in order to give an object an acceleration (that is, to change its velocity), a net outside force *must* act on the object. To be specific, this law says that the acceleration of an object is proportional to the net outside force acting on the object. That is, the harder you push on an object, the greater the resulting acceleration. This law can be succinctly stated as an equation. If a net outside force F acts on an object of mass m, the object will experience an acceleration a such that

Newton's second law

$$F = ma$$

F = net outside force on an object

m = mass of object

a = acceleration of object

The **mass** of an object is a measure of the total amount of material in the object. It is usually expressed in kilograms (kg) or grams (g). For example, the mass of the Sun is 2×10^{30} kg, the mass of a hydrogen atom is 1.7×10^{-27} kg, and the mass of an average adult is 75 kg. The Sun, a hydrogen atom, and a person have these masses regardless of where they happen to be in the universe.

CAUTION! It is important not to confuse the concepts of mass and weight. **Weight** is the force of gravity that acts on an object and, like any force, is usually expressed in pounds or newtons (1 newton = 0.225 pound).

We can use Newton's second law to relate mass and weight. We have seen that the acceleration caused by the Earth's gravity is 9.8 m/s^2. When a 50-kg swimmer falls from a diving board, the only outside force acting on her as she falls is her weight. Thus, from Newton's second law ($F = ma$), her weight is equal to her mass multiplied by the acceleration due to gravity:

$$50 \text{ kg} \times 9.8 \text{ m/s}^2 = 490 \text{ newtons} = 110 \text{ pounds}$$

Note that this answer is correct only when the swimmer is on Earth. She would weigh less on the Moon, where the pull of gravity is weaker, and more on Jupiter, where the gravitational pull is stronger. Floating deep in space, she would have no weight at all; she would be "weightless." Nevertheless, in all these circumstances, she would always have exactly the same mass, because mass is an inherent property of matter unaffected by details of the environment. Whenever we describe the properties of planets, stars, or galaxies, we speak of their masses, never of their weights.

We have seen that a planet is continually accelerating as it orbits the Sun. From Newton's second law, this means that there must be a net outside force that acts continually on each of the planets. As we will see in the next section, this force is the gravitational attraction of the Sun.

Newton's Third Law

The last of Newton's general laws of motion, called **Newton's third law of motion,** is the famous statement about action and reaction:

Whenever one object exerts a force on a second object, the second object exerts an equal and opposite force on the first object.

For example, if you weigh 110 pounds, when you are standing up you are pressing down on the floor with a force of 110 pounds. Newton's third law tells us that the floor is also pushing up against your feet with an equal force of 110 pounds. You can think of each of these forces as a reaction to the other force, which is the origin of the phrase "action and reaction."

Newton realized that because the Sun is exerting a force on each planet to keep it in orbit, each planet must also be exerting an equal and opposite force on the Sun. However, the planets are much less massive than the Sun (for example, the Earth has only 1/300,000 of the Sun's mass). Therefore, although the Sun's force on a planet is the same as the planet's force on the Sun, the planet's much smaller mass gives it a much larger acceleration, according to Newton's second law. This is why the planets circle the Sun instead of vice versa. Thus, Newton's laws reveal the reason for our heliocentric solar system.

4-7 Newton's description of gravity accounts for Kepler's laws and explains the motions of the planets

Tie a ball to one end of a piece of string, hold the other end of the string in your hand, and whirl the ball around in a circle. As the ball "orbits" your hand, it is continuously accelerating because its velocity is changing. (Even if its speed is constant, its direction of motion is changing.) In accordance with Newton's second law, this can happen only if the ball is continuously acted on by an outside force—the pull of the string. The pull is directed along the string toward your hand. In the same way, Newton saw, the force that keeps a planet in orbit around the Sun is a pull that always acts toward the Sun. That pull is **gravity,** or **gravitational force.**

Newton's law of gravitation is truly universal: it applies to falling apples as well as to planets and galaxies

Newton's discovery about the forces that act on planets led him to suspect that the force of gravity pulling a falling apple straight down to the ground is fundamentally the same as the force on a planet that is always directed straight at the Sun. In other words, gravity is the force that shapes the orbits of the planets. What is more, he was able to determine how the force of gravity depends on the distance between the Sun and the planet. His result was a law of gravitation that could apply to the motion of distant planets as well as to the flight of a football on Earth. Using this law, Newton achieved the remarkable goal of deducing Kepler's laws from fundamental principles of nature.

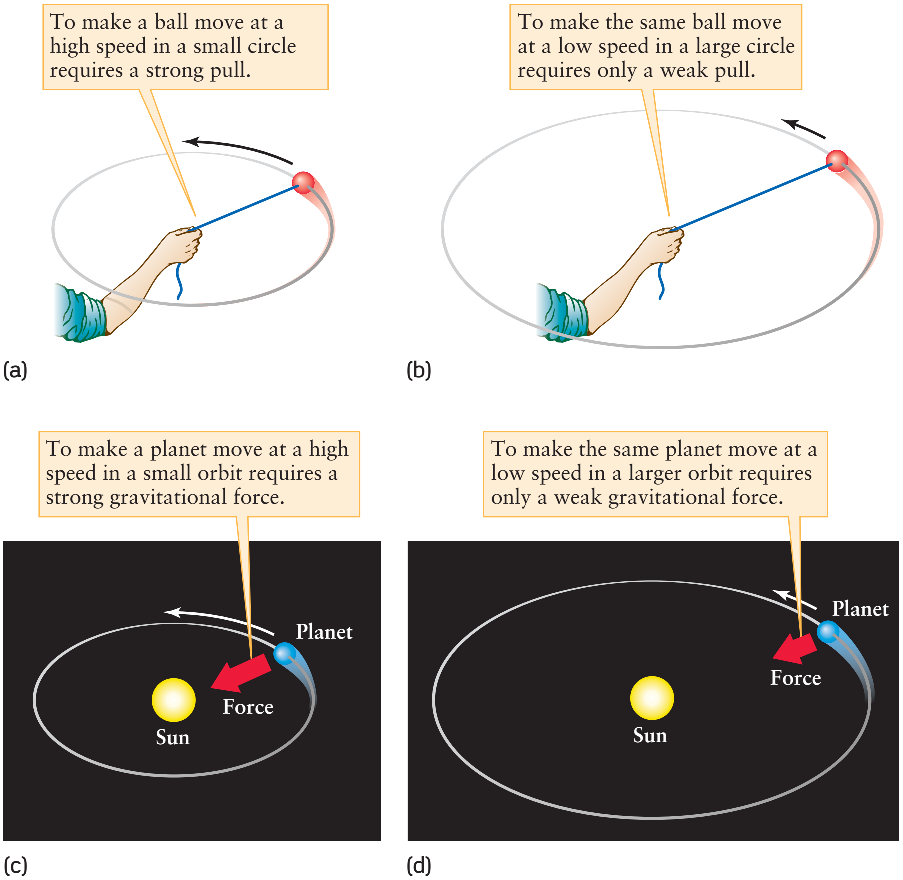


Figure 4-19

An Orbit Analogy **(a)** To make a ball on a string move at high speed around a small circle, you have to exert a substantial pull on the string. **(b)** If you lengthen the string and make the same ball move at low speed around a large circle, much less pull is required. **(c), (d)** Similarly, a planet that orbits close to the Sun moves at high speed and requires a substantial gravitational force from the Sun, while a planet in a large orbit moves at low speed and requires less gravitational force to stay in orbit.

To see how Newton reasoned, think again about a ball attached to a string. If you use a short string, so that the ball orbits in a small circle, and whirl the ball around your hand at a high speed, you will find that you have to pull fairly hard on the string (Figure 4-19*a*). But if you use a longer string, so that the ball moves in a larger orbit, and if you make the ball orbit your hand at a slow speed, you only have to exert a light tug on the string (Figure 4-19*b*). The orbits of the planets behave in the same way; the larger the size of the orbit, the slower the planet's speed (Figure 4-19*c, d*). By analogy to the force of the string on the orbiting ball, Newton concluded that the force that attracts a planet toward the Sun must decrease with increasing distance between the Sun and the planet.

The Law of Universal Gravitation

Using his own three laws and Kepler's three laws, Newton succeeded in formulating a general statement that describes the nature of the gravitational force. Newton's **law of universal gravitation** is as follows:

Two objects attract each other with a force that is directly proportional to the mass of each object and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between them.

This law states that *any* two objects exert gravitational pulls on each other. Normally, you notice only the gravitational force that the Earth exerts on you, otherwise known as your weight. In fact, you feel gravitational attractions to *all* the objects around you. For example, this book is exerting a gravitational force on you as you read it. But because the force exerted on you by this book is proportional to the book's mass, which is very small compared to the Earth's mass, the force is too small to notice. (It can actually be measured with sensitive equipment.)

Consider two 1-kg objects separated by a distance of 1 meter. Newton's law of universal gravitation says that the force is directly proportional to the mass, so if we double the mass of one object to 2 kg, the force between the objects will double. If we double both masses so that we have two 2-kg objects separated by 1 meter, the force will be $2 \times 2 = 4$ times what it was originally (the force is directly proportional to the mass of *each* object). If we go back to two 1-kg masses, but double their separation to 2 meters, the force will be only one-quarter its original value. This is because the force is inversely proportional to the square of the distance: If we double the distance, the force is multiplied by a factor of

$$\frac{1}{2^2} = \frac{1}{4}$$

Newton's law of universal gravitation can be stated more succinctly as an equation. If two objects have masses m_1 and m_2 and are separated by a distance r, then the gravitational force F between these two objects is given by the following equation:

Newton's law of universal gravitation

$$F = G\left(\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}\right)$$

F = gravitational force between two objects

m_1 = mass of first object

m_2 = mass of second object

r = distance between objects

G = universal constant of gravitation

If the masses are measured in kilograms and the distance between them in meters, then the force is measured in newtons. In this formula, G is a number called the **universal constant of gravitation.** Laboratory experiments have yielded a value for G of

$$G = 6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ newton} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2$$

We can use Newton's law of universal gravitation to calculate the force with which any two objects attract each other. For example, to compute the gravitational force that the Sun exerts on the Earth, we substitute values for the Earth's mass ($m_1 = 5.98 \times 10^{24}$ kg), the Sun's mass ($m_2 = 1.99 \times 10^{30}$ kg), the distance between them ($r = 1$ AU $= 1.5 \times 10^{11}$ m), and the value of G into Newton's equation. We get

$$F_{\text{Sun-Earth}} = 6.67 \times 10^{-11}\left[\frac{(5.98 \times 10^{24}) \times (1.99 \times 10^{30})}{(1.50 \times 10^{11})^2}\right]$$
$$= 3.53 \times 10^{22} \text{ newtons}$$

If we calculate the force that the Earth exerts on the Sun, we get exactly the same result. (Mathematically, we just let m_1 be the Sun's mass and m_2 be the Earth's mass instead of the other way around. The product of the two numbers is the same, so the force is the same.) This is in accordance with Newton's third law: Any two objects exert *equal* gravitational forces on each other.

Your weight is just the gravitational force that the Earth exerts on you, so we can calculate it using Newton's law of universal gravitation. The Earth's mass is $m_1 = 5.98 \times 10^{24}$ kg, and the distance r to use is the distance between the *centers* of the Earth and you. This is just the radius of the Earth, which is $r = 6378$ km $= 6.378 \times 10^6$ m. If your mass is $m_2 = 50$ kg, your weight is

$$F_{\text{Earth-you}} = 6.67 \times 10^{-11}\left[\frac{(5.98 \times 10^{24}) \times (50)}{(6.378 \times 10^6)^2}\right]$$
$$= 490 \text{ newtons}$$

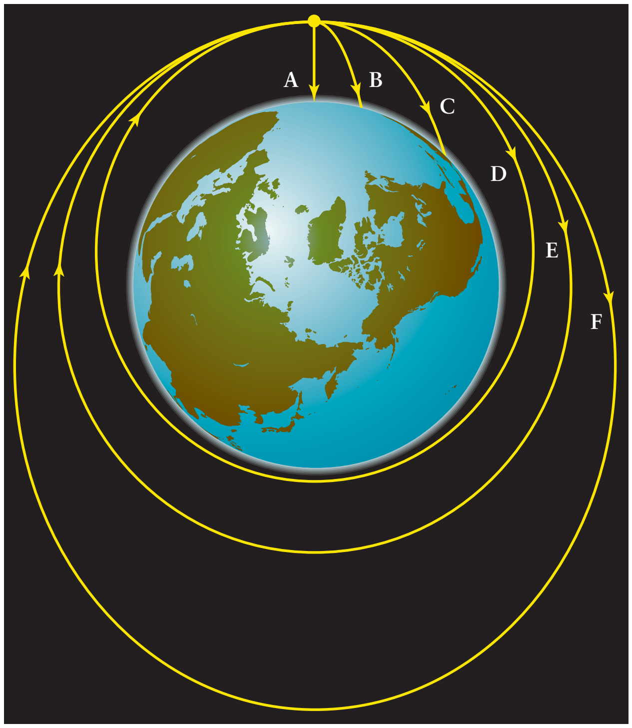
This is the same as the weight of a 50-kg person that we calculated in Section 4-6. This example shows that your weight would have a different value on a planet with a different mass m_1 and a different radius r.

Gravitational Force and Orbits

Because there is a gravitational force between any two objects, Newton concluded that gravity is also the force that keeps the Moon in orbit around the Earth. It is also the force that keeps artificial satellites in orbit. But if the force of gravity attracts two objects to each other, why don't satellites immediately fall to Earth? Why doesn't the Moon fall into the Earth? And, for that matter, why don't the planets fall into the Sun?

To see the answer, imagine (as Newton did) dropping a ball from a great height above the Earth's surface, as in Figure 4-20. After you drop the ball, it, of course, falls straight down (path A in Figure 4-20). But if you *throw* the ball horizontally, it travels some distance across the Earth's surface before hitting the ground (path B). If you throw the ball harder, it travels a greater distance (path C). If you could throw at just the right speed, the curvature of the ball's path will exactly match the curvature of the Earth's surface (path E). Although the Earth's gravity is making the ball fall, the Earth's surface is falling away under the ball at the same rate. Hence, the ball does not get any closer to the surface, and the ball is in circular orbit. So the ball in path E is in fact falling, but it is falling *around* the Earth rather than *toward* the Earth.

A spacecraft is launched into orbit in just this way—by throwing it fast enough. The thrust of a rocket is used to give the spacecraft the necessary orbital speed. Once the spacecraft is in orbit, the rocket turns off and the spacecraft falls continually around the Earth.



WEB LINK 4.8 ANIMATION 4.7

Figure 4-20

An Explanation of Orbits If a ball is dropped from a great height above the Earth's surface, it falls straight down (A). If the ball is thrown with some horizontal speed, it follows a curved path before hitting the ground (B, C). If thrown with just the right speed (E), the ball goes into circular orbit; the ball's path curves but it never gets any closer to the Earth's surface. If the ball is thrown with a speed that is slightly less (D) or slightly more (F) than the speed for a circular orbit, the ball's orbit is an ellipse.

CAUTION! An astronaut on board an orbiting spacecraft (like the one shown in the photograph that opens this chapter) feels "weightless." However, this is *not* because she is "beyond the pull of gravity." The astronaut is herself an independent satellite of the Earth, and the Earth's gravitational pull is what holds her in orbit. She feels "weightless" because she and her spacecraft are falling *together* around the Earth, so there is nothing pushing her against any of the spacecraft walls. You feel the same "weightless" sensation whenever you are falling, such as when you jump off a diving board or ride the free-fall ride at an amusement park.

If the ball in Figure 4-20 is thrown with a slightly slower speed than that required for a circular orbit, its orbit will be an ellipse (path D). An elliptical orbit also results if instead the ball is thrown a bit too fast (path F). In this way, spacecraft can be placed into any desired orbit around the Earth by adjusting the thrust of the rockets.

Just as the ball in Figure 4-20 will not fall to Earth if given enough speed, the Moon does not fall to Earth and the planets do not fall into the Sun. The planets acquired their initial speeds around the Sun when the solar system first formed 4.56 billion years ago. Figure 4-20 shows that a circular orbit is a very special case, so it is no surprise that the orbits of the planets are not precisely circular.

CAUTION! Orbiting satellites do sometimes fall out of orbit and crash back to Earth. When this happens, however, the real culprit is not gravity but air resistance. A satellite in a relatively low orbit is actually flying through the tenuous outer wisps of the Earth's atmosphere. The resistance of the atmosphere slows the satellite and changes a circular orbit like E in Figure 4-20 to an elliptical one like D. As the satellite sinks to lower altitude, it encounters more air resistance and sinks even lower. Eventually, it either strikes the Earth or burns up in flight due to air friction. By contrast, the Moon and planets orbit in the near-vacuum of interplanetary space. Hence, they are unaffected by this kind of air resistance, and their orbits are much more long-lasting.

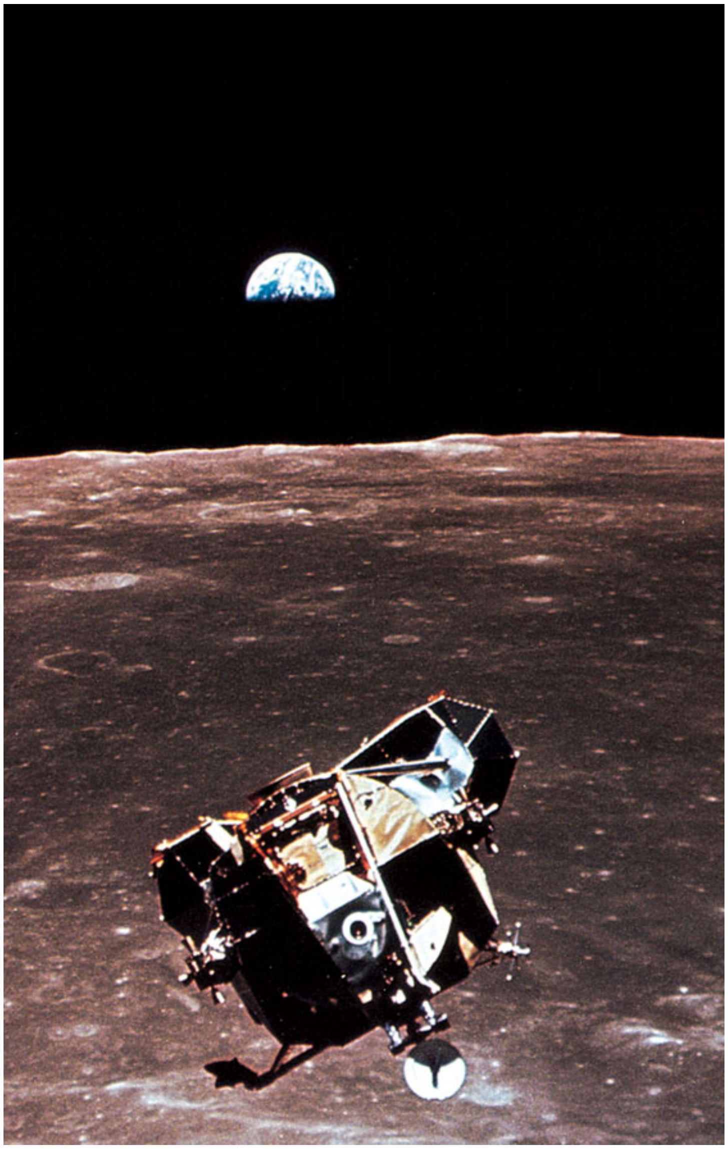
Gravitation and Kepler's Laws

Using his three laws of motion and his law of gravity, Newton found that he could derive Kepler's three laws mathematically. Kepler's first law, concerning the elliptical shape of planetary orbits, proved to be a direct consequence of the $1/r^2$ factor in the law of universal gravitation. (Had the nature of gravity in our universe been different, so that this factor was given by a different function such as $1/r$ or $1/r^3$, elliptical orbits would not have been possible.) The law of equal areas, or Kepler's second law, turns out to be a consequence of the Sun's gravitational force on a planet being directed straight toward the Sun.

Newton also demonstrated that Kepler's third law follows logically from his law of gravity. Specifically, he proved that if two objects with masses m_1 and m_2 orbit each other, the period P of their orbit and the semimajor axis a of their orbit (that is, the average distance between the two objects) are related by an equation that we call **Newton's form of Kepler's third law:**

$$P^2 = \left[\frac{4\pi^2}{G(m_1 + m_2)}\right]a^3$$

Newton's form of Kepler's third law is valid whenever two objects orbit each other because of their mutual gravitational attraction (Figure 4-21). It is invaluable in the study of binary star systems, in which two stars orbit each other. If the orbital period



WEB LINK 4.9 **Figure 4-21** R I V U X G

In Orbit Around the Moon This photograph taken from the spacecraft *Columbia* shows the lunar lander *Eagle* after returning from the first human landing on the Moon in July 1969. Newton's form of Kepler's third law describes the orbit of a spacecraft around the Moon, as well as the orbit of the Moon around the Earth (visible in the distance). (Michael Collins, *Apollo 11*, NASA)

P and semimajor axis a of the two stars in a binary system are known, astronomers can use this formula to calculate the sum $m_1 + m_2$ of the masses of the two stars. Within our own solar system, Newton's form of Kepler's third law makes it possible to learn about the masses of planets. By measuring the period and semimajor axis for a satellite, astronomers can determine the sum of the masses of the planet and the satellite. (The satellite can be a moon of the planet or a spacecraft that we place in orbit around the planet. Newton's laws apply in either case.) Box 4-4 gives an example of using Newton's form of Kepler's third law.

Newton also discovered new features of orbits around the Sun. For example, his equations soon led him to conclude that the orbit of an object around the Sun need not be an ellipse. It could be any one of a family of curves called conic sections.

A **conic section** is any curve that you get by cutting a cone with a plane, as shown in Figure 4-22. You can get circles and ellipses by slicing all the way through the cone. You can also get two types of open curves called **parabolas** and **hyperbolas.** If you were to throw the ball in Figure 4-20 with a fast enough speed, it would follow a parabolic or hyperbolic orbit and would fly off into space, never to return. Comets hurtling toward the Sun from the depths of space sometimes follow hyperbolic orbits.

BOX 4-4 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Newton's Form of Kepler's Third Law

Kepler's original statement of his third law, $P^2 = a^3$, is valid only for objects that orbit the Sun. (Box 4-2 shows how to use this equation.) But Newton's form of Kepler's third law is much more general: It can be used in *any* situation where two objects of masses m_1 and m_2 orbit each other. For example, Newton's form is the equation to use for a moon orbiting a planet or a satellite orbiting the Earth. This equation is

Newton's form of Kepler's third law

$$P^2 = \left[\frac{4\pi^2}{G(m_1 + m_2)}\right]a^3$$

P = sidereal period of orbit, in seconds

a = semimajor axis of orbit, in meters

m_1 = mass of first object, in kilograms

m_2 = mass of second object, in kilograms

G = universal constant of gravitation = 6.67×10^{-11}

Notice that P, a, m_1, and m_2 *must* be expressed in these particular units. If you fail to use the correct units, your answer will be incorrect.

EXAMPLE: Io (pronounced "eye-oh") is one of the four large moons of Jupiter discovered by Galileo and shown in Figure 4-16. It orbits at a distance of 421,600 km from the center of Jupiter and has an orbital period of 1.77 days. Determine the combined mass of Jupiter and Io.

Situation: We are given Io's orbital period P and semimajor axis a (the distance from Io to the center of its circular orbit, which is at the center of Jupiter). Our goal is to find the sum of the masses of Jupiter (m_1) and Io (m_2).

Tools: Because this is not an orbit around the Sun, we must use Newton's form of Kepler's third law to relate P and a. This relationship also involves m_1 and m_2, whose sum ($m_1 + m_2$) we are asked to find.

Answer: To solve for $m_1 + m_2$, we rewrite the equation in the form

$$m_1 + m_2 = \frac{4\pi^2 a^3}{GP^2}$$

To use this equation, we have to convert the distance a from kilometers to meters and convert the period P from days to seconds. There are 1000 meters in 1 kilometer and 86,400 seconds in 1 day, so

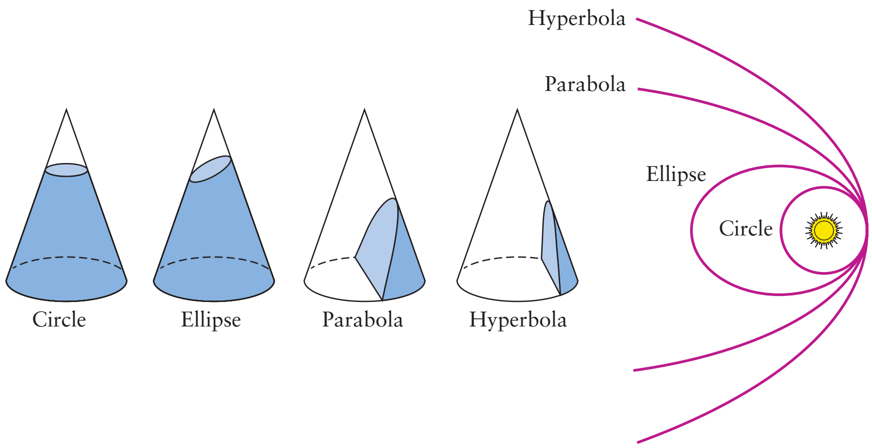
$$a = (421{,}600 \text{ km}) \times \frac{1000 \text{ m}}{1 \text{ km}} = 4.216 \times 10^8 \text{ m}$$

$$P = (1.77 \text{ days}) \times \frac{86{,}400 \text{ s}}{1 \text{ day}} = 1.529 \times 10^5 \text{ s}$$

We can now put these values and the value of G into the above equation:

$$m_1 + m_2 = \frac{4\pi^2(4.216 \times 10^8)^3}{(6.67 \times 10^{-11})(1.529 \times 10^5)^2} = 1.90 \times 10^{27} \text{ kg}$$

Review: Io is very much smaller than Jupiter, so its mass is only a small fraction of the mass of Jupiter. Thus, $m_1 + m_2$ is very nearly the mass of Jupiter alone. We conclude that Jupiter has a mass of 1.90×10^{27} kg, or about 300 times the mass of Earth. This technique can be used to determine the mass of any object that has a second, much smaller object orbiting it. Astronomers use this technique to find the masses of stars, black holes, and entire galaxies of stars.



INTERACTIVE EXERCISE 4.2

Figure 4-22

Conic Sections A conic section is any one of a family of curves obtained by slicing a cone with a plane. The orbit of one object about another can be any one of these curves: a circle, an ellipse, a parabola, or a hyperbola.

The Triumph of Newtonian Mechanics

Newton's ideas turned out to be applicable to an incredibly wide range of situations. Using his laws of motion, Newton himself proved that the Earth's axis of rotation must precess because of the gravitational pull of the Moon and the Sun on the Earth's equatorial bulge (see Figure 2-19). In fact, all the details of the orbits of the planets and their satellites could be explained mathematically with a body of knowledge built on Newton's work that is today called **Newtonian mechanics.**

Not only could Newtonian mechanics explain a variety of known phenomena in detail, but it could also predict new phenomena. For example, one of Newton's friends, Edmund Halley, was intrigued by three similar historical records of a comet that had been sighted at intervals of 76 years. Assuming these records to be accounts of the same comet, Halley used Newton's methods to work out the details of the comet's orbit and predicted its return in 1758. It was first sighted on Christmas night of 1757, a fitting memorial to Newton's birthday. To this day the comet bears Halley's name (**Figure 4-23**).

Another dramatic success of Newton's ideas was their role in the discovery of the eighth planet from the Sun. The seventh planet, Uranus, was discovered accidentally by William Herschel in 1781 during a telescopic survey of the sky. Fifty years later, however, it was clear that Uranus was not following its predicted orbit. John Couch Adams in England and Urbain Le Verrier in France independently calculated that the gravitational pull of a yet unknown, more distant planet could explain the deviations of Uranus from its orbit. Le Verrier predicted that the planet would be found at a certain location in the constellation of Aquarius. A brief telescopic search on September 23, 1846, revealed the planet Neptune within 1° of the calculated position. Before it was sighted with a telescope, Neptune was actually predicted with pencil and paper.

Because it has been so successful in explaining and predicting many important phenomena, Newtonian mechanics has become the cornerstone of modern physical science. Even today, as we send astronauts into Earth orbit and spacecraft to the outer planets, Newton's equations are used to calculate the orbits and trajectories of these spacecraft. The *Cosmic Connections* figure on the next page summarizes some of the ways that gravity plays an important role on scales from apples to galaxies.

In the twentieth century, scientists found that Newton's laws do not apply in all situations. A new theory called *quantum mechanics* had to be developed to explain the behavior of matter on the very smallest of scales, such as within the atom and within the atomic nucleus. Albert Einstein developed the *theory of relativity* to explain what happens at very high speeds approaching the speed of light and in places where gravitational forces are very strong. For many purposes in astronomy, however, Newton's laws are as useful today as when Newton formulated them more than three centuries ago.

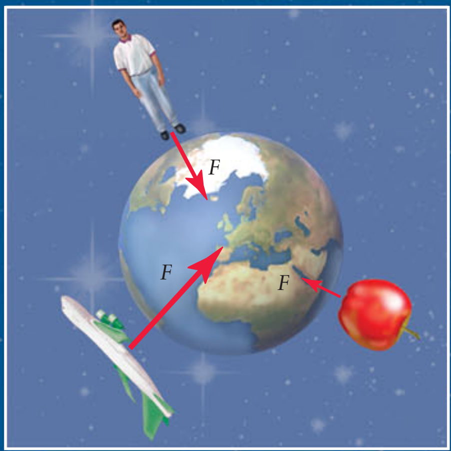
WEB LINK 4.10

Figure 4-23

Comet Halley This most famous of all comets orbits the Sun with an average period of about 76 years. During the twentieth century, the comet passed near the Sun in 1910 and again in 1986 (when this photograph was taken). It will next be prominent in the sky in 2061. (Harvard College Observatory/Photo Researchers, Inc.)

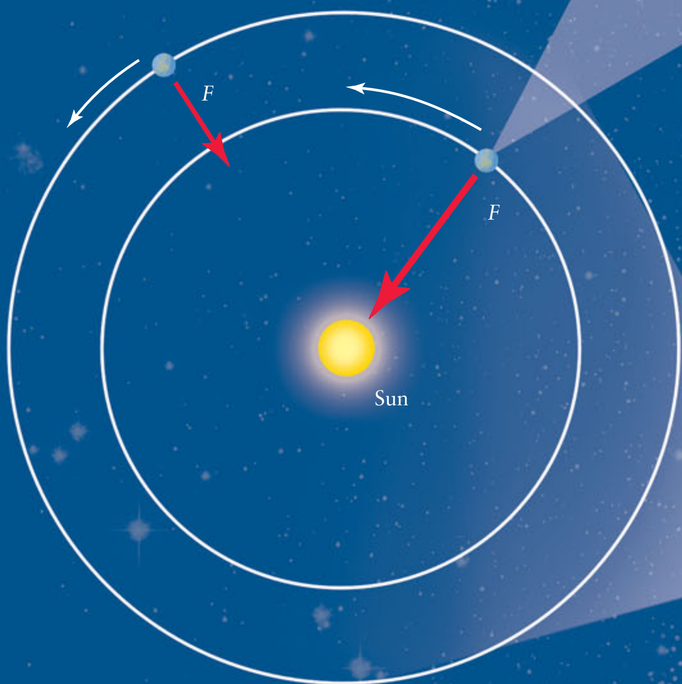
COSMIC CONNECTIONS Universal Gravitation

Gravity is one of the fundamental forces of nature. We can see its effects here on Earth as well as in the farthest regions of the observable universe.[2]

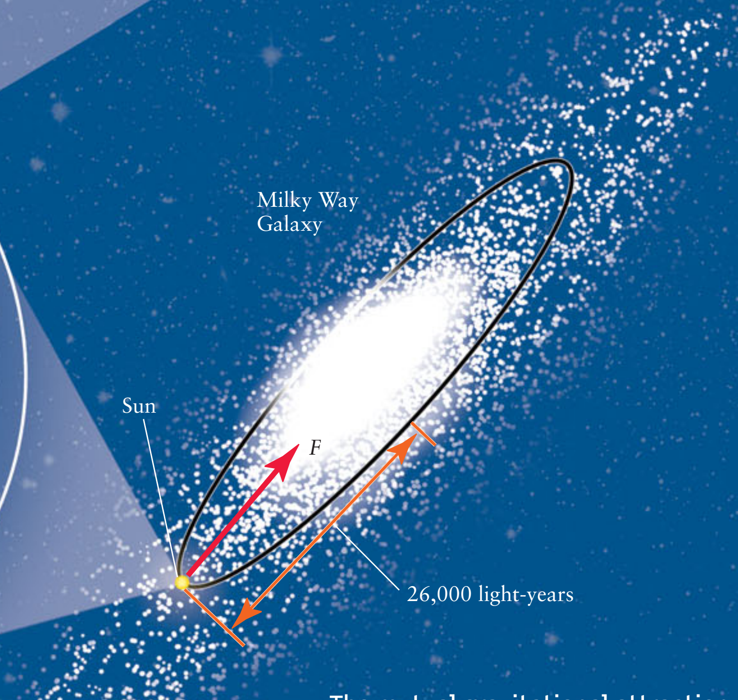


The weight of an ordinary object is just the gravitational force exerted on that object by the Earth.

The Earth is held together by the mutual gravitational attraction of its parts.



Gravitational forces exerted by the Sun keep the planets in their orbits. The farther a planet is from the Sun, the weaker the gravitational force that acts on the planet.



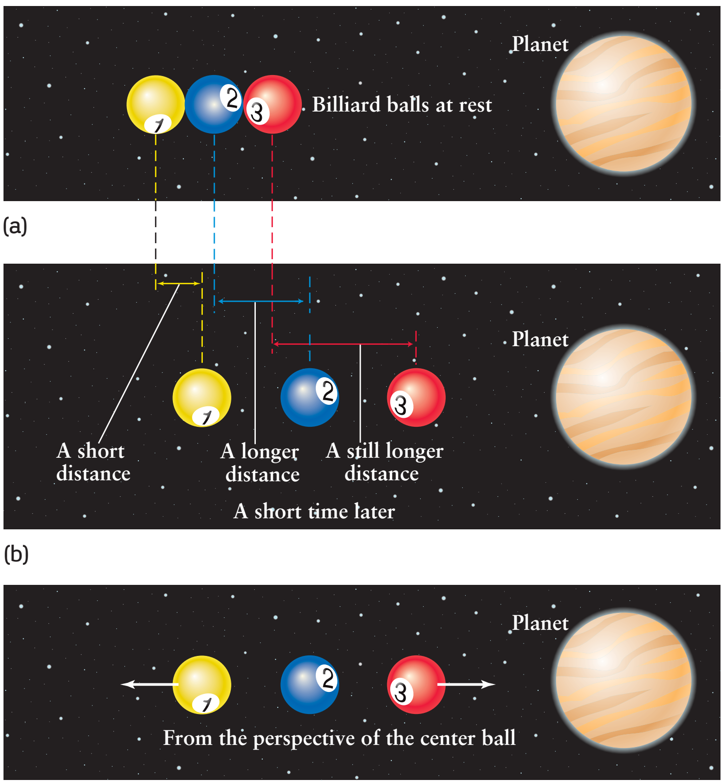
The mutual gravitational attraction of all the matter in the Milky Way Galaxy holds it together. The gravitational force of the Galaxy on our Sun and solar system holds us in an immense orbit around the galactic center.

4-8 Gravitational forces between the Earth and Moon produce tides

We have seen how Newtonian mechanics explains why the Moon stays in orbit around the Earth. It also explains why there are ocean tides, as well as why the Moon always keeps the same face toward the Earth. Both of these are the result of *tidal forces*—a consequence of gravity that deforms planets and reshapes galaxies.

Tidal forces reveal how gravitation can pull objects apart rather than drawing them together

Tidal forces are differences in the gravitational pull at different points in an object. As an illustration, imagine that three billiard balls are lined up in space at some distance from a planet, as in Figure 4-24*a*. According to Newton's law of universal gravitation, the force of attraction between two objects is greater the closer the two objects are to each other. Thus, the planet exerts more force on the 3-ball (in red) than on the 2-ball (in blue), and exerts more force on the 2-ball than on the 1-ball (in yellow). Now, imagine that the three balls are released and allowed to fall toward the planet. Figure 4-24*b* shows the situation a short time later. Because of the differences in gravitational pull, a short time later the 3-ball will have moved farther than the 2-ball, which will in turn have moved farther than the 1-ball. But now imagine that same motion from the perspective of the 2-ball. From this perspective, it appears as though the 3-ball is pulled toward the planet while the 1-ball is pushed away (Figure 4-24*c*). These apparent pushes and pulls are called tidal forces.



ANIMATION 4.8

Figure 4-24

The Origin of Tidal Forces **(a)** Imagine three identical billiard balls placed some distance from a planet and released. **(b)** The closer a ball is to the planet, the more gravitational force the planet exerts on it. Thus, a short time after the balls are released, the blue 2-ball has moved farther toward the planet than the yellow 1-ball, and the red 3-ball has moved farther still. **(c)** From the perspective of the 2-ball in the center, it appears that forces have pushed the 1-ball away from the planet and pulled the 3-ball toward the planet. These forces are called tidal forces.

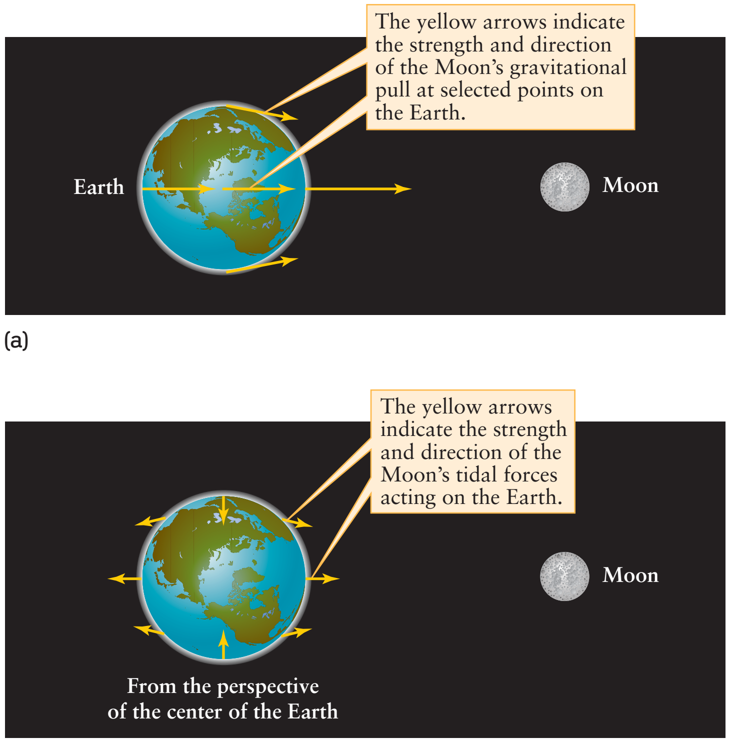


Figure 4-25

Tidal Forces on the Earth **(a)** The Moon exerts different gravitational pulls at different locations on the Earth. **(b)** At any location, the tidal force equals the Moon's gravitational pull at that location minus the gravitational pull of the Moon at the center of the Earth. These tidal forces tend to deform the Earth into a nonspherical shape.

Tidal Forces on the Earth

The Moon has a similar effect on the Earth as the planet in Figure 4-24 has on the three billiard balls. The arrows in Figure 4-25*a* indicate the strength and direction of the gravitational force of the Moon at several locations on the Earth. The side of the Earth closest to the Moon feels a greater gravitational pull than the Earth's center does, and the side of the Earth that faces away from the Moon feels less gravitational pull than does the Earth's center. This means that just as for the billiard balls in Figure 4-24, there are tidal forces acting on the Earth (Figure 4-25*b*). These tidal forces exerted by the Moon try to elongate the Earth along a line connecting the centers of the Earth and the Moon and

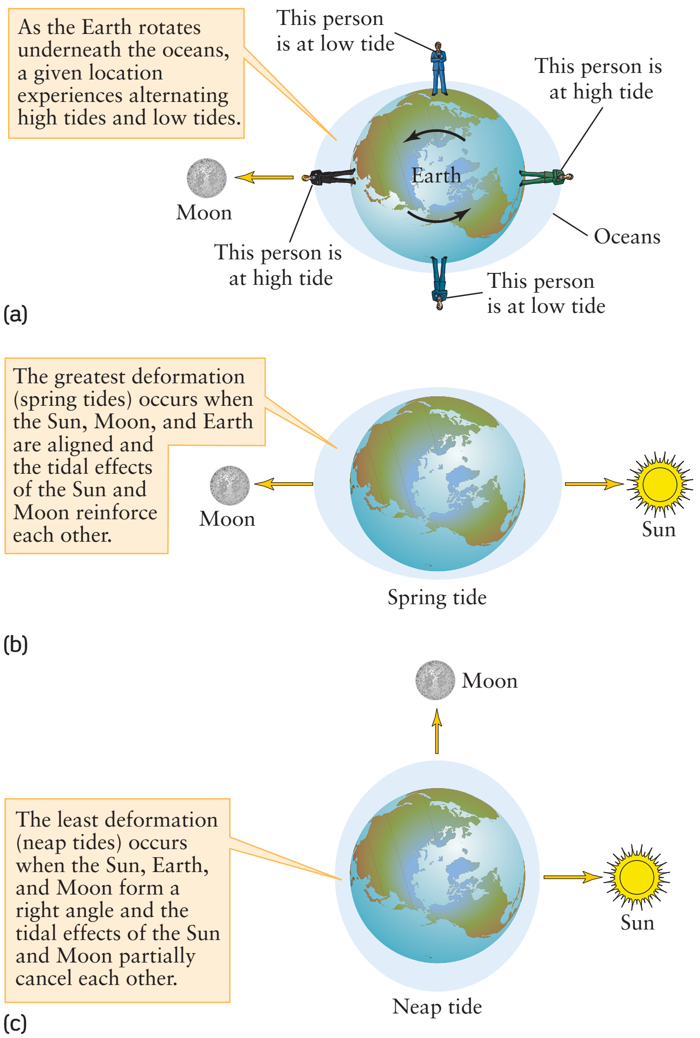


Figure 4-26

High and Low Tides **(a)** The gravitational forces of the Moon and Sun deform the Earth's oceans, giving rise to low and high tides. **(b), (c)** The strength of the tides depends on the relative positions of the Sun, Moon, and Earth.

try to squeeze the Earth inward in the direction perpendicular to that line.

Because the body of the Earth is largely rigid, it cannot deform very much in response to the tidal forces of the Moon. But the water in the oceans can and does deform into a football shape, as Figure 4-26*a* shows. As the Earth rotates, a point on its surface goes from where the water is shallow to where the water is deep and back again. This is the origin of low and high ocean tides. (In this simplified description we have assumed that the Earth is completely covered with water. The full story of the tides is much more complex, because the shapes of the continents and the effects of winds must also be taken into account.)

The Sun also exerts tidal forces on the Earth's oceans. (The tidal effects of the Sun are about half as great as those of the Moon.) When the Sun, Moon, and the Earth are aligned, which happens at either new moon or full moon, the tidal effects of the Sun and Moon reinforce each other and the tidal distortion of the oceans is greatest. This produces large shifts in water level called **spring tides** (Figure 4-26*b*). At first quarter and last quarter, when the Sun and Moon form a right angle with the Earth, the tidal effects of the Sun and Moon partially cancel each other. Hence, the tidal distortion of the oceans is the least pronounced, producing smaller tidal shifts called **neap tides** (Figure 4-26*c*).

CAUTION! Note that spring tides have nothing to do with the season of the year called spring. Instead, the name refers to the way that the ocean level "springs up" to a greater than normal height. Spring tides occur whenever there is a new moon or full moon, no matter what the season of the year.

Tidal Forces on the Moon and Beyond

Just as the Moon exerts tidal forces on the Earth, the Earth exerts tidal forces on the Moon. Soon after the Moon formed some 4.56 billion years ago, it was molten throughout its volume. The Earth's tidal forces deformed the molten Moon into a slightly elongated shape, with the long axis of the Moon pointed toward the Earth. The Moon retained this shape and orientation when it cooled and solidified. To keep its long axis pointed toward the Earth, the Moon spins once on its axis as it makes one orbit around the Earth—that is, it is in synchronous rotation (Section 3-2). Hence, the same side of the Moon always faces the Earth,

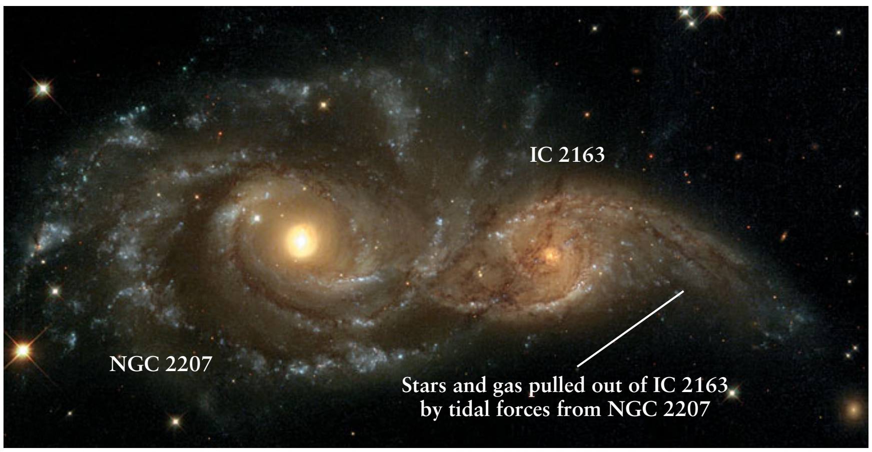


Figure 4-27 R I V U X G

Tidal Forces on a Galaxy For millions of years the galaxies NGC 2207 and IC 2163 have been moving ponderously past each other. The larger galaxy's tremendous tidal forces have drawn a streamer of material a hundred thousand light-years long out of IC 2163. If you lived on a planet orbiting a star within this streamer, you would have a magnificent view of both galaxies. NGC 2207 and IC 2163 are respectively 143,000 light-years and 101,000 light-years in diameter. Both galaxies are 114 million light-years away in the constellation Canis Major. (NASA and the Hubble Heritage Team, AURA/STScI) and this is the side that we see. For the same reason, most of the satellites in the solar system are in synchronous rotation, and thus always keep the same side facing their planet.

Tidal forces are also important on scales much larger than the solar system. Figure 4-27 shows two spiral galaxies, like the one in Figure 1-7, undergoing a near-collision. During the millions of years that this close encounter has been taking place, the tidal forces of the larger galaxy have pulled an immense streamer of stars and interstellar gas out of the smaller galaxy.

Many galaxies, including our own Milky Way Galaxy, show signs of having been disturbed at some time by tidal interactions with other galaxies. By their effect on the interstellar gas from which stars are formed, tidal interactions can actually trigger the birth of new stars. Our own Sun and solar system may have been formed as a result of tidal interactions of this kind. Hence, we may owe our very existence to tidal forces. In this and many other ways, the laws of motion and of universal gravitation shape our universe and our destinies.

Key Words

acceleration, p. 81
aphelion, p. 74
conic section, p. 86
conjunction, p. 70
deferent, p. 67
direct motion, p. 67
eccentricity, p. 74
ellipse, p. 74
elongation, p. 70
epicycle, p. 67
focus (of an ellipse; *plural* foci), p. 74
force, p. 80
geocentric model, p. 66
gravitational force, p. 82
gravity, p. 82
greatest eastern elongation, p. 70
greatest western elongation, p. 70
heliocentric model, p. 68
hyperbola, p. 86
inferior conjunction, p. 70
inferior planet, p. 69
Kepler's first law, p. 74
Kepler's second law, p. 75
Kepler's third law, p. 75
law of equal areas, p. 75
law of universal gravitation, p. 83
major axis (of an ellipse), p. 74
mass, p. 82
neap tides, p. 90
Newtonian mechanics, p. 87
Newton's first law of motion, p. 80
Newton's form of Kepler's third law, p. 85
Newton's second law of motion, p. 82
Newton's third law of motion, p. 82
Occam's razor, p. 67
opposition, p. 70
parabola, p. 86
parallax, p. 72
perihelion, p. 74
period (of a planet), p. 70
Ptolemaic system, p. 67
retrograde motion, p. 67
semimajor axis (of an ellipse), p. 74
sidereal period, p. 70
speed, p. 80
spring tides, p. 90
superior conjunction, p. 70
superior planet, p. 70
synodic period, p. 70
tidal forces, p. 89
universal constant of gravitation, p. 84
velocity, p. 80
weight, p. 82

Key Ideas

Apparent Motions of the Planets: Like the Sun and Moon, the planets move on the celestial sphere with respect to the background of stars. Most of the time a planet moves eastward in direct motion, in the same direction as the Sun and the Moon, but from time to time it moves westward in retrograde motion.

The Ancient Geocentric Model: Ancient astronomers believed the Earth to be at the center of the universe. They invented a complex system of epicycles and deferents to explain the direct and retrograde motions of the planets on the celestial sphere.

Copernicus's Heliocentric Model: Copernicus's heliocentric (Sun-centered) theory simplified the general explanation of planetary motions.

• In a heliocentric system, the Earth is one of the planets orbiting the Sun.

• A planet undergoes retrograde motion as seen from Earth when the Earth and the planet pass each other.

• The sidereal period of a planet, its true orbital period, is measured with respect to the stars. Its synodic period is measured with respect to the Earth and the Sun (for example, from one opposition to the next).

Kepler's Improved Heliocentric Model and Elliptical Orbits: Copernicus thought that the orbits of the planets were combinations of circles. Using data collected by Tycho Brahe, Kepler deduced three laws of planetary motion: (1) the orbits are in fact ellipses; (2) a planet's speed varies as it moves around its elliptical orbit; and (3) the orbital period of a planet is related to the size of its orbit.

Evidence for the Heliocentric Model: The invention of the telescope led Galileo to new discoveries that supported a heliocentric model. These included his observations of the phases of Venus and of the motions of four moons around Jupiter.

Newton's Laws of Motion: Isaac Newton developed three principles, called the laws of motion, that apply to the motions of objects on Earth as well as in space. These are (1) the tendency of an object to maintain a constant velocity, (2) the relationship between the net outside force on an object and the object's acceleration, and (3) the principle of action and reaction. These laws and Newton's law of universal gravitation can be used to deduce Kepler's laws. They lead to extremely accurate descriptions of planetary motions.

• The mass of an object is a measure of the amount of matter in the object. Its weight is a measure of the force with which the gravity of some other object pulls on it.

• In general, the path of one object about another, such as that of a planet or comet about the Sun, is one of the curves called conic sections: circle, ellipse, parabola, or hyperbola.

Tidal Forces: Tidal forces are caused by differences in the gravitational pull that one object exerts on different parts of a second object.

• The tidal forces of the Moon and Sun produce tides in the Earth's oceans.

• The tidal forces of the Earth have locked the Moon into synchronous rotation.

Questions

Review Questions

1. How did the ancient Greeks explain why the Sun and Moon slowly change their positions relative to the background stars?
2. In what direction does a planet move relative to the stars when it is in direct motion? When it is in retrograde motion? How do these compare with the direction in which we see the Sun move relative to the stars?
3. (**a**) In what direction does a planet move relative to the horizon over the course of one night? (**b**) The answer to (a) is the same whether the planet is in direct motion or retrograde motion. What does this tell you about the speed at which planets move on the celestial sphere?
4. What is an epicycle? How is it important in Ptolemy's explanation of the retrograde motions of the planets?
5. What is the significance of Occam's razor as a tool for analyzing theories?
6. How did the models of Aristarchus and Copernicus explain the retrograde motion of the planets?
7. How did Copernicus determine that the orbits of Mercury and Venus must be smaller than the Earth's orbit? How did he determine that the orbits of Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn must be larger than the Earth's orbit?
8. At what configuration (for example, superior conjunction, greatest eastern elongation, and so on) would it be best to observe Mercury or Venus with an Earth-based telescope? At what configuration would it be best to observe Mars, Jupiter, or Saturn? Explain your answers.
9. Is it ever possible to see Mercury at midnight? Explain your answer.
10. Which planets can never be seen at opposition? Which planets can never be seen at inferior conjunction? Explain your answers.
11. What is the difference between the synodic period and the sidereal period of a planet?
12. What is parallax? What did Tycho Brahe conclude from his attempt to measure the parallax of a supernova and a comet?
13. What observations did Tycho Brahe make in an attempt to test the heliocentric model? What were his results? Explain why modern astronomers get different results.
14. What are the foci of an ellipse? If the Sun is at one focus of a planet's orbit, what is at the other focus?
15. What are Kepler's three laws? Why are they important?
16. At what point in a planet's elliptical orbit does it move fastest? At what point does it move slowest? At what point does it sweep out an area at the fastest rate?
17. A line joining the Sun and an asteroid is found to sweep out an area of 6.3 AU^2 during 2010. How much area is swept out during 2011? Over a period of five years?
18. The orbit of a spacecraft about the Sun has a perihelion distance of 0.1 AU and an aphelion distance of 0.4 AU. What is the semimajor axis of the spacecraft's orbit? What is its orbital period?
19. A comet with a period of 125 years moves in a highly elongated orbit about the Sun. At perihelion, the comet comes very close to the Sun's surface. What is the comet's average distance from the Sun? What is the farthest it can get from the Sun?
20. What observations did Galileo make that reinforced the heliocentric model? Why did these observations contradict the older model of Ptolemy? Why could these observations not have been made before Galileo's time?
21. Why does Venus have its largest angular diameter when it is new and its smallest angular diameter when it is full?
22. What are Newton's three laws? Give an everyday example of each law.
23. How much force do you have to exert on a 3-kg brick to give it an acceleration of 2 m/s^2? If you double this force, what is the brick's acceleration? Explain.
24. What is the difference between weight and mass?
25. What is your weight in pounds and in newtons? What is your mass in kilograms?
26. Suppose that the Earth were moved to a distance of 3.0 AU from the Sun. How much stronger or weaker would the Sun's gravitational pull be on the Earth? Explain.
27. How far would you have to go from Earth to be completely beyond the pull of its gravity? Explain.
28. What are conic sections? In what way are they related to the orbits of planets in the solar system?
29. Why was the discovery of Neptune an important confirmation of Newton's law of universal gravitation?
30. What is a tidal force? How do tidal forces produce tides in the Earth's oceans?
31. What is the difference between spring tides and neap tides?

Advanced Questions

Questions preceded by an asterisk (*) involve topics discussed in the Boxes.

Problem-solving tips and tools

Box 4-1 explains sidereal and synodic periods in detail. The semimajor axis of an ellipse is half the length of the long, or major, axis of the ellipse. For data about the planets and their satellites, see Appendices 1, 2, and 3 at the back of this book. If you want to calculate the gravitational force that you feel on the surface of a planet, the distance r to use is the planet's radius (the distance between you and the center of the planet). Boxes 4-2 and 4-4 show how to use Kepler's third law in its original form and in Newton's form.

32. Figure 4-2 shows the retrograde motion of Mars as seen from Earth. Sketch a similar figure that shows how Earth would appear to move against the background of stars during this same time period as seen by an observer on Mars.

*33. The synodic period of Mercury (an inferior planet) is 115.88 days. Calculate its sidereal period in days.

*34. Table 4-1 shows that the synodic period is *greater* than the sidereal period for Mercury, but the synodic period is *less* than the sidereal period for Jupiter. Draw diagrams like the one in Box 4-1 to explain why this is so.

*35. A general rule for superior planets is that the greater the average distance from the planet to the Sun, the more frequently that planet will be at opposition. Explain how this rule comes about.

36. In 2006, Mercury was at greatest western elongation on April 8, August 7, and November 25. It was at greatest eastern elongation on February 24, June 20, and October 17. Does Mercury take longer to go from eastern to western elongation, or vice versa? Explain why, using Figure 4-6.

37. Explain why the semimajor axis of a planet's orbit is equal to the average of the distance from the Sun to the planet at perihelion (the *perihelion distance*) and the distance from the Sun to the planet at aphelion (the *aphelion distance*).

38. A certain comet is 2 AU from the Sun at perihelion and 16 AU from the Sun at aphelion. (**a**) Find the semimajor axis of the comet's orbit. (**b**) Find the sidereal period of the orbit.

39. A comet orbits the Sun with a sidereal period of 64.0 years. (**a**) Find the semimajor axis of the orbit. (**b**) At aphelion, the comet is 31.5 AU from the Sun. How far is it from the Sun at perihelion?

40. One trajectory that can be used to send spacecraft from the Earth to Mars is an elliptical orbit that has the Sun at one focus, its perihelion at the Earth, and its aphelion at Mars. The spacecraft is launched from Earth and coasts along this ellipse until it reaches Mars, when a rocket is fired to either put the spacecraft into orbit around Mars or cause it to land on Mars. (**a**) Find the semimajor axis of the ellipse. (*Hint:* Draw a picture showing the Sun and the orbits of the Earth, Mars, and the spacecraft. Treat the orbits of the Earth and Mars as circles.) (**b**) Calculate how long (in days) such a one-way trip to Mars would take.

41. The mass of the Moon is 7.35×10^{22} kg, while that of the Earth is 5.98×10^{24} kg. The average distance from the center of the Moon to the center of the Earth is 384,400 km. What is the size of the gravitational force that the Earth exerts on the Moon? What is the size of the gravitational force that the Moon exerts on the Earth? How do your answers compare with the force between the Sun and the Earth calculated in the text?

42. The mass of Saturn is approximately 100 times that of Earth, and the semimajor axis of Saturn's orbit is approximately 10 AU. To this approximation, how does the gravitational force that the Sun exerts on Saturn compare to the gravitational force that the Sun exerts on the Earth? How do the accelerations of Saturn and the Earth compare?

43. Suppose that you traveled to a planet with 4 times the mass and 4 times the diameter of the Earth. Would you weigh more or less on that planet than on Earth? By what factor?

44. On Earth, a 50-kg astronaut weighs 490 newtons. What would she weigh if she landed on Jupiter's moon Callisto? What fraction is this of her weight on Earth? See Appendix 3 for relevant data about Callisto.

45. Imagine a planet like the Earth orbiting a star with 4 times the mass of the Sun. If the semimajor axis of the planet's orbit is 1 AU, what would be the planet's sidereal period? (*Hint:* Use Newton's form of Kepler's third law. Compared with the case of the Earth orbiting the Sun, by what factor has the quantity $m_1 + m_2$ changed? Has a changed? By what factor must P^2 change?)

46. A satellite is said to be in a "geosynchronous" orbit if it appears always to remain over the exact same spot on the rotating Earth. (**a**) What is the period of this orbit? (**b**) At what distance from the center of the Earth must such a satellite be placed into orbit? (*Hint:* Use Newton's form of Kepler's third law.) (**c**) Explain why the orbit must be in the plane of the Earth's equator.

47. Figure 4-21 shows the lunar module *Eagle* in orbit around the Moon after completing the first successful lunar landing in July 1969. (The photograph was taken from the command module *Columbia,* in which the astronauts returned to Earth.) The spacecraft orbited 111 km above the surface of the Moon. Calculate the period of the spacecraft's orbit. See Appendix 3 for relevant data about the Moon.

***48.** In Box 4-4 we analyze the orbit of Jupiter's moon Io. Look up information about the orbits of Jupiter's three other large moons (Europa, Ganymede, and Callisto) in Appendix 3. Demonstrate that these data are in agreement with Newton's form of Kepler's third law.

***49.** Suppose a newly discovered asteroid is in a circular orbit with synodic period 1.25 years. The asteroid lies between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter. (**a**) Find the sidereal period of the orbit. (**b**) Find the distance from the asteroid to the Sun.

50. The average distance from the Moon to the center of the Earth is 384,400 km, and the diameter of the Earth is 12,756 km. Calculate the gravitational force that the Moon exerts (**a**) on a 1-kg rock at the point on the Earth's surface closest to the Moon and (**b**) on a 1-kg rock at the point on the Earth's surface farthest from the Moon. (**c**) Find the difference between the two forces you calculated in parts (a) and (b). This difference is the tidal force pulling these two rocks away from each other, like the 1-ball and 3-ball in Figure 4-24. Explain why tidal forces cause only a very small deformation of the Earth.

Discussion Questions

51. Which planet would you expect to exhibit the greatest variation in apparent brightness as seen from Earth? Which planet would you expect to exhibit the greatest variation in angular diameter? Explain your answers.

52. Use two thumbtacks, a loop of string, and a pencil to draw several ellipses. Describe how the shape of an ellipse varies as the distance between the thumbtacks changes.

Web/eBook Questions

53. (**a**) Search the World Wide Web for information about Kepler. Before he realized that the planets move on elliptical paths, what other models of planetary motion did he consider? What was Kepler's idea of "the music of the spheres"? (**b**) Search the World Wide Web for information about Galileo. What were his contributions to physics? Which of Galileo's new ideas were later used by Newton to construct his laws of motion? (**c**) Search the World Wide Web for information about Newton. What were some of the contributions that he made to physics other than developing his laws of motion? What contributions did he make to mathematics?

54. **Monitoring the Retrograde Motion of Mars.** Watching Mars night after night reveals that it changes its position with respect to the background stars. To track its motion, access and view the animation "The Path of Mars in 2011–2012" in Chapter 4 of the *Universe* Web site or eBook. (**a**) Through which constellations does Mars move? (**b**) On approximately what date does Mars stop its direct (west-to-east) motion and begin its retrograde motion? (*Hint:* Use the "Stop" function on your animation controls.) (**c**) Over how many days does Mars move retrograde?

Activities

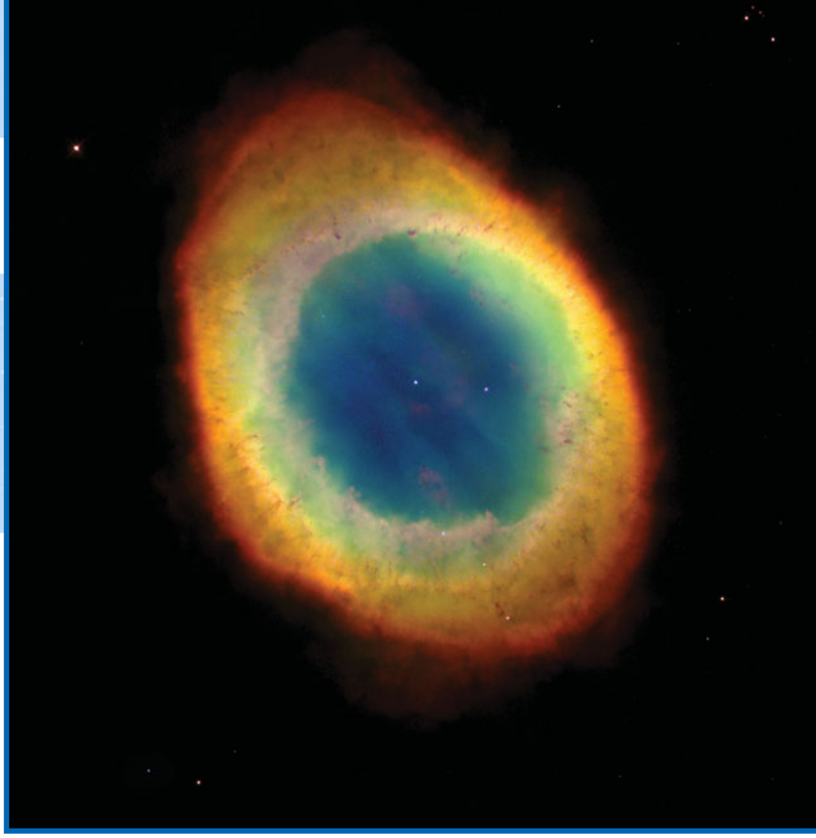
Observing Projects

55. It is quite probable that within a few weeks of your reading this chapter one of the planets will be near opposition or greatest eastern elongation, making it readily visible in the evening sky. Select a planet that is at or near such a configuration by searching the World Wide Web or by consulting a reference book, such as the current issue of the *Astronomical Almanac* or the pamphlet entitled *Astronomical Phenomena* (both published by the U.S. government). At that configuration, would you expect the planet to be moving rapidly or slowly from night to night against the background stars? Verify your expectations by observing the planet once a week for a month, recording your observations on a star chart.
56. If Jupiter happens to be visible in the evening sky, observe the planet with a small telescope on five consecutive clear nights. Record the positions of the four Galilean satellites by making nightly drawings, just as the Jesuit priests did in 1620 (see Figure 4-17). From your drawings, can you tell which moon orbits closest to Jupiter and which orbits farthest? Was there a night when you could see only three of the moons? What do you suppose happened to the fourth moon on that night?
57. If Venus happens to be visible in the evening sky, observe the planet with a small telescope once a week for a month. On each night, make a drawing of the crescent that you see. From your drawings, can you determine if the planet is nearer or farther from the Earth than the Sun is? Do your drawings show any changes in the shape of the crescent from one week to the next? If so, can you deduce if Venus is coming toward us or moving away from us?
58. Use the *Starry Night Enthusiast*™ program to observe the moons of Jupiter. Display the entire celestial sphere (select **Guides > Atlas** in the **Favourites** menu) and center on the planet Jupiter (double-click the entry for Jupiter in the **Find** pane). Then use the zoom controls at the right-hand end of the toolbar (at the top of the main window) to adjust your view to about **20′ × 14′** so that you can see the planet and its four Galilean satellites. (Click on the + button or press the + key on the keyboard to zoom in and click on the − button or press the − key on the keyboard to zoom out.) This is equivalent to increasing the magnification of a telescope while looking at Jupiter. (**a**) Click on the **Time Flow Rate** control (immediately to the right of the date and time display) and set the discrete time step to **2 hours.** Using the **Step Forward** button (just to the right of the **Forward** button), observe and draw the positions of the moons relative to Jupiter at 2-hour intervals. (**b**) From your drawings, can you tell which moon orbits closest to Jupiter and which orbits farthest away? Explain your reasoning. (**c**) Are there times when only three of the satellites are visible? What happens to the fourth moon at those times?
59. Use the *Starry Night Enthusiast*™ program to observe the changing appearance of Mercury. Display the entire celestial sphere (select **Guides > Atlas** in the **Favourites** menu) and center on Mercury (double-click the entry for Mercury in the **Find** pane); then use the zoom controls at the right-hand end of the toolbar (at the top of the main window) to adjust your view so that you can clearly see details on the planet's surface. (Click on the + button to zoom in and on the − button to zoom out.) (**a**) Click on the **Time Flow Rate** control (immediately to the right of the date and time display) and set the discrete time step to **1 day.** Using the **Step Forward** button, observe and record the changes in Mercury's phase and apparent size from one day to the next. Run time forward for some time to see these changes more graphically. (**b**) Explain why the phase and apparent size change in the way that you observe.
60. Use the *Starry Night Enthusiast*™ program to observe retrograde motion. Display the entire celestial sphere (select **Guides > Atlas** in the **Favourites** menu) and center on Mars (double-click the entry for Mars in the **Find** pane). Set the **Date** (in the time and date display in the toolbar) to **January 1, 2005.** Then click on the **Time Flow Rate** control (immediately to the right of the date and time display) and set the discrete time step to **1 day.** Press and hold down the − key on the keyboard to zoom out to the maximum field of view. Then click on the **Forward** button (a triangle that points to the right) and watch the motion of Mars for two years of simulated time. Since you have centered Mars in the view, the sky appears to move but the relative motion of Mars against this sky is obvious. (**a**) For most of the two-year period, does Mars move generally to the left (eastward) or to the right (westward) on the celestial sphere? On what date during this period does this *direct* motion end, so that Mars appears to come to a momentary halt, and retrograde motion begins? On what date does *retrograde* motion end and direct motion resume? You may want to use the **Stop** button and the **Back** button (a triangle that points to the left) to help you to pin down the exact dates of these events. (**b**) You have been observing the motion of Mars as seen from Earth. To observe the motion of Earth as seen from Mars, locate yourself on the north pole of Mars. To do this, select **Viewing Location . . .** in the **Options** menu. In the Viewing Location dialog box that appears on the screen, change the pull-down menus next to the words "View from:" so that they read "the surface of" and "Mars." Click on **Latitude/Longitude** tab in the **Viewing Location** dialog box and change the Latitude to **90° N.** Then click on the **Set Location** button. You will now see a Martian horizon and a pink Martian sky, both of which will interfere with your view of the Earth as

seen from Mars. Remove the horizon by clicking the **Options** tab on the left of the main view to open the **Options** pane. Under the **Local View** heading in the **Options** pane, click the checkbox to the left of the item labeled **Local Horizon.** Then, in the View menu, select **Hide Daylight** to remove the Martian sky. Now center the field of view on the **Earth** (double-click the entry for Earth in the **Find** pane). Set the date to **January 1, 2005,** set the discrete time step to **1 day,** and click on the **Forward** button. As before, watch the motion for two years of simulated time. In which direction does the Earth appear to move most of the time? On what date does its motion change from direct to retrograde? On what date does its motion change from retrograde back to direct? Are these roughly the same dates as you found in part (a)? (**c**) To understand the motions of Mars as seen from Earth and vice versa, observe the motion of the planets from a point above the solar system. Again, select **Viewing Location . . .** in the **Options** menu. In the Viewing Location dialog box that appears on the screen, select "stationary location" from the pull-down menu immediately to the right of the words "View from." Then type **0 au** in the **X:** box, **0 au** in the **Y:** box, and **5 au** in the **Z:** box, and click on the **Set Location** button. This will place you at a position 5 AU above the plane of the solar system. Then center the field of view on the Sun (double-click the entry for the Sun in the **Find** pane). Once again, set the date to **January 1, 2005,** set the discrete time step to **1 day,** and click on the **Forward** button. Watch the motions of the planets for two years of simulated time. On what date during this two-year period is Earth directly between Mars and the Sun? How does this date compare to the two dates you recorded in part (a) and the two dates you recorded in part (b)? Explain the significance of this. (*Hint:* see See Figure 4-5.)

5

The Nature of Light



R I V U X G

The Ring Nebula is a shell of glowing gases surrounding a dying star. The spectrum of the emitted light reveals which gases are present. (Hubble Heritage Team, AURA/STScI/NASA)

In the early 1800s, the French philosopher Auguste Comte argued that because the stars are so far away, humanity would never know their nature and composition. But the means to learn about the stars was already there for anyone to see—starlight. Just a few years after Comte's bold pronouncement, scientists began analyzing starlight to learn the very things that he had deemed unknowable.

We now know that atoms of each chemical element emit and absorb light at a unique set of wavelengths characteristic of that element alone. The red light in the accompanying image of a gas cloud in space is of a wavelength emitted by nitrogen and no other element; the particular green light in this image is unique to oxygen, and the particular blue light is unique to helium. The light from nearby planets, distant stars, and remote galaxies also has characteristic "fingerprints" that reveal the chemical composition of these celestial objects.

In this chapter we learn about the basic properties of light. Light has a dual nature: it has the properties of both waves and particles. The light emitted by an object depends upon the object's temperature; we can use this to determine the surface temperatures of stars. By studying the structure of atoms, we will learn why each element emits and absorbs light only at specific wavelengths and will see how astronomers determine what the atmospheres of planets and stars are made of. The motion of a light source also affects wavelengths, permitting us to deduce how fast stars and other objects are approaching or receding. These are but a few of the reasons why understanding light is a prerequisite to understanding the universe.

5-1 Light travels through empty space at a speed of 300,000 km/s

Galileo Galilei and Isaac Newton were among the first to ask basic questions about light. Does light travel instantaneously from one place to another, or does it move with a measurable speed? Whatever the nature of light, it does seem to travel swiftly from a source to our eyes. We see a distant event before we hear the accompanying sound. (For example, we see a flash of lightning before we hear the thunderclap.)

The speed of light in a vacuum is a universal constant: It has the same value everywhere in the cosmos

In the early 1600s, Galileo tried to measure the speed of light. He and an assistant stood at night on two hilltops a known distance apart, each holding a shuttered lantern. First, Galileo opened the shutter of

Learning Goals

By reading the sections of this chapter, you will learn

5-1 How we measure the speed of light

5-2 How we know that light is an electromagnetic wave

5-3 How an object's temperature is related to the radiation it emits

5-4 The relationship between an object's temperature and the amount of energy it emits

5-5 The evidence that light has both particle and wave aspects

5-6 How astronomers can detect an object's chemical composition by studying the light it emits

5-7 The quantum rules that govern the structure of an atom

5-8 The relationship between atomic structure and the light emitted by objects

5-9 How an object's motion affects the light we receive from that object his lantern; as soon as his assistant saw the flash of light, he opened his own. Galileo used his pulse as a timer to try to measure the time between opening his lantern and seeing the light from his assistant's lantern. From the distance and time, he hoped to compute the speed at which the light had traveled to the distant hilltop and back.

Galileo found that the measured time failed to increase noticeably, no matter how distant the assistant was stationed. Galileo therefore concluded that the speed of light is too high to be measured by slow human reactions. Thus, he was unable to tell whether or not light travels instantaneously.

The Speed of Light: Astronomical Measurements

The first evidence that light does *not* travel instantaneously was presented in 1676 by Olaus Rømer, a Danish astronomer. Rømer had been studying the orbits of the moons of Jupiter by carefully timing the moments when they passed into or out of Jupiter's shadow. To Rømer's surprise, the timing of these eclipses of Jupiter's moons seemed to depend on the relative positions of Jupiter and the Earth. When the Earth was far from Jupiter (that is, near conjunction; see Figure 4-6), the eclipses occurred several minutes later than when the Earth was close to Jupiter (near opposition).

Rømer realized that this puzzling effect could be explained if light needs time to travel from Jupiter to the Earth. When the Earth is closest to Jupiter, the image of a satellite disappearing into Jupiter's shadow arrives at our telescopes a little sooner than it does when Jupiter and the Earth are farther apart (Figure 5-1). The range of variation in the times at which such eclipses are observed is about 16.6 minutes, which Rømer interpreted as the length of time required for light to travel across the diameter of the Earth's orbit (a distance of 2 AU). The size of the Earth's orbit was not accurately known in Rømer's day, and he never actually calculated the speed of light. Today, using the modern value of 150 million kilometers for the astronomical unit, Rømer's method yields a value for the speed of light equal to roughly 300,000 km/s (186,000 mi/s).

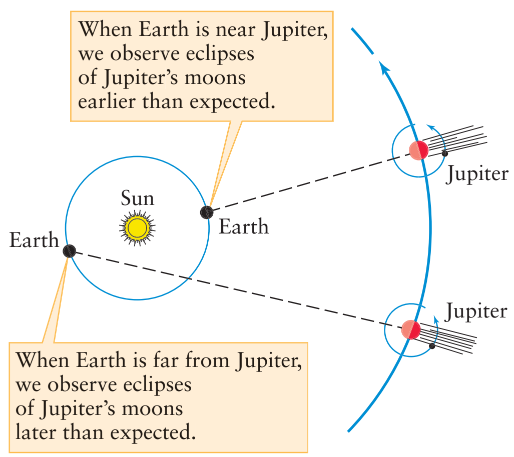


Figure 5-1

Rømer's Proof That Light Does Not Travel Instantaneously The timing of eclipses of Jupiter's moons as seen from Earth depends on the Earth-Jupiter distance. Rømer correctly attributed this effect to variations in the time required for light to travel from Jupiter to the Earth.

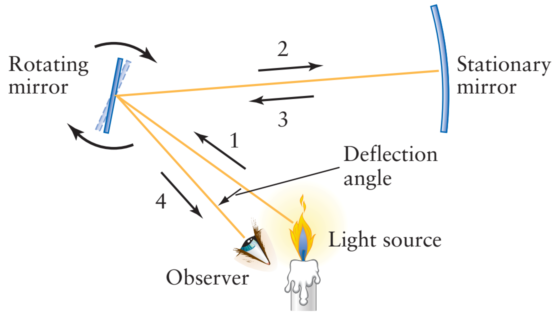


Figure 5-2

The Fizeau-Foucault Method of Measuring the Speed of Light Light from a light source (1) is reflected off a rotating mirror to a stationary mirror (2) and from there back to the rotating mirror (3). The ray that reaches the observer (4) is deflected away from the path of the initial beam because the rotating mirror has moved slightly while the light was making the round trip. The speed of light is calculated from the deflection angle and the dimensions of the apparatus.

The Speed of Light: Measurements on Earth

Almost two centuries after Rømer, the speed of light was measured very precisely in an experiment carried out on Earth. In 1850, the French physicists Armand-Hippolyte Fizeau and Jean Foucault built the apparatus sketched in Figure 5-2. Light from a light source reflects from a rotating mirror toward a stationary mirror 20 meters away. The rotating mirror moves slightly while the light is making the round trip, so the returning light ray is deflected away from the source by a small angle. By measuring this angle and knowing the dimensions of their apparatus, Fizeau and Foucault could deduce the speed of light. Once again, the answer was very nearly 300,000 km/s.

The speed of light in a vacuum is usually designated by the letter c (from the Latin *celeritas*, meaning "speed"). The modern value is $c = 299{,}792.458$ km/s (186,282.397 mi/s). In most calculations you can use

$$c = 3.00 \times 10^5 \text{ km/s} = 3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$$

The most convenient set of units to use for c is different in different situations. The value in kilometers per second (km/s) is often most useful when comparing c to the speeds of objects in space, while the value in meters per second (m/s) is preferred when doing calculations involving the wave nature of light (which we will discuss in Section 5-2).

CAUTION! Note that the quantity c is the speed of light *in a vacuum*. Light travels more slowly through air, water, glass, or any other transparent substance than it does in a vacuum. In our study of astronomy, however, we will almost always consider light traveling through the vacuum (or near-vacuum) of space.

The speed of light in empty space is one of the most important numbers in modern physical science. This value appears in many equations that describe atoms, gravity, electricity, and mag-

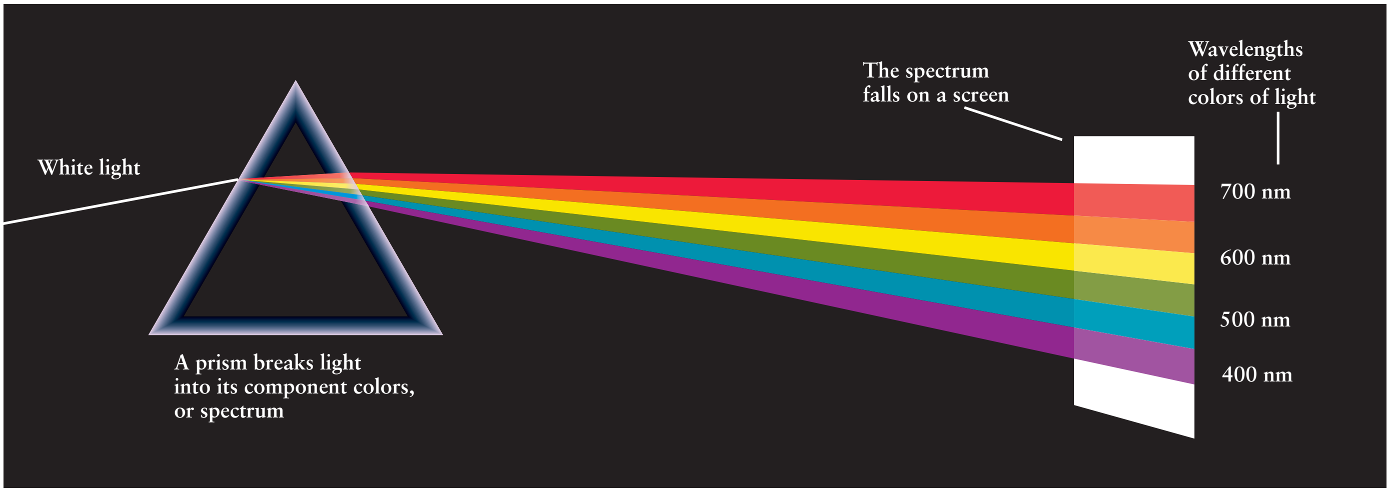


Figure 5-3

A Prism and a Spectrum When a beam of sunlight passes through a glass prism, the light is broken into a rainbow-colored band called a spectrum. The wavelengths of different colors of light are shown on the right (1 nm = 1 nanometer = 10^{-9} m).

netism. According to Einstein's special theory of relativity, nothing can travel faster than the speed of light.

5-2 Light is electromagnetic radiation and is characterized by its wavelength

Light is energy. This fact is apparent to anyone who has felt the warmth of the sunshine on a summer's day. But what exactly is light? How is it produced? What is it made of? How does it move through space? Scholars have struggled with these questions throughout history.

Visible light, radio waves, and X rays are all the same type of wave: They differ only in their wavelength

Newton and the Nature of Color

The first major breakthrough in understanding light came from a simple experiment performed by Isaac Newton around 1670. Newton was familiar with what he called the "celebrated Phenomenon of Colours," in which a beam of sunlight passing through a glass prism spreads out into the colors of the rainbow (Figure 5-3). This rainbow is called a **spectrum** (plural **spectra**).

WEB LINK 5.2

Until Newton's time, it was thought that a prism somehow added colors to white light. To test this idea, Newton placed a second prism so that just one color of the spectrum passed through it (Figure 5-4). According to the old theory, this should have caused a further change in the color of the light. But Newton found that each color of the spectrum was unchanged by the second prism; red remained red, blue remained

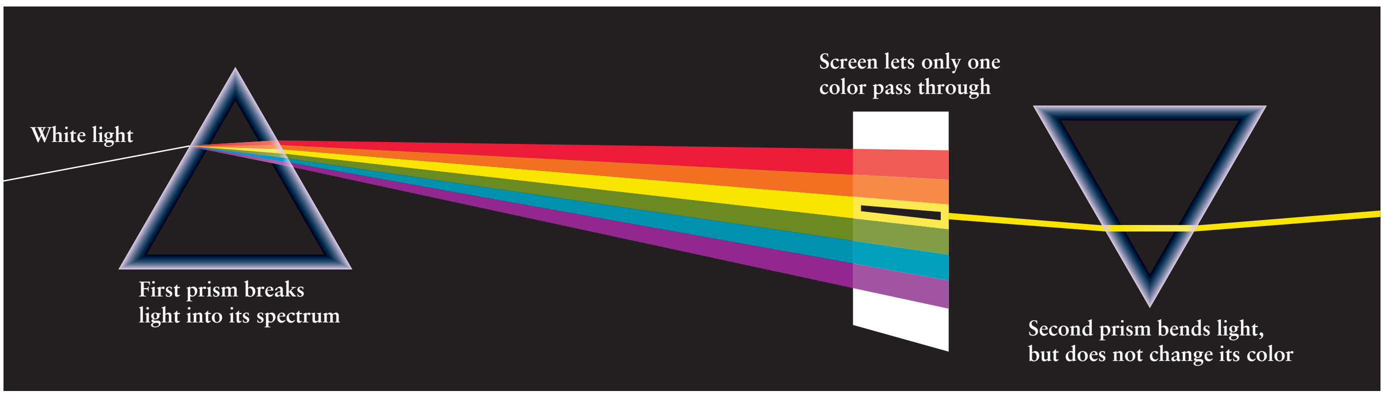


Figure 5-4

Newton's Experiment on the Nature of Light In a crucial experiment, Newton took sunlight that had passed through a prism and sent it through a second prism. Between the two prisms was a screen with a hole in it that allowed only one color of the spectrum to pass through. This same color emerged from the second prism. Newton's experiment proved that prisms do not add color to light but merely bend different colors through different angles. It also proved that white light, such as sunlight, is actually a combination of all the colors that appear in its spectrum.

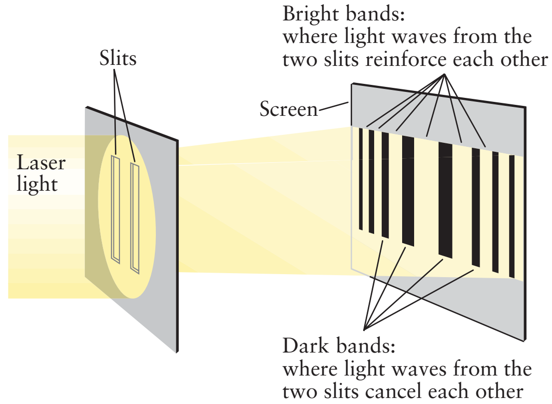
blue, and so on. He concluded that a prism merely separates colors and does not add color. Hence, the spectrum produced by the first prism shows that sunlight is a mixture of all the colors of the rainbow.

Newton suggested that light is composed of particles too small to detect individually. In 1678, however, the Dutch physicist and astronomer Christiaan Huygens proposed a rival explanation. He suggested that light travels in the form of waves rather than particles.

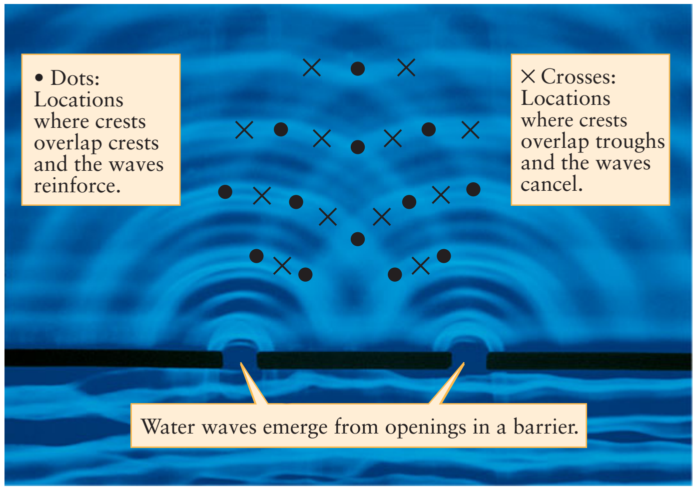
Young and the Wave Nature of Light

Around 1801, Thomas Young in England carried out an experiment that convincingly demonstrated the wavelike aspect of light. He passed a beam of light through two thin, parallel slits in an opaque screen, as shown in Figure 5-5*a*. On a white surface some distance beyond the slits, the light formed a pattern of alternating bright and dark bands. Young reasoned that if a beam of light was a stream of particles (as Newton had suggested), the two beams of light from the slits should simply form bright images of the slits on the white surface. The pattern of bright and dark bands he observed is just what would be expected, however, if light had wavelike properties. An analogy with water waves demonstrates why.

ANALOGY Imagine ocean waves pounding against a reef or breakwater that has two openings (Figure 5-5*b*). A pattern of ripples is formed on the other side of the barrier as the waves come through the two openings and interfere with each other. At certain points, wave crests arrive simultaneously from the two openings. These reinforce each other and produce high waves. At other points, a crest from one opening meets a trough from the other opening. These cancel each other out, leaving areas of still water. This process of combining two waves also takes place in Young's double-slit experiment: The bright bands are regions where waves from the two slits reinforce each other, while the dark bands appear where waves from the two slits cancel each other.



(a) An experiment with light



(b) An analogous experiment with water waves

Figure 5-5

Young's Double-Slit Experiment (a) Thomas Young's classic double-slit experiment can easily be repeated in the modern laboratory by shining light from a laser onto two closely spaced parallel slits. Alternating dark and bright bands appear on a screen beyond the slits. **(b)** The intensity of light on the screen in (a) is analogous to the height of water waves that pass through a barrier with two openings. (The photograph shows this experiment with water waves in a small tank.) In certain locations, wave crests from both openings reinforce each other to produce extra high waves. At other locations a crest from one opening meets a trough from the other. The crest and trough cancel each other, producing still water. (Eric Schrempp/Photo Researchers)

Maxwell and Light as an Electromagnetic Wave

The discovery of the wave nature of light posed some obvious questions. What exactly is "waving" in light? That is, what is it about light that goes up and down like water waves on the ocean? Because we can see light from the Sun, planets, and stars, light waves must be able to travel across empty space. Hence, whatever is "waving" cannot be any material substance. What, then, is it?

The answer came from a seemingly unlikely source—a comprehensive theory that described electricity and magnetism. Numerous experiments during the first half of the nineteenth century demonstrated an intimate connection between electric and magnetic forces. A central idea to emerge from these experiments is the concept of a *field*, an immaterial yet measurable disturbance of any region of space in which electric or magnetic forces are felt. Thus, an electric charge is surrounded by an electric field, and a magnet is surrounded by a magnetic field. Experiments in the early 1800s demonstrated that moving an electric charge produces a magnetic field; conversely, moving a magnet gives rise to an electric field.

In the 1860s, the Scottish mathematician and physicist James Clerk Maxwell succeeded in describing all the basic properties of electricity and magnetism in four equations. This mathematical achievement demonstrated that electric and magnetic forces are really two aspects of the same phenomenon, which we now call **electromagnetism.**

By combining his four equations, Maxwell showed that electric and magnetic fields should travel through space in the form of waves at a speed of 3.0×10^5 km/s—a value exactly equal to the best available value for the speed of light. Maxwell's sugges-

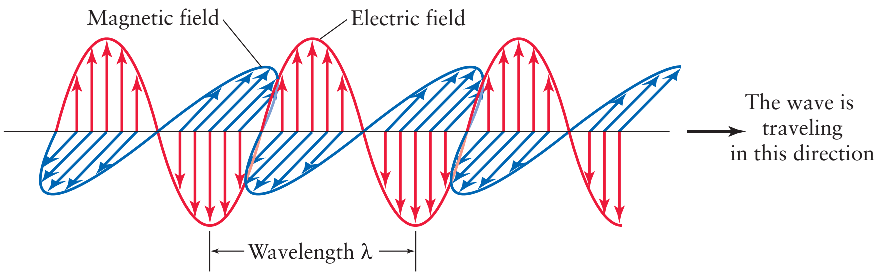


Figure 5-6

Electromagnetic Radiation All forms of light consist of oscillating electric and magnetic fields that move through space at a speed of 3.00×10^5 km/s = 3.00×10^8 m/s. This figure shows a "snapshot" of these fields at one instant. The distance between two successive crests, called the wavelength of the light, is usually designated by the Greek letter λ (lambda).

tion that these waves do exist and are observed as light was soon confirmed by experiments. Because of its electric and magnetic properties, light is also called **electromagnetic radiation.**

CAUTION! You may associate the term *radiation* with radioactive materials like uranium, but this term refers to anything that radiates, or spreads away, from its source. For example, scientists sometimes refer to sound waves as "acoustic radiation." Radiation does not have to be related to radioactivity!

Electromagnetic radiation consists of oscillating electric and magnetic fields, as shown in Figure 5-6. The distance between two successive wave crests is called the **wavelength** of the light, usually designated by the Greek letter λ (lambda). No matter what the wavelength, electromagnetic radiation always travels at the same speed $c = 3.0 \times 10^5$ km/s $= 3.0 \times 10^8$ m/s in a vacuum.

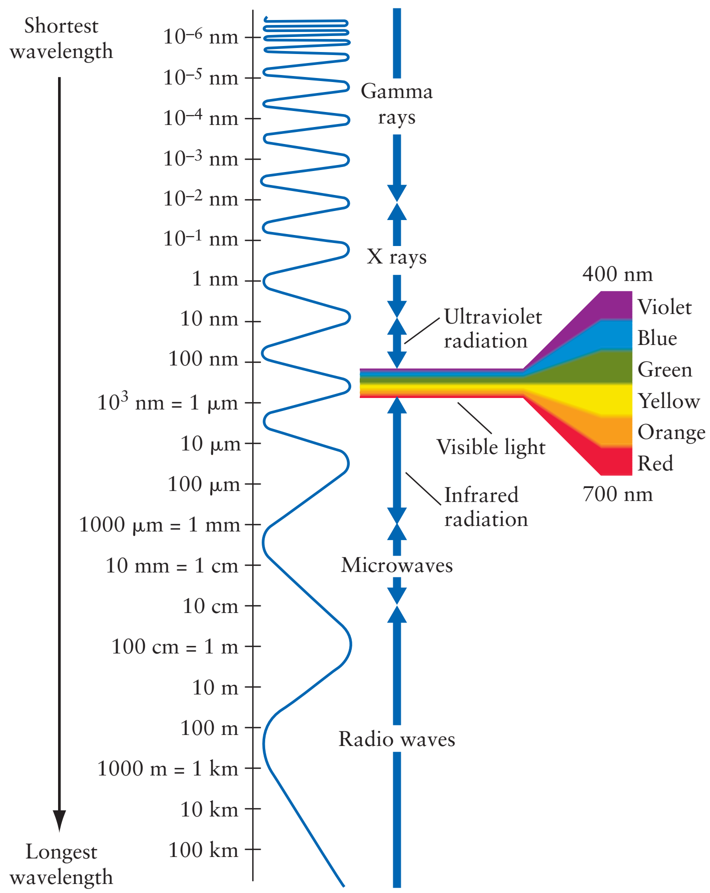
More than a century elapsed between Newton's experiments with a prism and the confirmation of the wave nature of light. One reason for this delay is that **visible light,** the light to which the human eye is sensitive, has extremely short wavelengths—less than a thousandth of a millimeter—that are not easily detectable. To express such tiny distances conveniently, scientists use a unit of length called the **nanometer** (abbreviated nm), where 1 nm = 10^{-9} m. Experiments demonstrated that visible light has wavelengths covering the range from about 400 nm for violet light to about 700 nm for red light. Intermediate colors of the rainbow like yellow (550 nm) have intermediate wavelengths, as shown in Figure 5-7. (Some astronomers prefer to measure wavelengths in *angstroms*. One angstrom, abbreviated Å, is one-tenth of a nanometer: 1 Å = 0.1 nm = 10^{-10} m. In these units, the wavelengths of visible light extend from about 4000 Å to about 7000 Å. We will not use these units in this book, however.)

Visible and Nonvisible Light

Maxwell's equations place no restrictions on the wavelength of electromagnetic radiation. Hence, electromagnetic waves could and should exist with wavelengths both longer and shorter than the 400–700 nm range of visible light. Consequently, researchers began to look for *invisible* forms of light. These are forms of electromagnetic radiation to which the cells of the human retina do not respond.

The first kind of invisible radiation to be discovered actually preceded Maxwell's work by more than a half century. Around 1800 the British astronomer William Herschel passed sunlight through a prism and held a thermometer just beyond the red end of the visible spectrum. The thermometer registered a temperature increase, indicating that it was being exposed to an invisible form of energy. This invisible energy, now called **infrared radiation,** was later realized to be electromagnetic radiation with wavelengths somewhat longer than those of visible light.

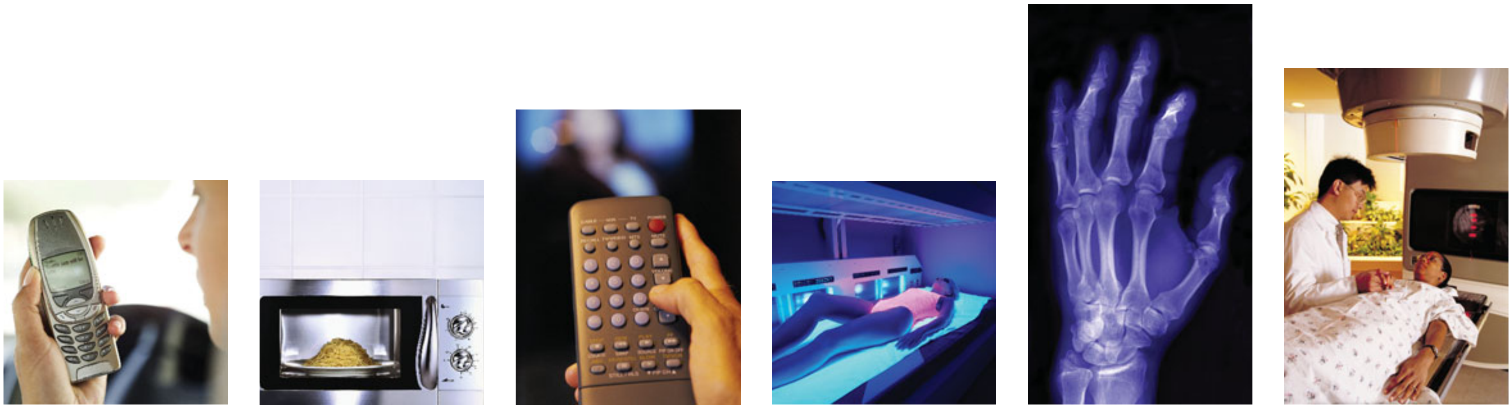
In experiments with electric sparks in 1888, the German physicist Heinrich Hertz succeeded in producing electromagnetic radiation with even longer wavelengths of a few centimeters or more. These are now known as **radio waves.** In 1895 another German physicist, Wilhelm Röntgen, invented a machine that produces electromagnetic radiation with wavelengths shorter than



WEB LINK 5.3

Figure 5-7

The Electromagnetic Spectrum The full array of all types of electromagnetic radiation is called the electromagnetic spectrum. It extends from the longest-wavelength radio waves to the shortest-wavelength gamma rays. Visible light occupies only a tiny portion of the full electromagnetic spectrum.



(a) Mobile phone: radio waves

(b) Microwave oven: microwaves

(c) TV remote: infrared light

(d) Tanning booth: ultraviolet light

(e) Medical imaging: X rays.

(f) Cancer radiotherapy: gamma rays

Figure 5-8

Uses of Nonvisible Electromagnetic Radiation **(a)** A mobile phone is actually a radio transmitter and receiver. The wavelengths used are in the range 16 to 36 cm. **(b)** A microwave oven produces radiation with a wavelength near 10 cm. The water in food absorbs this radiation, thus heating the food. **(c)** A remote control sends commands to a television using a beam of infrared light. **(d)** Ultraviolet radiation in moderation gives you a suntan, but in excess can cause sunburn or skin cancer. **(e)** X rays can penetrate through soft tissue but not through bone, which makes them useful for medical imaging. **(f)** Gamma rays destroy cancer cells by breaking their DNA molecules, making them unable to multiply. (Ian Britton, Royalty-Free/Corbis, Michael Porsche/Corbis, Bill Lush/Taxi/Getty, Neil McAllister/Alamy, Edward Kinsman/Photo Researchers, Inc., Will and Deni McIntyre/Science Photo Library)

10 nm, now known as **X rays.** The X-ray machines in modern medical and dental offices are direct descendants of Röntgen's invention. Over the years radiation has been discovered with many other wavelengths.

Thus, visible light occupies only a tiny fraction of the full range of possible wavelengths, collectively called the **electromagnetic spectrum.** As Figure 5-7 shows, the electromagnetic spectrum stretches from the longest-wavelength radio waves to the shortest-wavelength gamma rays. Figure 5-8 shows some applications of nonvisible light in modern technology.

On the long-wavelength side of the visible spectrum, infrared radiation covers the range from about 700 nm to 1 mm. Astronomers interested in infrared radiation often express wavelength in *micrometers* or *microns,* abbreviated μm, where 1 μm = 10^{-3} mm = 10^{-6} m. **Microwaves** have wavelengths from roughly 1 mm to 10 cm, while radio waves have even longer wavelengths.

At wavelengths shorter than those of visible light, **ultraviolet radiation** extends from about 400 nm down to 10 nm. Next are X rays, which have wavelengths between about 10 and 0.01 nm, and beyond them at even shorter wavelengths are **gamma rays.** Note that the rough boundaries between different types of radiation are simply arbitrary divisions in the electromagnetic spectrum.

Frequency and Wavelength

Astronomers who work with radio telescopes often prefer to speak of *frequency* rather than wavelength. The **frequency** of a wave is the number of wave crests that pass a given point in one second. Equivalently, it is the number of complete *cycles* of the wave that pass per second (a complete cycle is from one crest to the next). Frequency is usually denoted by the Greek letter ν (nu). The unit of frequency is the cycle per second, also called the *hertz* (abbreviated Hz) in honor of Heinrich Hertz, the physicist who first produced radio waves. For example, if 500 crests of a wave pass you in one second, the frequency of the wave is 500 cycles per second or 500 Hz.

In working with frequencies, it is often convenient to use the prefix *mega-* (meaning "million," or 10^6, and abbreviated M) or *kilo-* (meaning "thousand," or 10^3, and abbreviated k). For example, AM radio stations broadcast at frequencies between 535 and 1605 kHz (kilohertz), while FM radio stations broadcast at frequencies in the range from 88 to 108 MHz (megahertz).

The relationship between the frequency and wavelength of an electromagnetic wave is a simple one. Because light moves at a constant speed $c = 3 \times 10^8$ m/s, if the wavelength (distance from one crest to the next) is made shorter, the frequency must increase (more of those closely spaced crests pass you each second). Mathematically, the frequency ν of light is related to its wavelength λ by

Frequency and wavelength of an electromagnetic wave

$$\nu = \frac{c}{\lambda}$$

ν = frequency of an electromagnetic wave (in Hz)

c = speed of light = 3×10^8 m/s

λ = wavelength of the wave (in meters)

That is, the frequency of a wave equals the wave speed divided by the wavelength.

For example, hydrogen atoms in space emit radio waves with a wavelength of 21.12 cm. To calculate the frequency of this radiation, we must first express the wavelength in meters rather than centimeters: $\lambda = 0.2112$ m. Then we can use the above formula to find the frequency ν:

$$\nu = \frac{c}{\lambda} = \frac{3 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}}{0.2112 \text{ m}} = 1.42 \times 10^9 \text{ Hz} = 1420 \text{ MHz}$$

Visible light has a much shorter wavelength and higher frequency than radio waves. You can use the above formula to show that for yellow-orange light of wavelength 600 nm, the frequency is 5×10^{14} Hz or 500 *million* megahertz!

While Young's experiment (Figure 5-5) showed convincingly that light has wavelike aspects, it was discovered in the early 1900s that light *also* has some of the characteristics of a stream of particles and waves. We will explore light's dual nature in Section 5-5.

5-3 An opaque object emits electromagnetic radiation according to its temperature

To learn about objects in the heavens, astronomers study the character of the electromagnetic radiation coming from those objects. Such studies can be very revealing because different kinds of electromagnetic radiation are typically produced in different ways. As an example, on Earth the most common way to generate radio waves is to make an electric current oscillate back and forth (as is done in the broadcast antenna of a radio station). By contrast, X rays for medical and dental purposes are usually produced by bombarding atoms in a piece of metal with fast-moving particles extracted from within other atoms. Our own Sun emits radio waves from near its glowing surface and X rays from its corona (see the photo that opens Chapter 3). Hence, these observations indicate the presence of electric currents near the Sun's surface and of fast-moving particles in the Sun's outermost regions. (We will discuss the Sun at length in Chapter 18.)

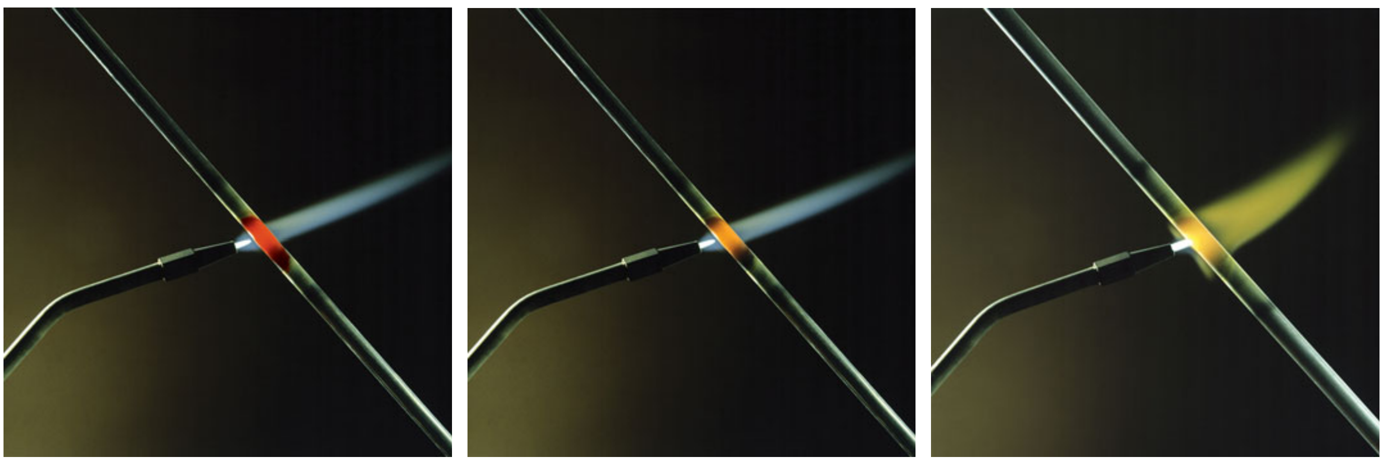
As an object is heated, it glows more brightly and its peak color shifts to shorter wavelengths

Radiation from Heated Objects

The simplest and most common way to produce electromagnetic radiation, either on or off the Earth, is to heat an object. The hot filament of wire inside an ordinary lightbulb emits white light, and a neon sign has a characteristic red glow because neon gas within the tube is heated by an electric current. In like fashion, almost all the visible light that we receive from space comes from hot objects like the Sun and the stars. The kind and amount of light emitted by a hot object tell us not only how hot it is but also about other properties of the object.

We can tell whether the hot object is made of relatively dense or relatively thin material. Consider the difference between a lightbulb and a neon sign. The dense, solid filament of a lightbulb makes white light, which is a mixture of all different visible wavelengths, while the thin, transparent neon gas produces light of a rather definite red color and, hence, a rather definite wavelength. For now we will concentrate our attention on the light produced by dense, opaque objects. (We will return to the light produced by gases in Section 5-6.) Even though the Sun and stars are gaseous, not solid, it turns out that they emit light with many of the same properties as light emitted by a hot, glowing, solid object.

Imagine a welder or blacksmith heating a bar of iron. As the bar becomes hot, it begins to glow deep red, as shown in Figure 5-9*a*. (You can see this same glow from the coils of a toaster or from an electric range turned on "high.") As the temperature rises further, the bar begins to give off a brighter orange light (Figure 5-9*b*). At still higher temperatures, it shines with a brilliant yellow light (Figure 5-9*c*). If the bar could be prevented from melting and vaporizing, at extremely high temperatures it would emit a dazzling blue-white light.



(a) Hot: glows deep red (b) Hotter: glows orange (c) Even hotter: glows yellow

Figure 5-9 R I V U X G

Heating a Bar of Iron This sequence of photographs shows how the appearance of a heated bar of iron changes with temperature. As the temperature increases, the bar glows more brightly because it radiates more energy. The color of the bar also changes because as the temperature goes up, the dominant wavelength of light emitted by the bar decreases. (©1984 Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs)

Figure 5-10 R I V U X G

An Infrared Portrait In this image made with a camera sensitive to infrared radiation, the different colors represent regions of different temperature. Red areas (like the man's face) are the warmest and emit the most infrared light, while blue-green areas (including the man's hands and hair) are at the lowest temperatures and emit the least radiation. (Dr. Arthur Tucker/Photo Researchers)

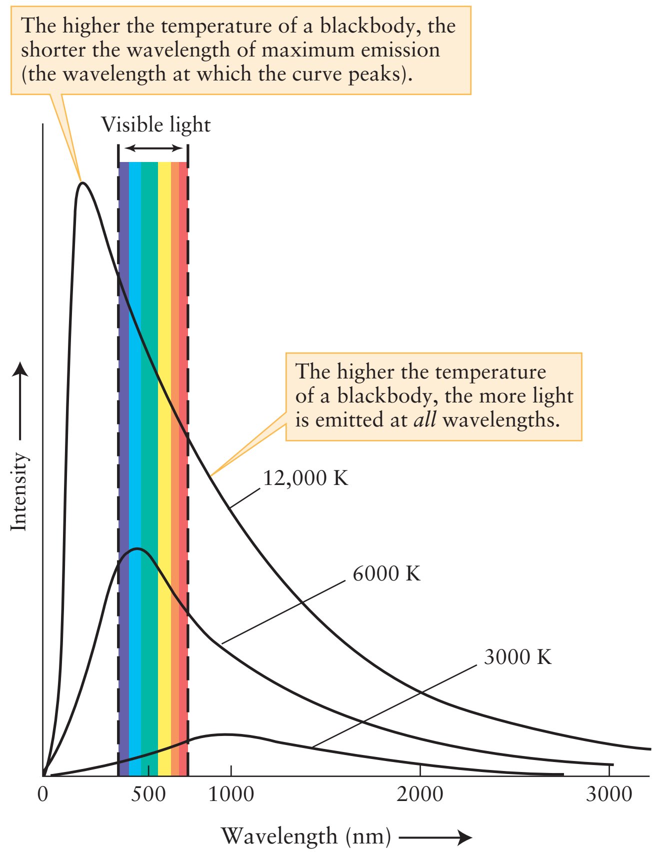
As this example shows, the amount of energy emitted by the hot, dense object and the dominant wavelength of the emitted radiation both depend on the temperature of the object. The hotter the object, the more energy it emits and the shorter the wavelength at which most of the energy is emitted. Colder objects emit relatively little energy, and this emission is primarily at long wavelengths.

These observations explain why you can't see in the dark. The temperatures of people, animals, and furniture are rather less than even that of the iron bar in Figure 5-9*a*. So, while these objects emit radiation even in a darkened room, most of this emission is at wavelengths greater than those of red light, in the infrared part of the spectrum (see Figure 5-7). Your eye is not sensitive to infrared, and you thus cannot see ordinary objects in a darkened room. But you can detect this radiation by using a camera that is sensitive to infrared light (Figure 5-10).

To better understand the relationship between the temperature of a dense object and the radiation it emits, it is helpful to know just what "temperature" means. The temperature of a substance is directly related to the average speed of the tiny **atoms**—the building blocks that come in distinct forms for each distinct chemical element—that make up the substance. (Typical atoms are about 10^{-10} m = 0.1 nm in diameter, or about 1/5000 as large as a typical wavelength of visible light.)

If something is hot, its atoms are moving at high speeds; if it is cold, its atoms are moving slowly. Scientists usually prefer to use the Kelvin temperature scale, on which temperature is measured in **kelvins** (K) upward from **absolute zero.** This is the coldest possible temperature, at which atoms move as slowly as possible (they can never quite stop completely). On the more familiar Celsius and Fahrenheit temperature scales, absolute zero (0 K) is −273°C and −460°F. Ordinary room temperature is 293 K, 20°C, or 68°F. Box 5-1 discusses the relationships among the Kelvin, Celsius, and Fahrenheit temperature scales.

Figure 5-11 depicts quantitatively how the radiation from a dense object depends on its Kelvin temperature. Each curve in this figure shows the intensity of light emitted at each wavelength by a dense object at a given temperature: 3000 K (the temperature at which molten gold boils), 6000K (the temperature of an iron-welding arc), and 12,000 K (a temperature found in special industrial furnaces). In other words, the curves show the spectrum of light emitted by such an object. At any temperature, a hot, dense object emits at all wavelengths, so its spectrum is a smooth, continuous curve with no gaps in it.



AIMM 5.1

Figure 5-11

Blackbody Curves Each of these curves shows the intensity of light at every wavelength that is emitted by a blackbody (an idealized case of a dense object) at a particular temperature. The rainbow-colored band shows the range of visible wavelengths. The vertical scale has been compressed so that all three curves can be seen; the peak intensity for the 12,000-K curve is actually about 1000 times greater than the peak intensity for the 3000-K curve.

BOX 5-1 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Temperatures and Temperature Scales

WEB LINK 5.4

Three temperature scales are in common use. Throughout most of the world, temperatures are expressed in **degrees Celsius** (°C). The Celsius temperature scale is based on the behavior of water, which freezes at 0°C and boils at 100°C at sea level on Earth. This scale is named after the Swedish astronomer Anders Celsius, who proposed it in 1742.

Astronomers usually prefer the Kelvin temperature scale. This is named after the nineteenth-century British physicist Lord Kelvin, who made many important contributions to our understanding of heat and temperature. Absolute zero, the temperature at which atomic motion is at the absolute minimum, is –273°C in the Celsius scale but 0 K in the Kelvin scale. Atomic motion cannot be any less than the minimum, so nothing can be colder than 0 K; hence, there are no negative temperatures on the Kelvin scale. Note that we do *not* use degree (°) with the Kelvin temperature scale.

A temperature expressed in kelvins is always equal to the temperature in degrees Celsius plus 273. On the Kelvin scale, water freezes at 273 K and boils at 373 K. Water must be heated through a change of 100 K or 100°C to go from its freezing point to its boiling point. Thus, the "size" of a kelvin is the same as the "size" of a Celsius degree. When considering temperature changes, measurements in kelvins and Celsius degrees are the same. For extremely high temperatures the Kelvin and Celsius scales are essentially the same: for example, the Sun's core temperature is either 1.55×10^7 K or 1.55×10^7 °C.

The now-archaic Fahrenheit scale, which expresses temperature in **degrees Fahrenheit** (°F), is used only in the United States. When the German physicist Gabriel Fahrenheit introduced this scale in the early 1700s, he intended 100°F to represent the temperature of a healthy human body. On the Fahrenheit scale, water freezes at 32°F and boils at 212°F. There are 180 Fahrenheit degrees between the freezing and boiling points of water, so a degree Fahrenheit is only 100/180 = 5/9 as large as either a Celsius degree or a kelvin.

Two simple equations allow you to convert a temperature from the Celsius scale to the Fahrenheit scale and from Fahrenheit to Celsius:

$$T_F = \frac{9}{5}\,T_C + 32$$

$$T_C = \frac{5}{9}\,(T_F - 32)$$

T_F = temperature in degrees Fahrenheit

T_C = temperature in degrees Celsius

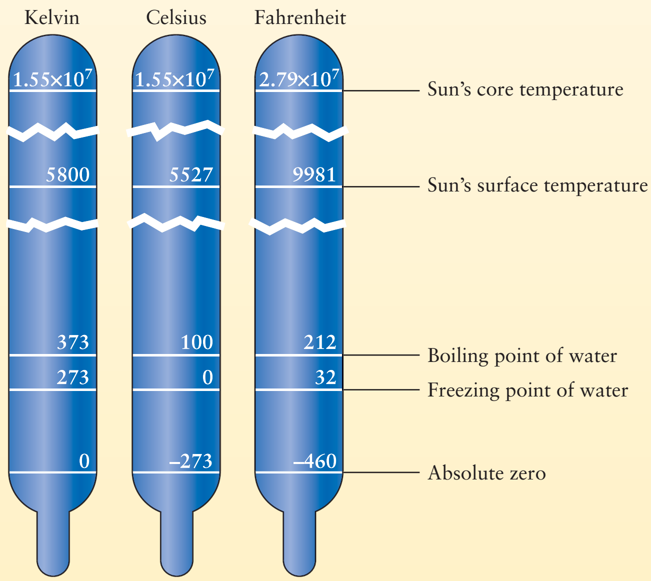
EXAMPLE: A typical room temperature is 68°F. We can convert this to the Celsius scale using the second equation:

$$T_C = \frac{5}{9}\,(68 - 32) = 20°\mathrm{C}$$

To convert this to the Kelvin scale, we simply add 273 to the Celsius temperature. Thus,

$$68° = 20°\mathrm{C} = 293\ \mathrm{K}$$

The diagram displays the relationships among these three temperature scales.



The shape of the spectrum depends on temperature, however. An object at relatively low temperature (say, 3000 K) has a low curve, indicating a low intensity of radiation. The **wavelength of maximum emission,** at which the curve has its peak and the emission of energy is strongest, is at a long wavelength. The higher the temperature, the higher the curve (indicating greater intensity) and the shorter the wavelength of maximum emission.

Figure 5-11 shows that for a dense object at a temperature of 3000 K, the wavelength of maximum emission is around 1000 nm (1 μm). Because this is an infrared wavelength well outside the visible range, you might think that you cannot see the radiation from an object at this temperature. In fact, the glow from such an object *is* visible; the curve shows that this object emits plenty of light within the visible range, as well as at even shorter wavelengths.

The 3000-K curve is quite a bit higher at the red end of the visible spectrum than at the violet end, so a dense object at this temperature will appear red in color. Similarly, the 12,000-K curve has its wavelength of maximum emission in the ultraviolet part of the spectrum, at a wavelength shorter than visible light. But such a hot, dense object also emits copious amounts of visible light (much more than at 6000 K or 3000 K, for which the curves are lower) and thus will have a very visible glow. The curve for this temperature is higher for blue light than for red light, and so the color of a dense object at 12,000 K is a brilliant blue or blue-white. These conclusions agree with the color changes of a heated rod shown in Figure 5-9. The same principles apply to stars: A star that looks blue, such as Bellatrix in the constellation Orion (see Figure 2-2*a*), has a high surface temperature, while a red star such as Betelgeuse (Figure 2-2*a*) has a relatively cool surface.

These observations lead to a general rule:

The higher an object's temperature, the more intensely the object emits electromagnetic radiation and the shorter the wavelength at which it emits most strongly.

We will make frequent use of this general rule to analyze the temperatures of celestial objects such as planets and stars.

The curves in Figure 5-11 are drawn for an idealized type of dense object called a **blackbody.** A perfect blackbody does not reflect any light at all; instead, it absorbs all radiation falling on it. Because it reflects no electromagnetic radiation, the radiation that it does emit is entirely the result of its temperature. Ordinary objects, like tables, textbooks, and people, are not perfect blackbodies; they reflect light, which is why they are visible. A star such as the Sun, however, behaves very much like a perfect blackbody, because it absorbs almost completely any radiation falling on it from outside. The light emitted by a blackbody is called **blackbody radiation,** and the curves in Figure 5-11 are often called **blackbody curves.**

CAUTION! Despite its name, a blackbody does not necessarily *look* black. The Sun, for instance, does not look black because its temperature is high (around 5800 K), and so it glows brightly. But a room-temperature (around 300 K) blackbody would appear very black indeed. Even if it were as large as the Sun, it would emit only about 1/100,000 as much energy. (Its blackbody curve is far too low to graph in Figure 5-11.) Furthermore, most of this radiation would be at wavelengths that are too long for our eyes to perceive.

Figure 5-12 shows the blackbody curve for a temperature of 5800 K. It also shows the intensity curve for light from the Sun, as measured from above the Earth's atmosphere. (This is necessary because the Earth's atmosphere absorbs certain wavelengths.) The peak of both curves is at a wavelength of about 500 nm, near the middle of the visible spectrum. Note how closely the observed intensity curve for the Sun matches the blackbody curve. This is a strong indication that the temperature of the Sun's glowing surface is about 5800 K—a temperature that we can measure across a distance of 150 million kilometers! The close correlation between blackbody curves and the observed intensity curves for most stars is a key reason why astronomers are interested in the physics of blackbody radiation.

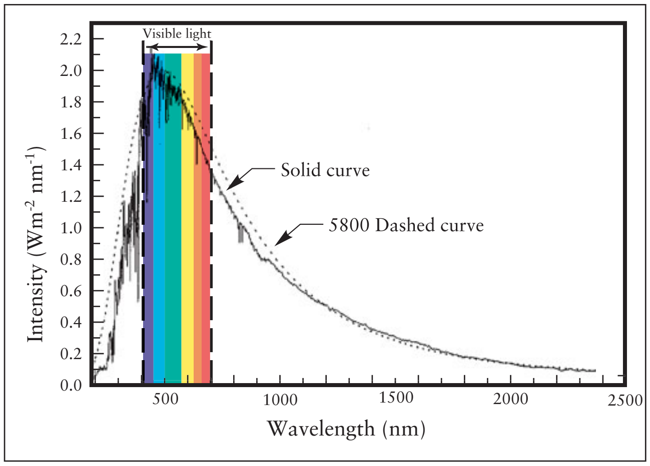


Figure 5-12

The Sun as a Blackbody This graph shows that the intensity of sunlight over a wide range of wavelengths (solid curve) is a remarkably close match to the intensity of radiation coming from a blackbody at a temperature of 5800 K (dashed curve). The measurements of the Sun's intensity were made above the Earth's atmosphere (which absorbs and scatters certain wavelengths of sunlight). It's not surprising that the range of visible wavelengths includes the peak of the Sun's spectrum; the human eye evolved to take advantage of the most plentiful light available.

Blackbody radiation depends *only* on the temperature of the object emitting the radiation, not on the chemical composition of the object. The light emitted by molten gold at 2000 K is very nearly the same as that emitted by molten lead at 2000 K. Therefore, it might seem that analyzing the light from the Sun or from a star can tell astronomers the object's temperature but not what the star is made of. As Figure 5-12 shows, however, the intensity curve for the Sun (a typical star) is not precisely that of a blackbody. We will see later in this chapter that the *differences* between a star's spectrum and that of a blackbody allow us to determine the chemical composition of the star.

5-4 Wien's law and the Stefan-Boltzmann law are useful tools for analyzing glowing objects like stars

The mathematical formula that describes the blackbody curves in Figure 5-11 is a rather complicated one. But there are two simpler formulas for blackbody radiation that prove to be very useful in many branches of astronomy. They are used by astronomers who investigate the stars as well as by those who study the planets (which are dense, relatively cool objects that emit infrared radiation). One of these formulas relates the temperature of a blackbody to its wavelength of maximum emission,

Two simple mathematical formulas describing blackbodies are essential tools for studying the universe

and the other relates the temperature to the amount of energy that the blackbody emits. These formulas, which we will use throughout this book, restate in precise mathematical terms the qualitative relationships that we described in Section 5-3.

Wien's Law

Figure 5-11 shows that the higher the temperature (T) of a blackbody, the shorter its wavelength of maximum emission (λ_{max}). In 1893 the German physicist Wilhelm Wien used ideas about both heat and electromagnetism to make this relationship quantitative. The formula that he derived, which today is called **Wien's law,** is

Wien's law for a blackbody

$$\lambda_{max} = \frac{0.0029 \text{ K m}}{T}$$

λ_{max} = wavelength of maximum emission of the object (in meters)

T = temperature of the object (in kelvins)

AIMM 5.2

According to Wien's law, the wavelength of maximum emission of a blackbody is inversely proportional to its temperature in kelvins. In other words, if the temperature of the blackbody doubles, its wavelength of maximum emission is halved, and vice versa. For example, Figure 5-11 shows blackbody curves for temperatures of 3000 K, 6000 K, and 12,000 K. From Wien's law, a blackbody with a temperature of 6000 K has a wavelength of maximum emission λ_{max} = (0.0029 K m)/(6000 K) = 4.8×10^{-7} m = 480 nm, in the visible part of the electromagnetic spectrum. At 12,000 K, or twice the temperature, the blackbody has a wavelength of maximum emission half as great, or λ_{max} = 240 nm; this is in the ultraviolet. At 3000 K, just half our original temperature, the value of λ_{max} is twice the original value—960 nm, which is an infrared wavelength. You can see that these wavelengths agree with the peaks of the curves in Figure 5-11.

CAUTION! Remember that Wien's law involves the wavelength of maximum emission in *meters*. If you want to convert the wavelength to nanometers, you must multiply the wavelength in meters by (10^9 nm)/(1 m).

Wien's law is very useful for determining the surface temperatures of stars. It is not necessary to know how far away the star is, how large it is, or how much energy it radiates into space. All we need to know is the dominant wavelength of the star's electromagnetic radiation.

The Stefan-Boltzmann Law

The other useful formula for the radiation from a blackbody involves the total amount of energy the blackbody radiates at all wavelengths. (By contrast, the curves in Figure 5-11 show how much energy a blackbody radiates at each individual wavelength.)

Energy is usually measured in **joules** (J), named after the nineteenth-century English physicist James Joule. A joule is the amount of energy contained in the motion of a 2-kilogram mass moving at a speed of 1 meter per second. The joule is a convenient unit of energy because it is closely related to the familiar **watt** (W): 1 watt is 1 joule per second, or 1 W = 1 J/s = 1 J s^{-1}. (The superscript −1 means you are dividing by that quantity.) For example, a 100-watt lightbulb uses energy at a rate of 100 joules per second, or 100 J/s. The energy content of food is also often measured in joules; in most of the world, diet soft drinks are labeled as "low joule" rather than "low calorie."

The amount of energy emitted by a blackbody depends both on its temperature and on its surface area. This makes sense: A large burning log radiates much more heat than a burning match, even though the temperatures are the same. To consider the effects of temperature alone, it is convenient to look at the amount of energy emitted from each square meter of an object's surface in a second. This quantity is called the **energy flux** (F). Flux means "rate of flow," and thus F is a measure of how rapidly energy is flowing out of the object. It is measured in joules per square meter per second, usually written as J/m^2/s or J m^{-2} s^{-1}. Alternatively, because 1 watt equals 1 joule per second, we can express flux in watts per square meter (W/m^2, or W m^{-2}).

The nineteenth-century Irish physicist David Tyndall performed the first careful measurements of the amount of radiation emitted by a blackbody. (He studied the light from a heated platinum wire, which behaves approximately like a blackbody.) By analyzing Tyndall's results, the Slovenian physicist Josef Stefan deduced in 1879 that the flux from a blackbody is proportional to the fourth power of the object's temperature (measured in kelvins). Five years after Stefan announced his law, Austrian physicist Ludwig Boltzmann showed how it could be derived mathematically from basic assumptions about atoms and molecules. For this reason, Stefan's law is commonly known as the **Stefan-Boltzmann law.** Written as an equation, the Stefan-Boltzmann law is

Stefan-Boltzmann law for a blackbody

$$F = \sigma T^4$$

F = energy flux, in joules per square meter of surface per second

σ = a constant = 5.67×10^{-8} W m^{-2} K^{-4}

T = object's temperature, in kelvins

The value of the constant σ (the Greek letter sigma) is known from laboratory experiments.

The Stefan-Boltzmann law says that if you double the temperature of an object (for example, from 300 K to 600 K), then the energy emitted from the object's surface each second increases by a factor of 2^4 = 16. If you increase the temperature by a factor of 10 (for example, from 300 K to 3000 K), the rate of energy emission increases by a factor of 10^4 = 10,000. Thus, a chunk of iron at room temperature (around 300 K) emits very little electromagnetic radiation (and essentially no visible light), but an iron bar heated to 3000 K glows quite intensely.

Box 5-2 gives several examples of applying Wien's law and the Stefan-Boltzmann law to typical astronomical problems.

BOX 5-2 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Using the Laws of Blackbody Radiation

The Sun and stars behave like nearly perfect blackbodies. Wien's law and the Stefan-Boltzmann law can therefore be used to relate the surface temperature of the Sun or a distant star to the energy flux and wavelength of maximum emission of its radiation. The following examples show how to do this.

EXAMPLE: The maximum intensity of sunlight is at a wavelength of roughly 500 nm = 5.0×10^{-7} m. Use this information to determine the surface temperature of the Sun.

Situation: We are given the Sun's wavelength of maximum emission λ_{max}, and our goal is to find the Sun's surface temperature, denoted by $T_\odot$. (The symbol $\odot$ is the standard astronomical symbol for the Sun.)

Tools: We use Wien's law to relate the values of λ_{max} and $T_\odot$.

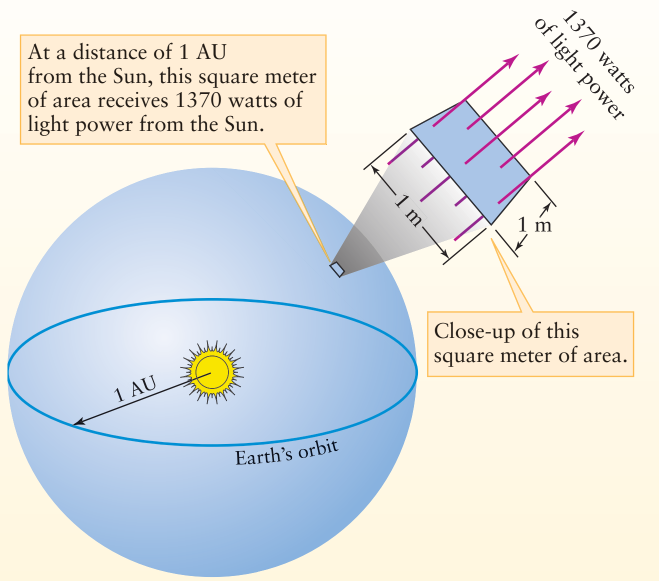
Answer: As written, Wien's law tells how to find λ_{max} if we know the surface temperature. To find the surface temperature from λ_{max}, we first rearrange the formula, then substitute the value of λ_{max}:

$$T_\odot = \frac{0.0029 \text{ K m}}{\lambda_{max}} = \frac{0.0029 \text{ K m}}{5.0 \times 10^{-7} \text{ m}} = 5800 \text{ K}$$

Review: This is a very high temperature by Earth standards, about the same as an iron-welding arc.

EXAMPLE: Using detectors above the Earth's atmosphere, astronomers have measured the average flux of solar energy arriving at Earth. This value, called the **solar constant,** is equal to 1370 W m^{-2}. Use this information to calculate the Sun's surface temperature. (This provides a check on our result from the preceding example.)

Situation: The solar constant is the flux of sunlight as measured at the Earth. We want to use the value of the solar constant to calculate $T_\odot$.



Tools: It may seem that all we need is the Stefan-Boltzmann law, which relates flux to surface temperature. However, the quantity F in this law refers to the flux measured at the Sun's surface, *not* at the Earth. Hence, we will first need to calculate F from the given information.

Answer: To determine the value of F, we first imagine a huge sphere of radius 1 AU with the Sun at its center, as shown in the figure. Each square meter of that sphere receives 1370 watts of power from the Sun, so the total energy radiated by the Sun per second is equal to the solar constant multiplied by the sphere's surface area. The result, called the **luminosity** of the Sun and denoted by the symbol $L_\odot$, is $L_\odot = 3.90 \times 10^{26}$ W. That is, in 1 second the Sun radiates 3.90×10^{26} joules of energy into space. Because we know the size of the Sun, we can compute the energy flux (energy emitted per square meter per second) at its surface. The radius of the Sun is $R_\odot = 6.96 \times 10^8$ m, and the Sun's surface area is $4\pi R_\odot^2$.

5-5 Light has properties of both waves and particles

At the end of the nineteenth century, physicists mounted a valiant effort to explain all the characteristics of blackbody radiation. To this end they constructed theories based on Maxwell's description of light as electromagnetic waves. But all such theories failed to explain the characteristic shapes of blackbody curves shown in Figure 5-11.

The Photon Hypothesis

In 1900, however, the German physicist Max Planck discovered that he could derive a formula that correctly described blackbody curves if he made certain assumptions. In 1905 the great German-born physicist Albert Einstein realized that these assumptions implied a radical new view of the nature of light. One tenet of this new view is that electromagnetic energy is emitted in discrete, particle-like packets, or light *quanta* (the plural of *quantum*, from a Latin word meaning "how much"). The second tenet is that the energy of each light quantum—today called a **photon**—is related to the wavelength of light: the greater the wavelength, the lower the energy of a photon associated with that wavelength. Thus, a photon of red light (wavelength λ = 700 nm) has less en-

The revolutionary photon concept is necessary to explain blackbody radiation and the photoelectric effect

Therefore, its energy flux $F_\odot$ is the Sun's luminosity (total energy emitted by the Sun per second) divided by the Sun's surface area (the number of square meters of surface):

$$F_\odot = \frac{L_\odot}{4\pi R_\odot^2} = \frac{3.90 \times 10^{26}\ \mathrm{W}}{4\pi(6.96 \times 10^8\ \mathrm{m})^2} = 6.41 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-2}}$$

Once we have the Sun's energy flux $F_\odot$ we can use the Stefan-Boltzmann law to find the Sun's surface temperature $T_\odot$:

$$T_\odot^4 = F_\odot/\sigma = 1.13 \times 10^{15}\ \mathrm{K}^4$$

Taking the fourth root (the square root of the square root) of this value, we find the surface temperature of the Sun to be $T_\odot = 5800$ K.

Review: Our result for $T_\odot$ agrees with the value we computed in the previous example using Wien's law. Notice that the solar constant of 1370 W m^{-2} is very much less than $F_\odot$, the flux at the Sun's surface. By the time the Sun's radiation reaches Earth, it is spread over a greatly increased area.

EXAMPLE: Sirius, the brightest star in the night sky, has a surface temperature of about 10,000 K. Find the wavelength at which Sirius emits most intensely.

Situation: Our goal is to calculate the wavelength of maximum emission of Sirius (λ_{max}) from its surface temperature T.

Tools: We use Wien's law to relate the values of λ_{max} and T.

Answer: Using Wien's law,

$$\lambda_{max} = \frac{0.0029\ \mathrm{K\ m}}{T} = \frac{0.0029\ \mathrm{K\ m}}{10{,}000\ \mathrm{K}}$$
$$= 2.9 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{m} = 290\ \mathrm{nm}$$

Review: Our result shows that Sirius emits light most intensely in the ultraviolet. In the visible part of the spectrum, it emits more blue light than red light (like the curve for 12,000 K in Figure 5-11), so Sirius has a distinct blue color.

EXAMPLE: How does the energy flux from Sirius compare to the Sun's energy flux?

Situation: To compare the energy fluxes from the two stars, we want to find the *ratio* of the flux from Sirius to the flux from the Sun.

Tools: We use the Stefan-Boltzmann law to find the flux from Sirius and from the Sun, which from the preceding examples have surface temperatures 10,000 K and 5800 K, respectively.

Answer: For the Sun, the Stefan-Boltzmann law is $F_\odot = \sigma T_\odot^4$, and for Sirius we can likewise write $F_* = \sigma T_*^4$, where the subscripts $\odot$ and $*$ refer to the Sun and Sirius, respectively. If we divide one equation by the other to find the ratio of fluxes, the Stefan-Boltzmann constants cancel out and we get

$$\frac{F_*}{F_\odot} = \frac{T_*^4}{T_\odot^4} = \frac{(10{,}000\ \mathrm{K})^4}{(5800\ \mathrm{K})^4} = \left(\frac{10{,}000}{5800}\right)^4 = 8.8$$

Review: Because Sirius has such a high surface temperature, each square meter of its surface emits 8.8 times more energy per second than a square meter of the Sun's relatively cool surface. Sirius is actually a larger star than the Sun, so it has more square meters of surface area and, hence, its *total* energy output is *more* than 8.8 times that of the Sun.

ergy than a photon of violet light (λ = 400 nm). In this picture, light has a dual personality; it behaves as a stream of particlelike photons, but each photon has wavelike properties. In this sense, the best answer to the question "Is light a wave or a stream of particles?" is "Yes!"

It was soon realized that the photon hypothesis explains more than just the detailed shape of blackbody curves. For example, it explains why only ultraviolet light causes suntans and sunburns. The reason is that tanning or burning involves a chemical reaction in the skin. High-energy, short-wavelength ultraviolet photons can trigger these reactions, but the lower-energy, longer-wavelength photons of visible light cannot. Similarly, normal photographic film is sensitive to visible light but not to infrared light; a long-wavelength infrared photon does not have enough energy to cause the chemical change that occurs when film is exposed to the higher-energy photons of visible light.

WEB LINK 5.5

Another phenomenon explained by the photon hypothesis is the **photoelectric effect.** In this effect, a metal plate is illuminated by a light beam. If ultraviolet light is used, tiny negatively charged particles called **electrons** are emitted from the metal plate. (We will see in Section 5-7 that the electron is one of the basic particles of the atom.) But if visible light is used, no matter how bright, no electrons are emitted.

WEB LINK 5.6

Einstein explained this behavior by noting that a certain minimum amount of energy is required to remove an electron from the metal plate. The energy of a short-wavelength ultraviolet photon is greater than this minimum value, so an electron that absorbs a photon of ultraviolet light will have enough energy to escape from the plate. But an electron that absorbs a photon of visible light, with its longer wavelength and lower energy, does not gain enough energy to escape and so remains within the metal. Einstein and Planck both won Nobel prizes for their contributions to understanding the nature of light.

The Energy of a Photon

The relationship between the energy E of a single photon and the wavelength of the electromagnetic radiation can be expressed in a simple equation:

Energy of a photon (in terms of wavelength)

$$E = \frac{hc}{\lambda}$$

E = energy of a photon

h = Planck's constant

c = speed of light

λ = wavelength of light

The value of the constant h in this equation, now called *Planck's constant,* has been shown in laboratory experiments to be

$$h = 6.625 \times 10^{-34} \text{ J s}$$

The units of h are joules multiplied by seconds, called "joule-seconds" and abbreviated J s.

Because the value of h is so tiny, a single photon carries a very small amount of energy. For example, a photon of red light with wavelength 633 nm has an energy of only 3.14×10^{-19} J (Box 5-3). This is why we ordinarily do not notice that light comes in the form of photons; even a dim light source emits so many photons per second that it seems to be radiating a continuous stream of energy.

The energies of photons are sometimes expressed in terms of a small unit of energy called the **electron volt** (eV). One electron volt is equal to 1.602×10^{-19} J, so a 633-nm photon has an energy of 1.96 eV. If energy is expressed in electron volts, Planck's constant is best expressed in electron volts multiplied by seconds, abbreviated eV s:

$$h = 4.135 \times 10^{-15} \text{ eV s}$$

Because the frequency ν of light is related to the wavelength λ by $\nu = c/\lambda$, we can rewrite the equation for the energy of a photon as

Energy of a photon (in terms of frequency)

$$E = h\nu$$

E = energy of a photon

h = Planck's constant

ν = frequency of light

The equations $E = hc/\lambda$ and $E = h\nu$ are together called **Planck's law.** Both equations express a relationship between a particlelike property of light (the energy E of a photon) and a wavelike property (the wavelength λ or frequency ν).

The photon picture of light is essential for understanding the detailed shapes of blackbody curves. As we will see, it also helps to explain how and why the spectra of the Sun and stars differ from those of perfect blackbodies.

BOX 5-3 The Heavens on the Earth

Photons at the Supermarket

A beam of light can be regarded as a stream of tiny packets of energy called photons. The Planck relationships $E = hc/\lambda$ and $E = h\nu$ can be used to relate the energy E carried by a photon to its wavelength λ and frequency ν.

As an example, the laser bar-code scanners used at stores and supermarkets emit orange-red light of wavelength 633 nm. To calculate the energy of a single photon of this light, we must first express the wavelength in meters. A nanometer (nm) is equal to 10^{-9} m, so the wavelength is

$$\lambda = (633 \text{ nm})\left(\frac{10^{-9} \text{ m}}{1 \text{ nm}}\right) = 633 \times 10^{-9} \text{ m} = 6.33 \times 10^{-7} \text{ m}$$

Then, using the Planck formula $E = hc/\lambda$, we find that the energy of a single photon is

$$E = \frac{hc}{\lambda} = \frac{(6.625 \times 10^{-34} \text{ J s})(3 \times 10^{8} \text{ m/s})}{6.33 \times 10^{-7} \text{ m}} = 3.14 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J}$$

This is a very small amount of energy. The laser in a typical bar-code scanner emits 10^{-3} joule of light energy per second, so the number of photons emitted per second is

$$\frac{10^{-3} \text{ joule per second}}{3.14 \times 10^{-19} \text{ joule per photon}} = 3.2 \times 10^{15} \text{ photons per second}$$

This is such a large number that the laser beam seems like a continuous flow of energy rather than a stream of little energy packets.

5-6 Each chemical element produces its own unique set of spectral lines

In 1814 the German master optician Joseph von Fraunhofer repeated the classic experiment of shining a beam of sunlight through a prism (see Figure 5-3). But this time Fraunhofer subjected the resulting rainbow-colored spectrum to intense magnification. To his surprise, he discovered that the solar spectrum contains hundreds of fine, dark lines, now called **spectral lines.** By contrast, if the light from a perfect blackbody were sent through a prism, it would produce a smooth, continuous spectrum with no dark lines. Fraunhofer counted more than 600 dark lines in the Sun's spectrum; today we know of more than 30,000. The photograph of the Sun's spectrum in Figure 5-13 shows hundreds of these spectral lines.

Spectroscopy is the key to determining the chemical composition of planets and stars

Spectral Analysis

Half a century later, chemists discovered that they could produce spectral lines in the laboratory and use these spectral lines to analyze what kinds of atoms different substances are made of. Chemists had long known that many substances emit distinctive colors when sprinkled into a flame. To facilitate study of these colors, around 1857 the German chemist Robert Bunsen invented a gas burner (today called a Bunsen burner) that produces a clean flame with no color of its own. Bunsen's colleague, the Prussian-born physicist Gustav Kirchhoff, suggested that the colored light produced by substances in a flame might best be studied by passing the light through a prism (Figure 5-14). The two scientists promptly discovered that the spectrum from a flame consists of a pattern of thin, bright spectral lines against a dark background. The same kind of spectrum is produced by heated gases such as neon or argon.

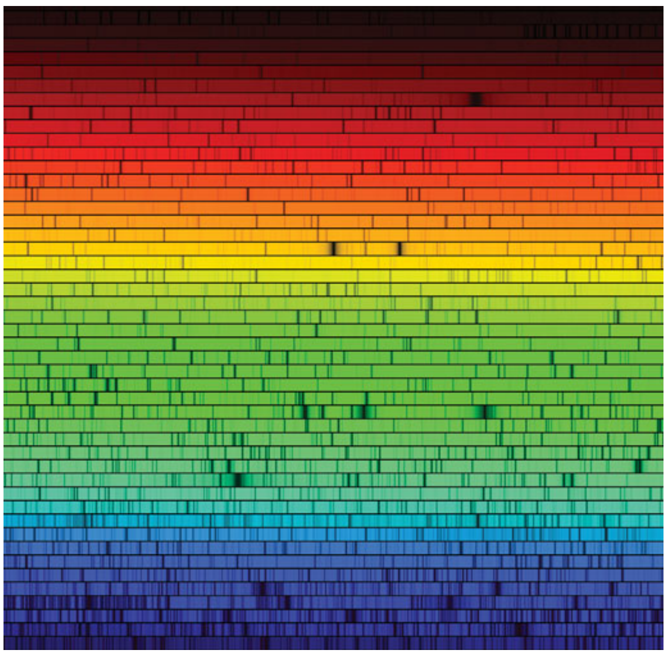


Figure 5-13 R I **V** U X G

The Sun's Spectrum Numerous dark spectral lines are seen in this image of the Sun's spectrum. The spectrum is spread out so much that it had to be cut into segments to fit on this page. (N. A. Sharp, NOAO/NSO/Kitt Peak FTS/AURA/NSF)

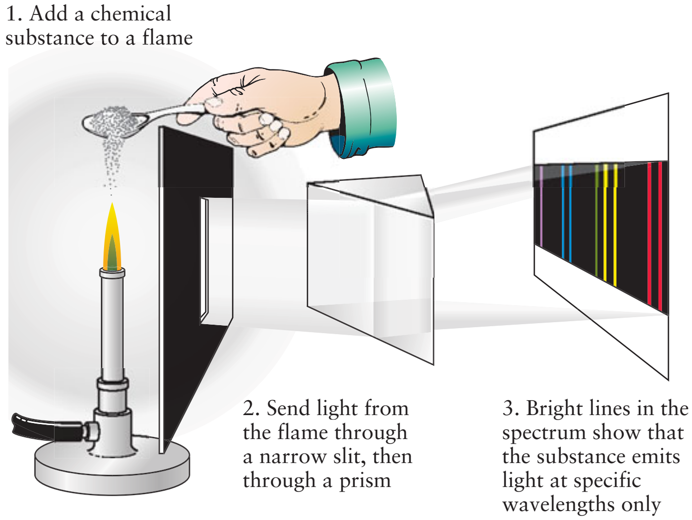


Figure 5-14

The Kirchhoff-Bunsen Experiment In the mid-1850s, Gustav Kirchhoff and Robert Bunsen discovered that when a chemical substance is heated and vaporized, the spectrum of the emitted light exhibits a series of bright spectral lines. They also found that each chemical element produces its own characteristic pattern of spectral lines. (In an actual laboratory experiment, lenses would be needed to focus the image of the slit onto the screen.)

Kirchhoff and Bunsen then found that each chemical element produces its own unique pattern of spectral lines. Thus was born in 1859 the technique of **spectral analysis,** the identification of chemical substances by their unique patterns of spectral lines.

A chemical **element** is a fundamental substance that cannot be broken down into more basic chemicals. Some examples are hydrogen, oxygen, carbon, iron, gold, and silver. After Kirchhoff and Bunsen had recorded the prominent spectral lines of all the then-known elements, they soon began to discover other spectral lines in the spectra of vaporized mineral samples. In this way they discovered elements whose presence had never before been suspected. In 1860, Kirchhoff and Bunsen found a new line in the blue portion of the spectrum of a sample of mineral water. After isolating the previously unknown element responsible for making the line, they named it cesium (from the Latin *caesium,* "gray-blue"). The next year, a new line in the red portion of the spectrum of a mineral sample led them to discover the element rubidium (Latin *rubidium,* "red").

Spectral analysis even allowed the discovery of new elements outside Earth. During the solar eclipse of 1868, astronomers found a new spectral line in light coming from the hot gases at the upper surface of the Sun while the main body of the Sun was hidden by the Moon. This line was attributed to a new element

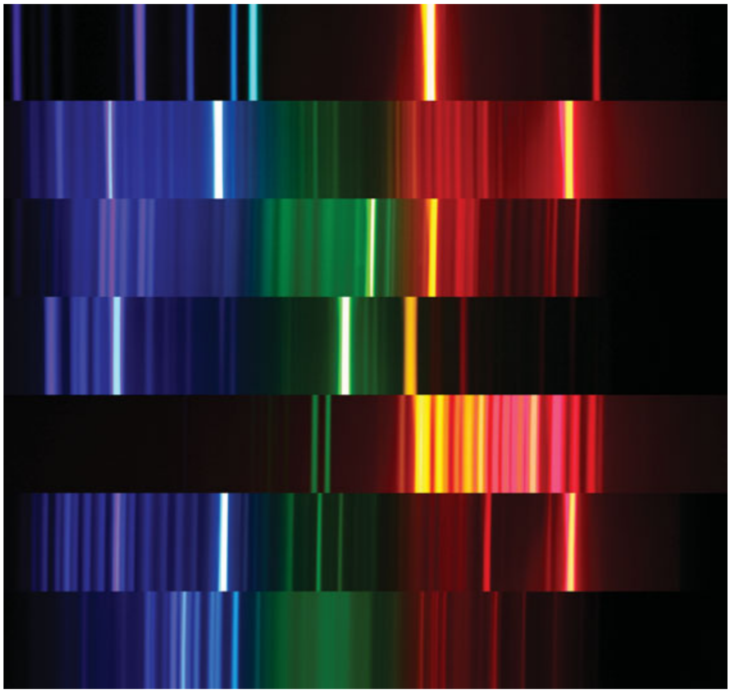


Figure 5-15 R I V U X G

Various Spectra These photographs show the spectra of different types of gases as measured in a laboratory on Earth. Each type of gas has a unique spectrum that is the same wherever in the universe the gas is found. Water vapor (H_2O) is a compound whose molecules are made up of hydrogen and oxygen atoms; the hydrogen molecule (H_2) is made up of two hydrogen atoms. (Ted Kinsman/Science Photo Library)

that was named helium (from the Greek *helios,* "sun"). Helium was not discovered on Earth until 1895, when it was found in gases obtained from a uranium mineral.

A sample of an element contains only a single type of atom; carbon contains only carbon atoms, helium contains only helium atoms, and so on. Atoms of the same or different elements can combine to form **molecules.** For example, two hydrogen atoms (symbol H) can combine with an oxygen atom (symbol O) to form a water molecule (symbol H_2O). Substances like water whose molecules include atoms of different elements are called **compounds.** Just as each type of atom has its own unique spectrum, so does each type of molecule. Figure 5-15 shows the spectra of several types of atoms and molecules.

Kirchhoff's Laws

The spectrum of the Sun, with its dark spectral lines superimposed on a bright background (see Figure 5-13), may seem to be unrelated to the spectra of bright lines against a dark background produced by substances in a flame (see Figure 5-14). But by the early 1860s, Kirchhoff's experiments had revealed a direct connection between these two types of spectra. His conclusions are summarized in three important statements about spectra that are today called **Kirchhoff's laws.** These laws, which are illustrated in Figure 5-16, are as follows:

Law 1 A hot opaque body, such as a perfect blackbody, or a hot, dense gas produces a **continuous spectrum—**a complete rainbow of colors without any spectral lines.

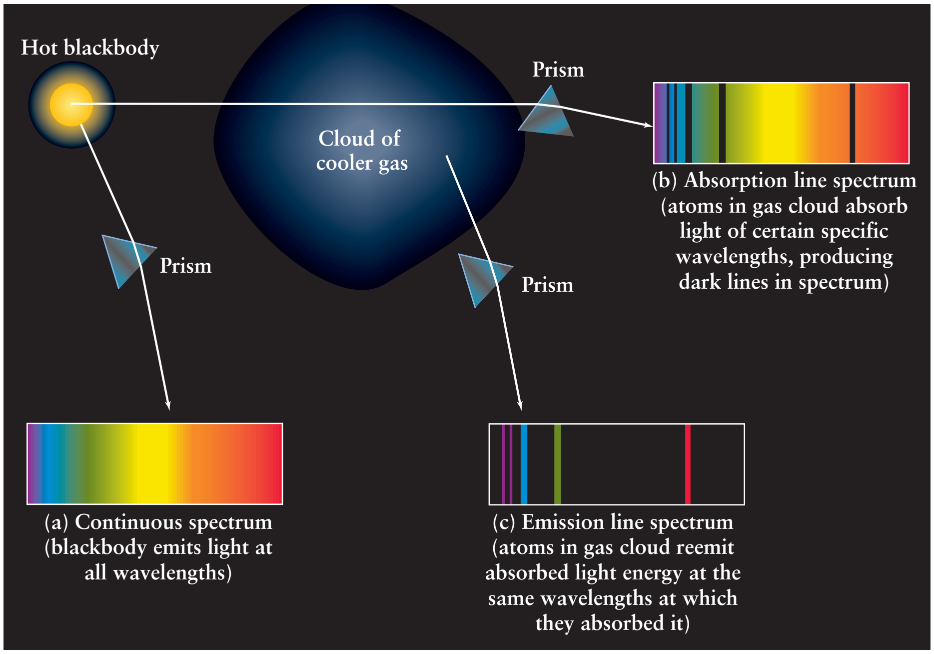
Law 2 A hot, transparent gas produces an **emission line spectrum—**a series of bright spectral lines against a dark background.

Law 3 A cool, transparent gas in front of a source of a continuous spectrum produces an **absorption line spectrum—**a series of dark spectral lines among the colors of the continuous spectrum. Furthermore, the dark lines in the absorption spectrum of a particular gas occur at exactly the *same* wavelengths as the bright lines in the emission spectrum of that same gas.

Kirchhoff's laws imply that if a beam of white light is passed through a gas, the atoms of the gas somehow extract light of very specific wavelengths from the white light. Hence, an observer who looks straight through the gas at the white-light source (the blackbody in Figure 5-16) will receive light whose spectrum has dark absorption lines superimposed on the continuous spectrum of the white light. The gas atoms then radiate light of precisely these same wavelengths in all directions. An observer at an oblique angle (that is, one who is not sighting directly through the cloud toward the blackbody) will receive only this light radiated by the gas cloud; the spectrum of this light is bright emission lines on a dark background.

CAUTION! Figure 5-16 shows that light can either pass through a cloud of gas or be absorbed by the gas. But there is also a third possibility: The light can simply bounce off the atoms or molecules that make up the gas, a phenomenon called **light scattering.** In other words, photons passing through a gas cloud can miss the gas atoms altogether, be swallowed whole by the atoms (absorption), or bounce off the atoms like billiard balls colliding (scattering). Box 5-4 describes how light scattering explains the blue color of the sky and the red color of sunsets.

INTERACTIVE EXERCISE 5.1 Whether an emission line spectrum or an absorption line spectrum is observed from a gas cloud depends on the relative temperatures of the gas cloud and its background. Absorption lines are seen if the background is hotter than the gas, and emission lines are seen if the background is cooler.



ANIMATION 5.1

Figure 5-16

Continuous, Absorption Line, and Emission Line Spectra A hot, opaque body (like a blackbody) emits a continuous spectrum of light (spectrum *a*). If this light is passed through a cloud of a cooler gas, the cloud absorbs light of certain specific wavelengths, and the spectrum of light that passes directly through the cloud has dark absorption lines (spectrum *b*). The cloud does not retain all the light energy that it absorbs but radiates it outward in all directions. The spectrum of this reradiated light contains bright emission lines (spectrum *c*) with exactly the same wavelengths as the dark absorption lines in spectrum *b*. The specific wavelengths observed depend on the chemical composition of the cloud.

For example, if sodium is placed in the flame of a Bunsen burner in a darkened room, the flame will emit a characteristic orange-yellow glow. (This same glow is produced if we use ordinary table salt, which is a compound of sodium and chlorine.) If we pass the light from the flame through a prism, it displays an emission line spectrum with two closely spaced spectral lines at wavelengths of 588.99 and 589.59 nm, in the orange-yellow part of the spectrum. We now turn on a lightbulb whose filament is hotter than the flame and shine the bulb's white light through the flame. The spectrum of this light after it passes through the flame's sodium vapor is the continuous spectrum from the lightbulb, but with two closely spaced *dark* lines at 588.99 and 589.59 nm. Thus, the chemical composition of the gas is revealed by either bright emission lines or dark absorption lines.

Spectroscopy

Spectroscopy is the systematic study of spectra and spectral lines. Spectral lines are tremendously important in astronomy, because they provide reliable evidence about the chemical composition of distant objects. As an example, the spectrum of the Sun shown in Figure 5-13 is an absorption line spectrum. The continuous spectrum comes from the hot surface of the Sun, which acts like a blackbody. The dark absorption lines are caused by this light passing through a cooler gas; this gas is the atmosphere that surrounds the Sun. Therefore, by identifying the spectral lines present in the solar spectrum, we can determine the chemical composition of the Sun's atmosphere.

Figure 5-17 shows both a portion of the Sun's absorption line spectrum and the emission line spectrum of iron vapor over the same wavelength range. This pattern of bright spectral lines in the lower spectrum is iron's own distinctive "fingerprint," which no other substance can imitate. Because some absorption lines in the Sun's spectrum coincide with the iron lines, some vaporized iron must exist in the Sun's atmosphere.

Spectroscopy can also help us analyze gas clouds in space, such as the nebula surrounding the star cluster NGC 346 shown

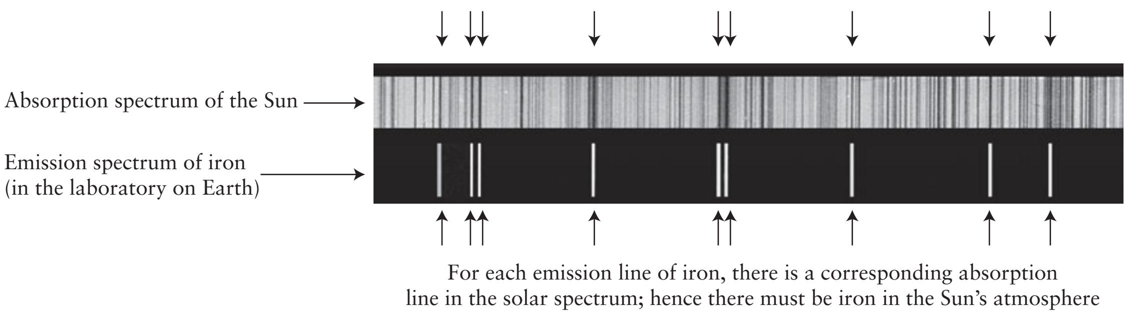


Figure 5-17 R I **V** U X G

Iron in the Sun The upper part of this figure is a portion of the Sun's spectrum at violet wavelengths, showing numerous dark absorption lines. The lower part of the figure is a corresponding portion of the emission line spectrum of vaporized iron. The iron lines coincide with some of the solar lines, which proves that there is some iron (albeit a relatively small amount) in the Sun's atmosphere. (Carnegie Observatories)

BOX 5-4 The Heavens on the Earth

Light Scattering

Light scattering is the process whereby photons bounce off particles in their path. These particles can be atoms, molecules, or clumps of molecules. You are reading these words using photons from the Sun or a lamp that bounced off the page—that is, were scattered by the particles that make up the page.

An important fact about light scattering is that very small particles—ones that are smaller than a wavelength of visible light—are quite effective at scattering short-wavelength photons of blue light, but less effective at scattering long-wavelength photons of red light. This fact explains a number of phenomena that you can see here on Earth.

The light that comes from the daytime sky is sunlight that has been scattered by the molecules that make up our atmosphere (see part *a* of the accompanying figure). Air molecules are less than 1 nm across, far smaller than the wavelength of visible light, so they scatter blue light more than red light—which is why the sky looks blue. Smoke particles are also quite small, which explains why the smoke from a cigarette or a fire has a bluish color.

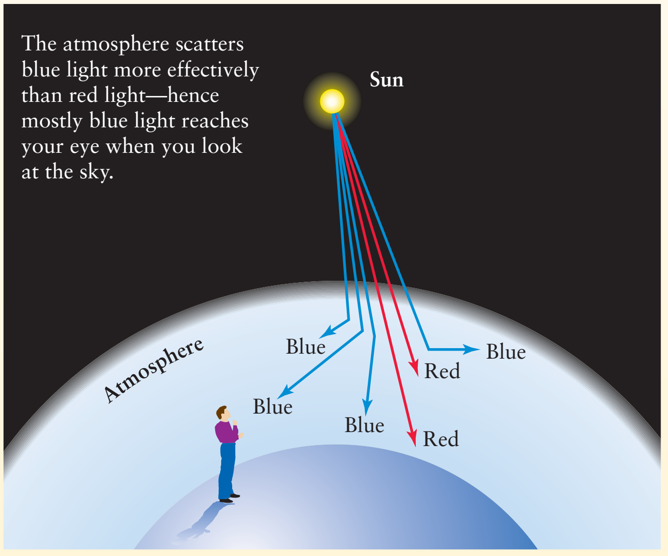
Distant mountains often appear blue thanks to sunlight being scattered from the atmosphere between the mountains and your eyes. (The Blue Ridge Mountains, which extend from Pennsylvania to Georgia, and Australia's Blue Mountains derive their names from this effect.) Sunglasses often have a red or orange tint, which blocks out blue light. This cuts down on the amount of scattered light from the sky reaching your eyes and allows you to see distant objects more clearly.

Light scattering also explains why sunsets are red. The light from the Sun contains photons of all visible wavelengths, but as this light passes through our atmosphere the blue photons are scattered away from the straight-line path from the Sun to your eye. Red photons undergo relatively little scattering, so the Sun always looks a bit redder than it really is. When you look toward the setting sun, the sunlight that reaches your eye has had to pass through a relatively thick layer of atmosphere (part *b* of the accompanying figure). Hence, a large fraction of the blue light from the Sun has been scattered, and the Sun appears quite red.

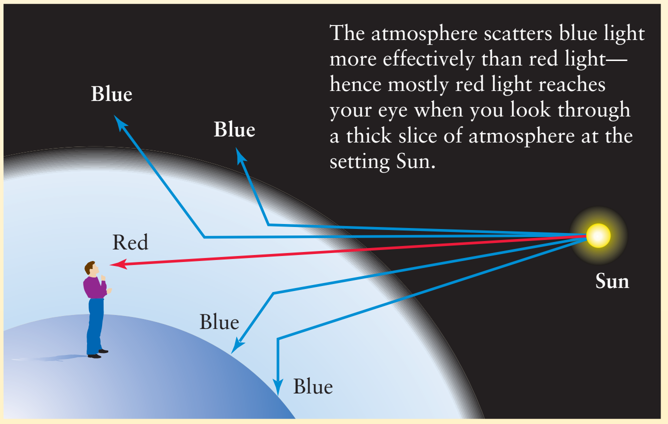
The same effect also applies to sunrises, but sunrises seldom look as red as sunsets do. The reason is that dust is lifted into the atmosphere during the day by the wind (which is typically stronger in the daytime than at night), and dust particles in the atmosphere help to scatter even more blue light.

If the small particles that scatter light are sufficiently concentrated, there will be almost as much scattering of red light as of blue light, and the scattered light will appear white. This explains the white color of clouds, fog, and haze, in which the scattering particles are ice crystals or water droplets. Whole milk looks white because of light scattering from tiny fat globules; nonfat milk has only a very few of these globules and so has a slight bluish cast.

Light scattering has many applications to astronomy. For example, it explains why very distant stars in our Galaxy appear surprisingly red. The reason is that there are tiny dust particles in the space between the stars, and this dust scatters blue photons. By studying how much scattering takes place, astronomers have learned about the tenuous material that fills interstellar space.



(a) Why the sky looks blue



(b) Why the setting Sun looks red

WEB LINK 5.7

Figure 5-18 R I V U X G

Analyzing the Composition of a Distant Nebula The glowing gas cloud in this Hubble Space Telescope image lies 210,000 light-years away in the constellation Tucana (the Toucan). Hot stars within the nebula emit high-energy, ultraviolet photons, which are absorbed by the surrounding gas and heat the gas to high temperature. This heated gas produces light with an emission line spectrum. The particular wavelength of red light emitted by the nebula is 656 nm, characteristic of hydrogen gas. (NASA, ESA, and A. Nota, STScI/ESA)

in Figure 5-18. Such glowing clouds have emission line spectra, because we see them against the black background of space. The particular shade of red that dominates the color of this nebula is due to an emission line at a wavelength near 656 nm. This is one of the characteristic wavelengths emitted by hydrogen gas, so we can conclude that this nebula contains hydrogen. More detailed analyses of this kind show that hydrogen is the most common element in gaseous nebulae, and indeed in the universe as a whole. The spectra of other nebulae, such as the Ring Nebula shown in the image that opens this chapter, also reveal the presence of nitrogen, oxygen, helium, and other gases.

What is truly remarkable about spectroscopy is that it can determine chemical composition at any distance. The 656-nm red light produced by a sample of heated hydrogen gas on Earth (the bright red line in the hydrogen spectrum in Figure 5-15) is the same as that observed coming from the nebula shown in Figure 5-18, located about 210,000 light-years away. By using the basic principles outlined by Kirchhoff, astronomers have the tools to make chemical assays of objects that are almost inconceivably distant. Throughout this book we will see many examples of how astronomers use Kirchhoff's laws to determine the nature of celestial objects.

To make full use of Kirchhoff's laws, it is helpful to understand why they work. Why does an atom absorb light of only particular wavelengths? And why does it then emit light of only these same wavelengths? Maxwell's theory of electromagnetism (see Section 5-2) could not answer these questions. The answers did not come until early in the twentieth century, when scientists began to discover the structure and properties of atoms.

5-7 An atom consists of a small, dense nucleus surrounded by electrons

The first important clue about the internal structure of atoms came from an experiment conducted in 1910 by Ernest Rutherford, a gifted physicist from New Zealand. Rutherford and his colleagues at the University of Manchester in England had been investigating the recently discovered phenomenon of radioactivity. Certain radioactive elements, such as uranium and radium, were known to emit particles of various types. One type, the alpha particle, has about the same mass as a helium atom and is emitted from some radioactive substances with considerable speed.

To decode the information in the light from immense objects like stars and galaxies, we must understand the structure of atoms

In one series of experiments, Rutherford and his colleagues were using alpha particles as projectiles to probe the structure of solid matter. They directed a beam of these particles at a thin sheet of metal (Figure 5-19). Almost all the alpha particles passed through the metal sheet with little or no deflection from their straight-line paths. To the surprise of the experimenters, however, an occasional alpha particle bounced back from the metal sheet as though it had struck something quite dense. Rutherford later remarked, "It was almost as incredible as

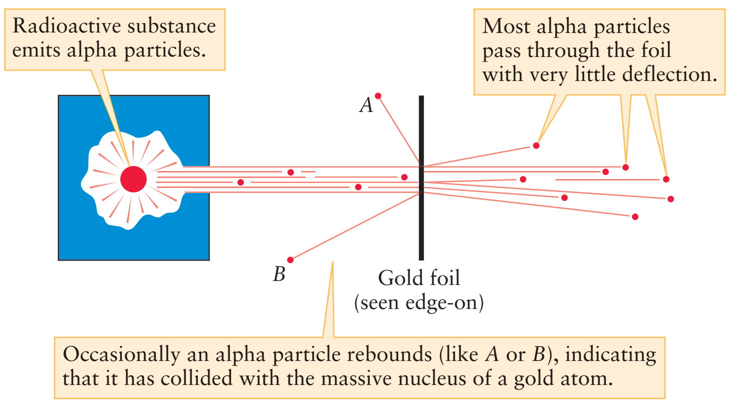


Figure 5-19

Rutherford's Experiment Alpha particles from a radioactive source are directed at a thin metal foil. This experiment provided the first evidence that the nuclei of atoms are relatively massive and compact.

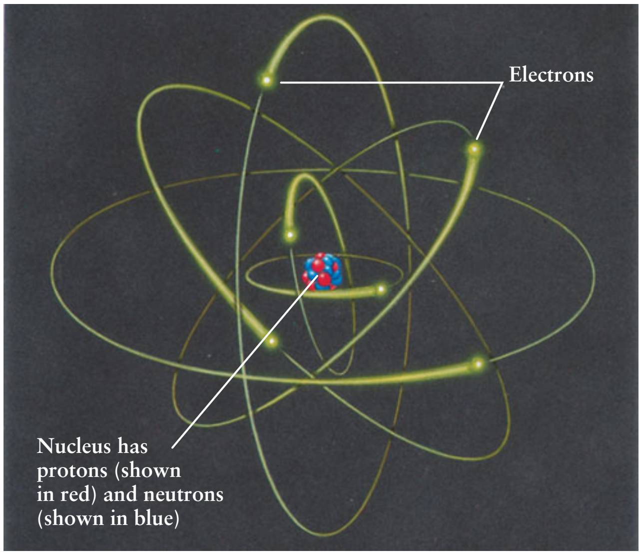


Figure 5-20

Rutherford's Model of the Atom Electrons orbit the atom's nucleus, which contains most of the atom's mass. The nucleus contains two types of particles, protons and neutrons.

if you fired a fifteen-inch shell at a piece of tissue paper and it came back and hit you."

Rutherford concluded from this experiment that most of the mass of an atom is concentrated in a compact, massive lump of matter that occupies only a small part of the atom's volume. Most of the alpha particles pass freely through the nearly empty space that makes up most of the atom, but a few particles happen to strike the dense mass at the center of the atom and bounce back.

The Nucleus of an Atom

Rutherford proposed a new model for the structure of an atom, shown in Figure 5-20. According to this model, a massive, positively charged **nucleus** at the center of the atom is orbited by tiny, negatively charged electrons. Rutherford concluded that at least 99.98% of the mass of an atom must be concentrated in its nucleus, whose diameter is only about 10^{-14} m. (The diameter of a typical atom is far larger, about 10^{-10} m.)

ANALOGY To appreciate just how tiny the nucleus is, imagine expanding an atom by a factor of 10^{12} to a diameter of 100 meters, about the length of a football field. To this scale, the nucleus would be just a centimeter across—no larger than your thumbnail.

We know today that the nucleus of an atom contains two types of particles, **protons** and **neutrons.** A proton has a positive electric charge, equal and opposite to that of an electron. As its name suggests, a neutron has no electric charge—it is electrically neutral. As an example, an alpha particle (such as those Rutherford's team used) is actually a nucleus of the helium atom, with two protons and two neutrons. Protons and neutrons are held together in a nucleus by the so-called strong nuclear force, whose great strength overcomes the electric repulsion between the positively charged protons. A proton and a neutron have almost the same mass, 1.7×10^{-27} kg, and each has about 2000 times as much mass as an electron (9.1×10^{-31} kg). In an ordinary atom there are as many positive protons as there are negative electrons, so the atom has no net electric charge. Because the mass of the electron is so small, the mass of an atom is not much greater than the mass of its nucleus. That is why an alpha particle has nearly the same mass as an atom of helium.

While the solar system is held together by gravitational forces, atoms are held together by electrical forces. The electric forces attracting the positively charged protons and the negatively charged electrons keep the atom from coming apart. Box 5-5 on page 118 describes more about the connection between the structure of atoms and the chemical and physical properties of substances made of those atoms.

Rutherford's experiments clarified the structure of the atom, but they did not explain how these tiny particles within the atom give rise to spectral lines. The task of reconciling Rutherford's atomic model with Kirchhoff's laws of spectral analysis was undertaken by the young Danish physicist Niels Bohr, who joined Rutherford's group at Manchester in 1912.

5-8 Spectral lines are produced when an electron jumps from one energy level to another within an atom

WEB LINK 5.8

Niels Bohr began his study of the connection between atomic spectra and atomic structure by trying to understand the structure of hydrogen, the simplest and lightest of the elements. (As we discussed in Section 5-6, hydrogen is also the most common element in the universe.) When Bohr was done, he had not only found a way to explain this atom's spectrum but had also found a justification for Kirchhoff's laws in terms of atomic physics.

Niels Bohr explained spectral lines with a radical new model of the atom

Hydrogen and the Balmer Series

The most common type of hydrogen atom consists of a single electron and a single proton. Hydrogen atoms have a simple visible-light spectrum consisting of a pattern of lines that begins at a wavelength of 656.3 nm and ends at 364.6 nm. The first spectral line is called H_α (H-alpha), the second spectral line is called H_β (H-beta), the third is H_γ (H-gamma), and so forth. (These are the bright lines in the spectrum of hydrogen shown in Figure 5-15. The fainter lines between these appear when hydrogen atoms form into molecules.) The closer you get to the short-wavelength end of the spectrum at 364.6 nm, the more spectral lines you see.

The regularity in this spectral pattern was described mathematically in 1885 by Johann Jakob Balmer, a Swiss schoolteacher. The spectral lines of hydrogen at visible wavelengths are today called **Balmer lines,** and the entire pattern from H_α onward is called the **Balmer series.** Eight Balmer lines are seen in the spectrum of the star shown in Figure 5-21. Stars in general, including

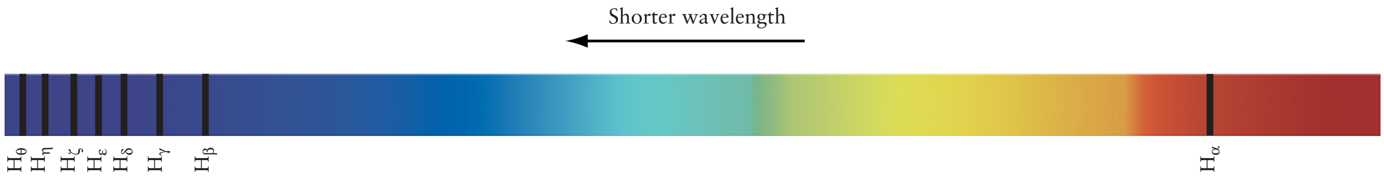


Figure 5-21 R I V U X G

Balmer Lines in the Spectrum of a Star This portion of the spectrum of the star Vega in the constellation Lyra (the Harp) shows eight Balmer lines, from H_α at 656.3 nm through H_θ (H-theta) at 388.9 nm. The series converges at 364.6 nm, slightly to the left of H_θ. (NOAO)

the Sun, have Balmer absorption lines in their spectra, which shows they have atmospheres that contain hydrogen.

Using trial and error, Balmer discovered a formula from which the wavelengths (λ) of hydrogen's spectral lines can be calculated. Balmer's formula is usually written

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right)$$

In this formula R is the *Rydberg constant* ($R = 1.097 \times 10^7$ m^{-1}), named in honor of the Swedish spectroscopist Johannes Rydberg, and n can be any integer (whole number) greater than 2. To get the wavelength λ_α of the spectral line H_α, you first put $n = 3$ into Balmer's formula:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda_\alpha} = (1.097 \times 10^7 \text{ m}^{-1})\left(\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{3^2}\right) = 1.524 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^{-1}$$

Then take the reciprocal:

$$\lambda_\alpha = \frac{1}{1.524 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^{-1}} = 6.563 \times 10^{-7} \text{ m} = 656.3 \text{ nm}$$

To get the wavelength of H_β, use $n = 4$, and to get the wavelength of H_γ, use $n = 5$. If you use $n = \infty$ (the symbol ∞ stands for infinity), you get the short-wavelength end of the hydrogen spectrum at 364.6 nm. (Note that 1 divided by infinity equals zero.)

Bohr's Model of Hydrogen

Bohr realized that to fully understand the structure of the hydrogen atom, he had to be able to derive Balmer's formula using the laws of physics. He first made the rather wild assumption that the electron in a hydrogen atom can orbit the nucleus only in certain specific orbits. (This was a significant break with the ideas of Newton, in whose mechanics any orbit should be possible.) Figure 5-22 shows the four smallest of these **Bohr orbits,** labeled by the numbers $n = 1$, $n = 2$, $n = 3$, and so on.

Although confined to one of these allowed orbits while circling the nucleus, an electron can jump from one Bohr orbit to another. For an electron to do this, the hydrogen atom must gain or lose a specific amount of energy. The atom must absorb energy for the electron to go from an inner to an outer orbit; the atom must release energy for the electron to go from an outer to an inner orbit. As an example, Figure 5-23 shows an electron jumping between the $n = 2$ and $n = 3$ orbits of a hydrogen atom as the atom absorbs or emits an H_α photon.

When the electron jumps from one orbit to another, the energy of the photon that is emitted or absorbed equals the difference in energy between these two orbits. This energy difference, and hence the photon energy, is the same whether the jump is from a low orbit to a high orbit (Figure 5-23*a*) or from the high orbit back to the low one (Figure 5-23*b*). According to Planck and Einstein, if two photons have the same energy E, the relationship $E = hc/\lambda$ tells us that they must also have the same wavelength λ. It follows that if an atom can emit photons of a given energy and wavelength, it can also absorb photons of precisely the same energy and wavelength. Thus, Bohr's picture explains Kirchhoff's observation that atoms emit and absorb the same wavelengths of light.

The Bohr picture also helps us visualize what happens to produce an emission line spectrum. When a gas is heated, its atoms move around rapidly and can collide forcefully with each other. These energetic collisions excite the atoms' electrons into high orbits. The electrons then cascade back down to the innermost

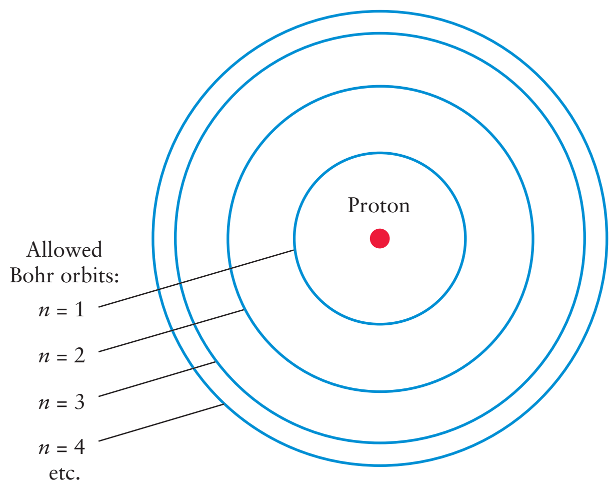


Figure 5-22

The Bohr Model of the Hydrogen Atom In this model, an electron circles the hydrogen nucleus (a proton) only in allowed orbits n = 1, 2, 3, and so forth. The first four Bohr orbits are shown here. This figure is *not* drawn to scale; in the Bohr model, the n = 2, 3, and 4 orbits are respectively 4, 9, and 16 times larger than the n = 1 orbit.

BOX 5-5 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Atoms, the Periodic Table, and Isotopes

WEB LINK 5.9

Each different chemical element is made of a specific type of atom. Each specific atom has a characteristic number of protons in its nucleus. For example, a hydrogen atom has 1 proton in its nucleus, an oxygen atom has 8 protons in its nucleus, and so on.

The number of protons in an atom's nucleus is the **atomic number** for that particular element. The chemical elements are most conveniently listed in the form of a **periodic table** (shown in the figure). Elements are arranged in the periodic table in order of increasing atomic number. With only a few exceptions, this sequence also corresponds to increasing average mass of the atoms of the elements. Thus, hydrogen (symbol H), with atomic number 1, is the lightest element. Iron (symbol Fe) has atomic number 26 and is a relatively heavy element.

All the elements listed in a single vertical column of the periodic table have similar chemical properties. For example, the elements in the far right column are all gases under the conditions of temperature and pressure found at the Earth's surface, and they are all very reluctant to react chemically with other elements.

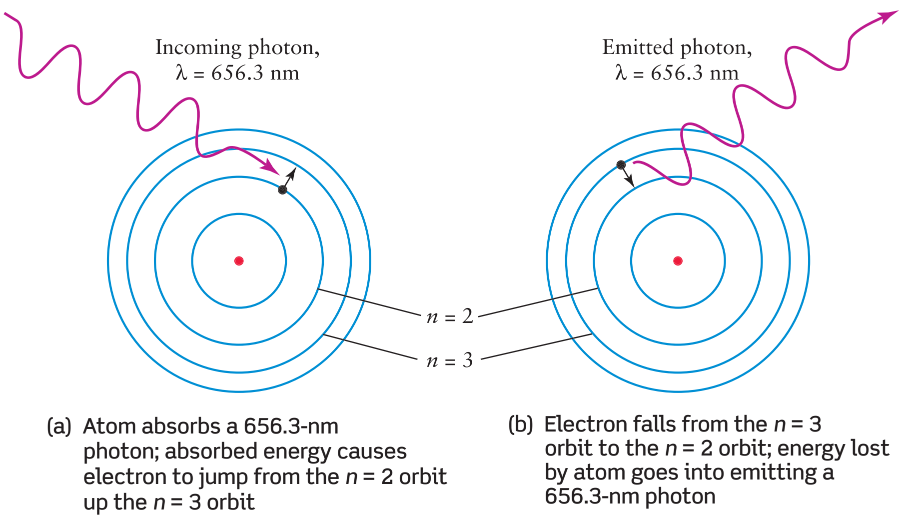
In addition to nearly 100 naturally occurring elements, the periodic table includes a number of artificially produced elements. Most of these elements are heavier than uranium (symbol U) and are highly radioactive, which means that they decay into lighter elements within a short time of being created in laboratory experiments. Scientists have succeeded in creating only a few atoms of elements 104 and above.

The number of protons in the nucleus of an atom determines which element that atom is. Nevertheless, the same element may have different numbers of neutrons in its nucleus. For example, oxygen (O) has atomic number 8, so every oxygen nucleus has exactly 8 protons. But oxygen nuclei can have 8, 9, or 10 neutrons. These three slightly different kinds of oxygen are called **isotopes.** The isotope with 8 neutrons is by far the most abundant variety. It is written as ^{16}O, or oxygen-16. The rarer isotopes with 9 and 10 neutrons are designated as ^{17}O and ^{18}O, respectively.

The superscript that precedes the chemical symbol for an element equals the total number of protons and neutrons in a nucleus of that particular isotope. For example, a nucleus of the most common isotope of iron, ^{56}Fe or iron-56, contains a total of 56 protons and neutrons. From the periodic table, the atomic number of iron is 26, so every iron atom has 26 protons in its nucleus. Therefore, the number of neutrons in an iron-56 nucleus is $56 - 26 = 30$. (Most nuclei have more neutrons than protons, especially in the case of the heaviest elements.)

It is extremely difficult to distinguish chemically between the various isotopes of a particular element. Ordinary chemical reactions involve only the electrons that orbit the atom, never the neutrons buried in its nucleus. But there are small differences in the wavelengths of the spectral lines for different isotopes of the same element. For example, the spectral line wavelengths of the hydrogen isotope ^{2}H are about 0.03% greater than the wavelengths for the most common hydrogen isotope, ^{1}H. Thus, different isotopes can be distinguished by careful spectroscopic analysis.

Isotopes are important in astronomy for a variety of reasons. By measuring the relative amounts of different isotopes of a given element in a Moon rock or meteorite, the age of that sample can be determined. The mixture of isotopes left behind when a star explodes into a supernova (see Section 1-3) tells astronomers about the processes that led to the explosion. And knowing the properties of different isotopes of hydrogen and helium is crucial to understanding the nuclear reactions that make the Sun shine. Look for these and other applications of the idea of isotopes in later chapters.



AIMM 5.2

Figure 5-23

The Absorption and Emission of an H_α Photon This schematic diagram, drawn according to the Bohr model, shows what happens when a hydrogen atom **(a)** absorbs or **(b)** emits a photon whose wavelength is 656.3 nm.

Periodic Table of the Elements

1 H Hydrogen																	2 He Helium
3 Li Lithium	4 Be Beryllium											5 B Boron	6 C Carbon	7 N Nitrogen	8 O Oxygen	9 F Fluorine	10 Ne Neon
11 Na Sodium	12 Mg Magnesium											13 Al Aluminum	14 Si Silicon	15 P Phosphorus	16 S Sulfur	17 Cl Chlorine	18 Ar Argon
19 K Potassium	20 Ca Calcium	21 Sc Scandium	22 Ti Titanium	23 V Vanadium	24 Cr Chromium	25 Mn Manganese	26 Fe Iron	27 Co Cobalt	28 Ni Nickel	29 Cu Copper	30 Zn Zinc	31 Ga Gallium	32 Ge Germanium	33 As Arsenic	34 Se Selenium	35 Br Bromine	36 Kr Kryton
37 Rb Rubidium	38 Sr Strontium	39 Y Yttrium	40 Zr Zirconium	41 Nb Niobium	42 Mo Molybdenum	43 Tc Technetium	44 Ru Ruthenium	45 Rh Rhodium	46 Pd Palladium	47 Ag Silver	48 Cd Cadmium	49 In Indium	50 Sn Tin	51 Sb Antimony	52 Te Tellurium	53 I Iodine	54 Xe Xenon
55 Cs Cesium	56 Ba Barium	57 La Lanthanum	72 Hf Hafnium	73 Ta Tantaium	74 W Tungsten	75 Re Rhenium	76 Os Osmium	77 Ir Iridium	78 Pt Platinum	79 Au Gold	80 Hg Mercury	81 Tl Thallium	82 Pb Lead	83 Bi Bismuth	84 Po Polonium	85 At Astatine	86 Rn Radon
87 Fr Francium	88 Ra Radium	89 Ac Actinium	104 Rf Rutherfordium	105 Db Dubnium	106 Sg Seaborgium	107 Bh Bohrium	108 Hs Hassium	109 Mt Meitnerium	110 Ds Darmstadium	111 Rg Roentgenium	112 Uub Ununbium	113 Uut Ununtium	114 Uug Ununguadium	115 Uup Ununpentium	116 Uuh Ununhexium		

58 Ce Cerium	59 Pr Praseodymium	60 Nd Neodymium	61 Pm Promethium	62 Sm Samarium	63 Eu Europium	64 Gd Gadolinium	65 Tb Terbium	66 Dy Dysprosium	67 Ho Holmium	68 Er Erbium	69 Tm Thulium	70 Yb Ytterbium	71 Lu Lutetium
90 Th Thorium	91 Pa Protactinium	92 U Uranium	93 Np Neptunium	94 Pu Plutonium	95 Am Americium	96 Cm Curium	97 Bk Berkelium	98 Cf Californium	99 Es Einsteinium	100 Fm Fermium	101 Md Mendelevium	102 No Nobelium	103 Lr Lawrencium

possible orbit, emitting photons whose energies are equal to the energy differences between different Bohr orbits. In this fashion, a hot gas produces an emission line spectrum with a variety of different wavelengths.

To produce an absorption line spectrum, begin with a relatively cool gas, so that the electrons in most of the atoms are in inner, low-energy orbits. If a beam of light with a continuous spectrum is shone through the gas, most wavelengths will pass through undisturbed. Only those photons will be absorbed whose energies are just right to excite an electron to an allowed outer orbit. Hence, only certain wavelengths will be absorbed, and dark lines will appear in the spectrum at those wavelengths.

Using his picture of allowed orbits and the formula $E = hc/\lambda$, Bohr was able to prove mathematically that the wavelength λ of the photon emitted or absorbed as an electron jumps between an inner orbit N and an outer orbit n is

Bohr formula for hydrogen wavelengths

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{N^2} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right)$$

N = number of inner orbit

n = number of outer orbit

R = Rydberg constant = $1.097 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{m}^{-1}$

λ = wavelength (in meters) of emitted or absorbed photon

If Bohr let $N = 2$ in this formula, he got back the formula that Balmer discovered by trial and error. Hence, Bohr deduced the meaning of the Balmer series: All the Balmer lines are produced by electrons jumping between the second Bohr orbit

INTERACTIVE EXERCISE 5.2

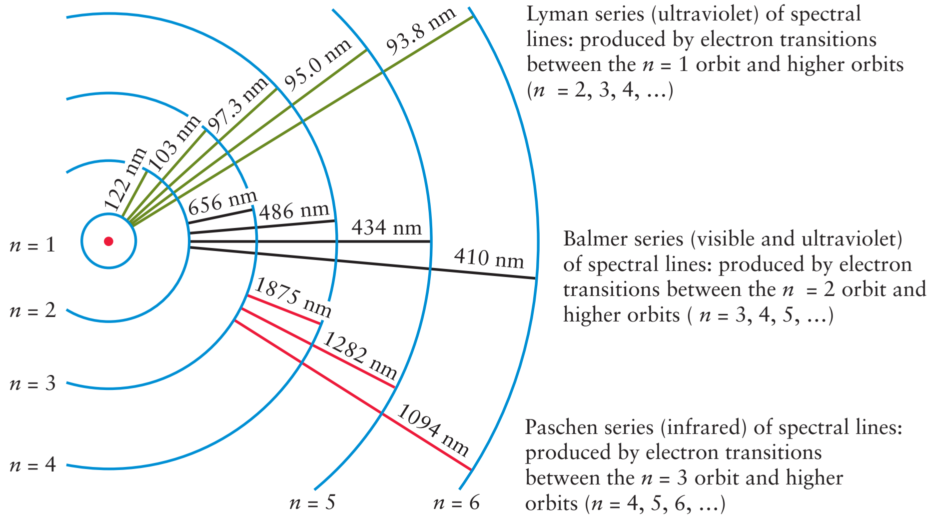


Figure 5-24

Electron Transitions in the Hydrogen Atom This diagram shows the photon wavelengths associated with different electron transitions in hydrogen. In each case, the same wavelength occurs whether a photon is emitted (when the electron drops from a high orbit to a low one) or absorbed (when the electron jumps from a low orbit to a high one). The orbits are not shown to scale.

($N = 2$) and higher orbits ($n = 3, 4, 5$, and so on). Remarkably, as part of his calculation Bohr was able to *derive* the value of the Rydberg constant in terms of Planck's constant, the speed of light, and the mass and electric charge of the electron. This gave particular credence to his radical model.

Bohr's formula also correctly predicts the wavelengths of other series of spectral lines that occur at nonvisible wavelengths (Figure 5-24). Using $N = 1$ gives the **Lyman series,** which is entirely in the ultraviolet. All the spectral lines in this series involve electron transitions between the lowest Bohr orbit and all higher orbits ($n = 2, 3, 4$, and so on). This pattern of spectral lines begins with L_α (Lyman alpha) at 122 nm and converges on L_∞ at 91.2 nm. Using $N = 3$ gives a series of infrared wavelengths called the **Paschen series.** This series, which involves transitions between the third Bohr orbit and all higher orbits, begins with P_α (Paschen alpha) at 1875 nm and converges on P_∞ at 822 nm. Additional series exist at still longer wavelengths.

Atomic Energy Levels

Today's view of the atom owes much to the Bohr model, but is different in certain ways. The modern picture is based on **quantum mechanics,** a branch of physics developed during the 1920s that deals with photons and subatomic particles. As a result of this work, physicists no longer picture electrons as moving in specific orbits about the nucleus. Instead, electrons are now known to have both particle and wave properties and are said to occupy only certain **energy levels** in the atom.

An extremely useful way of displaying the structure of an atom is with an **energy-level diagram.** Figure 5-25 shows such a diagram for hydrogen. The lowest energy level, called the **ground state,** corresponds to the $n = 1$ Bohr orbit. Higher energy levels, called **excited states,** correspond to successively larger Bohr orbits.

An electron can jump from the ground state up to the $n = 2$ level if the atom absorbs a Lyman-alpha photon with a wavelength of 122 nm. Such a photon has energy $E = hc/\lambda = 10.2$ eV (electron volts; see Section 5-5). That's why the energy level of $n = 2$ is shown in Figure 5-25 as having an energy 10.2 eV above that of the ground state (which is usually assigned a value of 0 eV). Similarly, the $n = 3$ level is 12.1 eV above the ground state, and so forth. Electrons can make transitions to higher energy levels by absorbing a photon or in a collision between atoms; they can make transitions to lower energy levels by emitting a photon.

On the energy-level diagram for hydrogen, the $n = \infty$ level has an energy of 13.6 eV. (This corresponds to an infinitely large orbit in the Bohr model.) If the electron is initially in the ground state and the atom absorbs a photon of any energy greater than 13.6 eV, the electron will be removed completely from the atom. This process is called **ionization.** A 13.6-eV photon has a wave-

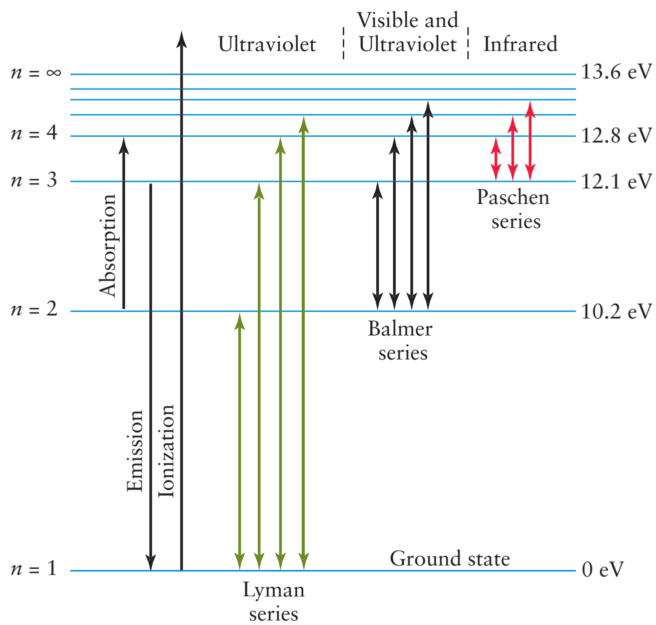


Figure 5-25

Energy-Level Diagram of Hydrogen A convenient way to display the structure of the hydrogen atom is in a diagram like this, which shows the allowed energy levels. The diagram shows a number of possible electron jumps, or transitions, between energy levels. An upward transition occurs when the atom absorbs a photon; a downward transition occurs when the atom emits a photon. (Compare with Figure 5-24.)

length of 91.2 nm, equal to the shortest wavelength in the ultraviolet Lyman series (L_∞). So any photon with a wavelength of 91.2 nm or less can ionize hydrogen. (The Planck formula $E = hc/\lambda$ tells us that the higher the photon energy, the shorter the wavelength.)

As an example, the gaseous nebula shown in Figure 5-18 surrounds a cluster of hot stars which produce copious amounts of ultraviolet photons with wavelengths less than 91.2 nm. Hydrogen atoms in the nebula that absorb these photons become ionized and lose their electrons. When the electrons recombine with the nuclei, they cascade down the energy levels to the ground state and emit visible light in the process. This is what makes the nebula glow.

The Spectra of Other Elements

LOOKING DEEPER 5.1

The same basic principles that explain the hydrogen spectrum also apply to the atoms of other elements. Electrons in each kind of atom can be only in certain energy levels, so only photons of certain wavelengths can be emitted or absorbed. Because each kind of atom has its own unique arrangement of electron levels, the pattern of spectral lines is likewise unique to that particular type of atom (see the photograph that opens this chapter). These patterns are in general much more complicated than for the hydrogen atom. Hence, there is no simple relationship analogous to the Bohr formula that applies to the spectra of all atoms.

The idea of energy levels explains the emission line spectra and absorption line spectra of gases. But what about the continuous spectra produced by dense objects like the filament of a lightbulb or the coils of a toaster? These objects are made of atoms, so why don't they emit light with an emission line spectrum characteristic of the particular atoms of which they are made?

The reason is directly related to the difference between a gas on the one hand and a liquid or solid on the other. In a gas, atoms are widely separated and can emit photons without interference from other atoms. But in a liquid or a solid, atoms are so close that they almost touch, and thus these atoms interact strongly with each other. These interactions interfere with the process of emitting photons. As a result, the pattern of distinctive bright spectral lines that the atoms would emit in isolation becomes "smeared out" into a continuous spectrum.

ANALOGY Think of atoms as being like tuning forks. If you strike a single tuning fork, it produces a sound wave with a single clear frequency and wavelength, just as an isolated atom emits light of definite wavelengths. But if you shake a box packed full of tuning forks, you will hear a clanging noise that is a mixture of sounds of all different frequencies and wavelengths. This is directly analogous to the continuous spectrum of light emitted by a dense object with closely packed atoms.

With the work of such people as Planck, Einstein, Rutherford, and Bohr, the interchange between astronomy and physics came full circle. Modern physics was born when Newton set out to understand the motions of the planets. Two and a half centuries later, physicists in their laboratories probed the properties of light and the structure of atoms. Their labors had immediate applications in astronomy. Armed with this new understanding of light and matter, astronomers were able to probe in detail the chemical and physical properties of planets, stars, and galaxies.

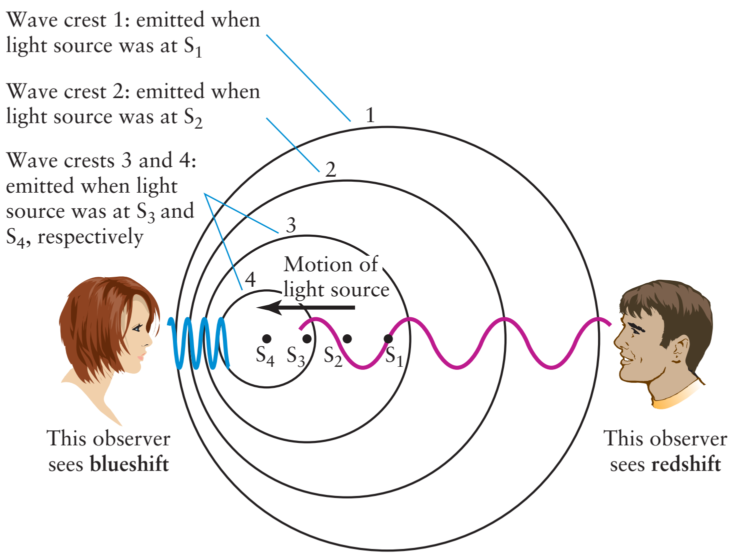
5-9 The wavelength of a spectral line is affected by the relative motion between the source and the observer

In addition to telling us about temperature and chemical composition, the spectrum of a planet, star, or galaxy can also reveal something about that object's motion through space. This idea dates from 1842, when Christian Doppler, a professor of mathematics in Prague, pointed out that the observed wavelength of light must be affected by motion.

The Doppler effect makes it possible to tell whether astronomical objects are moving toward us or away from us

The Doppler Effect

In Figure 5-26 a light source is moving from right to left; the circles represent the crests of waves emitted from the moving source at various positions. Each successive wave crest is emitted from a position slightly closer to the observer on the left, so she sees a shorter wavelength—the distance from one crest to the next—than she would if the source were stationary. All the lines in the spectrum



AIMM 5.3

Figure 5-26

The Doppler Effect The wavelength of light is affected by motion between the light source and an observer. The light source shown here is moving, so wave crests 1, 2, etc., emitted when the source was at points S_1, S_2, etc., are crowded together in front of the source but are spread out behind it. Consequently, wavelengths are shortened (blueshifted) if the source is moving toward the observer and lengthened (redshifted) if the source is moving away from the observer. Motion perpendicular to an observer's line of sight does not affect wavelength.

BOX 5-6 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Applications of the Doppler Effect

Doppler's formula relates the radial velocity of an astronomical object to the wavelength shift of its spectral lines. Here are two examples that show how to use this remarkably powerful formula.

EXAMPLE: As measured in the laboratory, the prominent H_α spectral line of hydrogen has a wavelength $\lambda_0 = 656.285$ nm. But in the spectrum of the star Vega (Figure 5-21), this line has a wavelength $\lambda = 656.255$ nm. What can we conclude about the motion of Vega?

Situation: Our goal is to use the ideas of the Doppler effect to find the velocity of Vega toward or away from Earth.

Tools: We use the Doppler shift formula, $\Delta\lambda/\lambda_0 = v/c$, to determine Vega's velocity v.

Answer: The wavelength shift is

$$\Delta\lambda = \lambda - \lambda_0 = 656.255 \text{ nm} - 656.285 \text{ nm} = -0.030 \text{ nm}$$

The negative value means that we see the light from Vega shifted to shorter wavelengths—that is, there is a blueshift. (Note that the shift is very tiny and can be measured only using specialized equipment.) From the Doppler shift formula, the star's radial velocity is

$$v = c\frac{\Delta\lambda}{\lambda_0} = (3.00 \times 10^5 \text{ km/s})\left(\frac{-0.030 \text{ nm}}{656.285 \text{ nm}}\right) = -14 \text{ km/s}$$

Review: The minus sign indicates that Vega is coming toward us at 14 km/s. The star may also be moving perpendicular to the line from Earth to Vega, but such motion produces no Doppler shift.

By plotting the motions of stars such as Vega toward and away from us, astronomers have been able to learn how the Milky Way Galaxy (of which our Sun is a part) is rotating. From this knowledge, and aided by Newton's universal law of gravitation (see Section 4-7), they have made the surprising discovery that the Milky Way contains roughly 10 times more matter than had once been thought! The nature of this unseen *dark matter* is still a subject of debate.

EXAMPLE: In the radio region of the electromagnetic spectrum, hydrogen atoms emit and absorb photons with a wavelength of 21.12 cm, giving rise to a spectral feature commonly called the *21-centimeter line*. The galaxy NGC 3840 in the constellation Leo (the Lion) is receding from us at a speed of 7370 km/s, or about 2.5% of the speed of light. At what wavelength do we expect to detect the 21-cm line from this galaxy?

Situation: Given the velocity of NGC 3840 away from us, our goal is to find the wavelength as measured on Earth of the 21-centimeter line from this galaxy.

Tools: We use the Doppler shift formula to calculate the wavelength shift $\Delta\lambda$, then use this to find the wavelength λ measured on Earth.

Answer: The wavelength shift is

$$\Delta\lambda = \lambda_0\left(\frac{v}{c}\right) = (21.12 \text{ cm})\left(\frac{7370 \text{ km/s}}{3.00 \times 10^5 \text{ km/s}}\right) = 0.52 \text{ cm}$$

Therefore, we will detect the 21-cm line of hydrogen from this galaxy at a wavelength of

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \Delta\lambda = 21.12 \text{ cm} + 0.52 \text{ cm} = 21.64 \text{ cm}$$

Review: The 21-cm line has been redshifted to a longer wavelength because the galaxy is receding from us. In fact, most galaxies are receding from us. This observation is one of the key pieces of evidence that the universe is expanding, and has been doing so since the Big Bang that took place almost 14 billion years ago.

of an approaching source are shifted toward the short-wavelength (blue) end of the spectrum. This phenomenon is called a **blueshift.**

The source is receding from the observer on the right in Figure 5-26. The wave crests that reach him are stretched apart, so that he sees a longer wavelength than he would if the source were stationary. All the lines in the spectrum of a receding source are shifted toward the longer-wavelength (red) end of the spectrum, producing a **redshift.** In general, the effect of relative motion on wavelength is called the **Doppler effect.** Police radar guns use the Doppler effect to check for cars exceeding the speed limit: the radar gun sends a radio wave toward the car, and measures the wavelength shift of the reflected wave (and thus the speed of the car).

ANALOGY You have probably noticed a similar Doppler effect for sound waves. When a police car is approaching, the sound waves from its siren have a shorter wavelength and higher frequency than if the siren were at rest, and hence you hear a higher pitch. After the police car passes you and is moving away, you hear a lower pitch from the siren because the sound waves have a longer wavelength and a lower frequency.

Suppose that λ_0 is the wavelength of a particular spectral line from a light source that is not moving. It is the wavelength that you might look up in a reference book or determine in a laboratory experiment for this spectral line. If the source is moving, this particular spectral line is shifted to a different wavelength λ. The size of the wavelength shift is usually written as $\Delta\lambda$, where $\Delta\lambda = \lambda - \lambda_0$. Thus, $\Delta\lambda$ is the difference between the wavelength listed in reference books and the wavelength that you actually observe in the spectrum of a star or galaxy.

Doppler proved that the wavelength shift ($\Delta\lambda$) is governed by the following simple equation:

Doppler shift equation

$$\frac{\Delta\lambda}{\lambda_0} = \frac{v}{c}$$

$\Delta\lambda$ = wavelength shift

λ_0 = wavelength if source is not moving

v = velocity of the source measured along the line of sight

c = speed of light = 3.0×10^5 km/s

CAUTION! The capital Greek letter Δ (delta) is commonly used to denote a change in the value of a quantity. Thus, $\Delta\lambda$ is the change in the wavelength λ due to the Doppler effect. It is *not* equal to a quantity Δ multiplied by a second quantity λ!

Interpreting the Doppler Effect

The velocity determined from the Doppler effect is called **radial velocity,** because v is the component of the star's motion parallel to our line of sight, or along the "radius" drawn from Earth to the star. Of course, a sizable fraction of a star's motion may be perpendicular to our line of sight. The speed of this transverse movement across the sky does not affect wavelengths if the speed is small compared with c. Box 5-6 includes two examples of calculations with radial velocity using the Doppler formula.

CAUTION! The redshifts and blueshifts of stars visible to the naked eye, or even through a small telescope, are only a small fraction of a nanometer. These tiny wavelength changes are far too small to detect visually. (Astronomers were able to detect the tiny Doppler shifts of starlight only after they had developed highly sensitive equipment for measuring wavelengths. This was done around 1890, a half-century after Doppler's original proposal.) So, if you see a star with a red color, it means that the star really is red; it does *not* mean that it is moving rapidly away from us.

The Doppler effect is an important tool in astronomy because it uncovers basic information about the motions of planets, stars, and galaxies. For example, the rotation of the planet Venus was deduced from the Doppler shift of radar waves reflected from its surface. Small Doppler shifts in the spectrum of sunlight have shown that the entire Sun is vibrating like an immense gong. The back-and-forth Doppler shifting of the spectral lines of certain stars reveals that these stars are being orbited by unseen companions; from this astronomers have discovered planets around other stars and massive objects that may be black holes. Astronomers also use the Doppler effect along with Kepler's third law to measure the masses of galaxies. These are but a few examples of how Doppler's discovery has empowered astronomers in their quest to understand the universe.

In this chapter we have glimpsed how much can be learned by analyzing light from the heavens. To analyze this light, however, it is first necessary to collect as much of it as possible, because most light sources in space are very dim. Collecting the faint light from distant objects is a key purpose of telescopes. In the next chapter we will describe both how telescopes work and how they are used.

Key Words

Terms preceded by an asterisk (*) are discussed in the Boxes.

absolute zero, p. 104
absorption line spectrum, p. 112
atom, p. 104
*atomic number, p. 118
Balmer line, p. 116
Balmer series, p. 116
blackbody, p. 106
blackbody curve, p. 106
blackbody radiation, p. 106
blueshift, p. 122
Bohr orbits, p. 117
compound, p. 112
continuous spectrum, p. 112
*degrees Celsius, p. 105
*degrees Fahrenheit, p. 105
Doppler effect, p. 122
electromagnetic radiation, p. 101
electromagnetic spectrum, p. 102
electromagnetism, p. 100
electron, p. 109
electron volt, p. 110
element, p. 111
emission line spectrum, p. 112
energy flux, p. 107
energy level, p. 120
energy-level diagram, p. 120
excited state, p. 120
frequency, p. 102
gamma rays, p. 102
ground state, p. 120
infrared radiation, p. 101
ionization, p. 120
*isotope, p. 118
joule, p. 107
kelvin, p. 104
Kirchhoff's laws, p. 112
light scattering, p. 112
*luminosity, p. 108
Lyman series, p. 120
microwaves, p. 102
molecule, p. 112
nanometer, p. 101
neutron, p. 116
nucleus, p. 116
Paschen series, p. 120
*periodic table, p. 118
photoelectric effect, p. 109
photon, p. 108
Planck's law, p. 110
proton, p. 116
quantum mechanics, p. 120
radial velocity, p. 123
radio waves, p. 101
redshift, p. 122
*solar constant, p. 108
spectral analysis, p. 111
spectral line, p. 111
spectroscopy, p. 113
spectrum (*plural* spectra), p. 99
Stefan-Boltzmann law, p. 107
ultraviolet radiation, p. 102
visible light, p. 101
watt, p. 107
wavelength, p. 101
wavelength of maximum emission, p. 105
Wien's law, p. 107
X rays, p. 102

Key Ideas

The Nature of Light: Light is electromagnetic radiation. It has wavelike properties described by its wavelength λ and frequency ν, and travels through empty space at the constant speed $c = 3.0 \times 10^8$ m/s $= 3.0 \times 10^5$ km/s.

Blackbody Radiation: A blackbody is a hypothetical object that is a perfect absorber of electromagnetic radiation at all wavelengths. Stars closely approximate the behavior of blackbodies, as do other hot, dense objects.

• The intensities of radiation emitted at various wavelengths by a blackbody at a given temperature are shown by a blackbody curve.

• Wien's law states that the dominant wavelength at which a blackbody emits electromagnetic radiation is inversely proportional to the Kelvin temperature of the object: λ_{max} (in meters) = (0.0029 K m)/T.

• The Stefan-Boltzmann law states that a blackbody radiates electromagnetic waves with a total energy flux F directly proportional to the fourth power of the Kelvin temperature T of the object: $F = \sigma T^4$.

Photons: An explanation of blackbody curves led to the discovery that light has particlelike properties. The particles of light are called photons.

• Planck's law relates the energy E of a photon to its frequency ν or wavelength λ: $E = h\nu = hc/\lambda$, where h is Planck's constant.

Kirchhoff's Laws: Kirchhoff's three laws of spectral analysis describe conditions under which different kinds of spectra are produced.

• A hot, dense object such as a blackbody emits a continuous spectrum covering all wavelengths.

• A hot, transparent gas produces a spectrum that contains bright (emission) lines.

• A cool, transparent gas in front of a light source that itself has a continuous spectrum produces dark (absorption) lines in the continuous spectrum.

Atomic Structure: An atom has a small dense nucleus composed of protons and neutrons. The nucleus is surrounded by electrons that occupy only certain orbits or energy levels.

• When an electron jumps from one energy level to another, it emits or absorbs a photon of appropriate energy (and hence of a specific wavelength).

• The spectral lines of a particular element correspond to the various electron transitions between energy levels in atoms of that element.

• Bohr's model of the atom correctly predicts the wavelengths of hydrogen's spectral lines.

The Doppler Shift: The Doppler shift enables us to determine the radial velocity of a light source from the displacement of its spectral lines.

• The spectral lines of an approaching light source are shifted toward short wavelengths (a blueshift); the spectral lines of a receding light source are shifted toward long wavelengths (a redshift).

• The size of a wavelength shift is proportional to the radial velocity of the light source relative to the observer.

Questions

Review Questions

1. When Jupiter is undergoing retrograde motion as seen from Earth, would you expect the eclipses of Jupiter's moons to occur several minutes early, several minutes late, or neither? Explain.
2. Approximately how many times around the Earth could a beam of light travel in one second?
3. How long does it take light to travel from the Sun to the Earth, a distance of 1.50×10^8 km?
4. How did Newton show that a prism breaks white light into its component colors, but does not add any color to the light?
5. For each of the following wavelengths, state whether it is in the radio, microwave, infrared, visible, ultraviolet, X-ray, or gamma-ray portion of the electromagnetic spectrum. Explain your reasoning. (**a**) 2.6 μm, (**b**) 34 m, (**c**) 0.54 nm, (**d**) 0.0032 nm, (**e**) 0.620 μm, (**f**) 310 nm, (**g**) 0.012 m.
6. What is meant by the frequency of light? How is frequency related to wavelength?
7. A cellular phone is actually a radio transmitter and receiver. You receive an incoming call in the form of a radio wave of frequency 880.65 MHz. What is the wavelength (in meters) of this wave?
8. A light source emits infrared radiation at a wavelength of 1150 nm. What is the frequency of this radiation?
9. (**a**) What is a blackbody? (**b**) In what way is a blackbody black? (**c**) If a blackbody is black, how can it emit light? (**d**) If you were to shine a flashlight beam on a perfect blackbody, what would happen to the light?
10. Why do astronomers find it convenient to use the Kelvin temperature scale in their work rather than the Celsius or Fahrenheit scale?
11. Explain why astronomers are interested in blackbody radiation.
12. Using Wien's law and the Stefan-Boltzmann law, explain the color and intensity changes that are observed as the temperature of a hot, glowing object increases.
13. If you double the Kelvin temperature of a hot piece of steel, how much more energy will it radiate per second?
14. The bright star Bellatrix in the constellation Orion has a surface temperature of 21,500 K. What is its wavelength of maximum emission in nanometers? What color is this star?
15. The bright star Antares in the constellation Scorpius (the Scorpion) emits the greatest intensity of radiation at a wavelength of 853 nm. What is the surface temperature of Antares? What color is this star?
16. (**a**) Describe an experiment in which light behaves like a wave. (**b**) Describe an experiment in which light behaves like a particle.
17. How is the energy of a photon related to its wavelength? What kind of photons carry the most energy? What kind of photons carry the least energy?
18. To emit the same amount of light energy per second, which must emit more photons per second: a source of red light, or a source of blue light? Explain.
19. Explain how we know that atoms have massive, compact nuclei.
20. (**a**) Describe the spectrum of hydrogen at visible wavelengths. (**b**) Explain how Bohr's model of the atom accounts for the Balmer lines.
21. Why do different elements display different patterns of lines in their spectra?

22. What is the Doppler effect? Why is it important to astronomers?
23. If you see a blue star, what does its color tell you about how the star is moving through space? Explain your answer.

Advanced Questions

Questions preceded by an asterisk (*) involve topics discussed in the Boxes.

Problem-solving tips and tools

You can find formulas in Box 5-1 for converting between temperature scales. Box 5-2 discusses how a star's radius, luminosity, and surface temperature are related. Box 5-3 shows how to use Planck's law to calculate the energy of a photon. To learn how to do calculations using the Doppler effect, see Box 5-6.

24. Your normal body temperature is 98.6°F. What kind of radiation do you predominantly emit? At what wavelength (in nm) do you emit the most radiation?
25. What is the temperature of the Sun's surface in degrees Fahrenheit?
26. What wavelength of electromagnetic radiation is emitted with greatest intensity by this book? To what region of the electromagnetic spectrum does this wavelength correspond?
27. Black holes are objects whose gravity is so strong that not even an object moving at the speed of light can escape from their surface. Hence, black holes do not themselves emit light. But it is possible to detect radiation from material falling *toward* a black hole. Calculations suggest that as this matter falls, it is compressed and heated to temperatures around 10^6 K. Calculate the wavelength of maximum emission for this temperature. In what part of the electromagnetic spectrum does this wavelength lie?

*28. Use the value of the solar constant given in Box 5-2 and the distance from the Earth to the Sun to calculate the luminosity of the Sun.

*29. The star Alpha Lupi (the brightest in the constellation Lupus, the Wolf) has a surface temperature of 21,600 K. How much more energy is emitted each second from each square meter of the surface of Alpha Lupi than from each square meter of the Sun's surface?

*30. Jupiter's moon Io has an active volcano named Pele whose temperature can be as high as 320°C. (**a**) What is the wavelength of maximum emission for the volcano at this temperature? In what part of the electromagnetic spectrum is this? (**b**) The average temperature of Io's surface is −150°C. Compared with a square meter of surface at this temperature, how much more energy is emitted per second from each square meter of Pele's surface?

*31. The bright star Sirius in the constellation of Canis Major (the Large Dog) has a radius of 1.67 $R_\odot$ and a luminosity of 25 $L_\odot$. (**a**) Use this information to calculate the energy flux at the surface of Sirius. (**b**) Use your answer in part (a) to calculate the surface temperature of Sirius. How does your answer compare to the value given in Box 5-2?

32. In Figure 5-13 you can see two distinct dark lines at the boundary between the orange and yellow parts of the Sun's spectrum (in the center of the third colored band from the top of the figure). The wavelengths of these dark lines are 588.99 and 589.59 nm. What do you conclude from this about the chemical composition of the Sun's atmosphere? (*Hint:* See Section 5-6.)
33. Instruments on board balloons and spacecraft detect 511-keV photons coming from the direction of the center of our Galaxy. (The prefix k means *kilo,* or thousand, so 1 keV = 10^3 eV.) What is the wavelength of these photons? To what part of the electromagnetic spectrum do these photons belong?
34. (**a**) Calculate the wavelength of P_δ (P-delta), the fourth wavelength in the Paschen series. (**b**) Draw a schematic diagram of the hydrogen atom and indicate the electron transition that gives rise to this spectral line. (**c**) In what part of the electromagnetic spectrum does this wavelength lie?
35. (**a**) Calculate the wavelength of H_η (H-eta), the spectral line for an electron transition between the $n = 7$ and $n = 2$ orbits of hydrogen. (**b**) In what part of the electromagnetic spectrum does this wavelength lie? Use this to explain why Figure 5-21 is labeled R I V U X G.
36. Certain interstellar clouds contain a very cold, very thin gas of hydrogen atoms. Ultraviolet radiation with any wavelength shorter than 91.2 nm cannot pass through this gas; instead, it is absorbed. Explain why.
37. (**a**) Can a hydrogen atom in the ground state absorb an H-alpha (H_α) photon? Explain why or why not. (**b**) Can a hydrogen atom in the $n = 2$ state absorb a Lyman-alpha (L_α) photon? Explain why or why not.
38. An imaginary atom has just 3 energy levels: 0 eV, 1 eV, and 3 eV. Draw an energy-level diagram for this atom. Show all possible transitions between these energy levels. For each transition, determine the photon energy and the photon wavelength. Which transitions involve the emission or absorption of visible light?
39. The star cluster NGC 346 and nebula shown in Figure 5-18 are located within the Small Magellanic Cloud (SMC), a small galaxy that orbits our Milky Way Galaxy. The SMC and the stars and gas within it are moving away from us at 158 km/s. At what wavelength does the red H_α line of hydrogen (which causes the color of the nebula) appear in the nebula's spectrum?
40. The wavelength of H_β in the spectrum of the star Megrez in the Big Dipper (part of the constellation Ursa Major, the Great Bear) is 486.112 nm. Laboratory measurements demonstrate that the normal wavelength of this spectral line is 486.133 nm. Is the star coming toward us or moving away from us? At what speed?
41. You are given a traffic ticket for going through a red light (wavelength 700 nm). You tell the police officer that because you were approaching the light, the Doppler effect caused a blueshift that made the light appear green (wavelength 500 nm). How fast would you have had to be going for this to be true? Would the speeding ticket be justified? Explain.

Discussion Questions

42. The equation that relates the frequency, wavelength, and speed of a light wave, $\nu = c/\lambda$, can be rewritten as $c = \nu\lambda$. A friend who has studied mathematics but not much astronomy or physics might look at this equation and say: "This equation tells me that the higher the frequency ν, the greater the wave speed c. Since visible light has a higher frequency than radio waves, this means that visible light goes faster than radio waves." How would you respond to your friend?
43. (**a**) If you could see ultraviolet radiation, how might the night sky appear different? Would ordinary objects appear different in the daytime? (**b**) What differences might there be in the appearance of the night sky and in the appearance of ordinary objects in the daytime if you could see infrared radiation?
44. The accompanying visible-light image shows the star cluster NGC 3293 in the constellation Carina (the Ship's Keel). What can you say about the surface temperatures of most of the bright stars in this cluster? In what part of the electromagnetic spectrum do these stars emit most intensely? Are your eyes sensitive to this type of radiation? If not, how is it possible to see these stars at all? There is at least one bright star in this cluster with a distinctly different color from the others; what can you conclude about its surface temperature?

R I V U X G

(David Malin/Anglo-Australian Observatory)

45. The human eye is most sensitive over the same wavelength range at which the Sun emits the greatest intensity of radiation. Suppose creatures were to evolve on a planet orbiting a star somewhat hotter than the Sun. To what wavelengths would their vision most likely be sensitive?
46. Why do you suppose that ultraviolet light can cause skin cancer but ordinary visible light does not?

Web/eBook Questions

47. Search the World Wide Web for information about rainbows. Why do rainbows form? Why do they appear as circular arcs? Why can you see different colors?

AIMM 5.1

48. **Measuring Stellar Temperatures.** Access the Active Integrated Media Module "Blackbody Curves" in Chapter 5 of the *Universe* Web site or eBook. (**a**) Use the module to determine the range of temperatures over which a star's peak wavelength is in the visible spectrum. (**b**) Determine if any of the following stars have a peak wavelength in the visible spectrum: Rigel, T = 11,000 K; Deneb, T = 8400 K; Arcturus, T = 4290 K; Vega, T = 9500 K; Mira, T = 2000 K.

Activities

Observing Projects

49. Turn on an electric stove or toaster oven and carefully observe the heating elements as they warm up. Relate your observations to Wien's law and the Stefan-Boltzmann law.
50. Obtain a glass prism (or a diffraction grating, which is probably more readily available and is discussed in the next chapter) and look through it at various light sources, such as an ordinary incandescent light, a neon sign, and a mercury vapor street lamp. **Do not look at the sun! Looking directly at the Sun causes permanent eye damage or blindness.** Do you have any trouble seeing spectra? What do you have to do to see a spectrum? Describe the differences in the spectra of the various light sources you observed.

STARRY NIGHT

51. Use the *Starry Night Enthusiast*™ program to examine some distant celestial objects. First display the entire celestial sphere (select **Guides > Atlas** in the **Favourites** menu) and ensure that deep space objects are displayed by opening **View > Deep Space** and clicking on **Messier Objects** and **Bright NGC Objects.** You can now search for objects (i), (ii), and (iii) listed below. Click the **Find** tab at the left of the main view window to open the Find pane, click on the magnifying glass icon at the left of the edit box at the top of the Find pane and select **Search All** from the menu, and then type the name of the object in the edit box followed by the **Enter** (**Return**) key. The object will be centered in the view. For each object, use the zoom controls at the right-hand end of the Toolbar (at the top of the main window) to adjust your view until you can see the object in detail. For each object, state whether it has a continuous spectrum, an absorption line spectrum, or an emission line spectrum, and explain your reasoning. (i) The Lagoon Nebula in Sagittarius. (*Hint:* See Figure 5-18.) (With a field of view of about 6° × 4°, you can compare and contrast the appearance of the Lagoon Nebula with the Trifid Nebula just to the north of it.) (ii) M31, the great galaxy in the constellation Andromeda. (*Hint:* The light coming from this galaxy is the combined light of hundreds of billions of individual stars.) (ii) The Moon. (*Hint:* Recall from Section 3-1 that moonlight is simply reflected sunlight.)

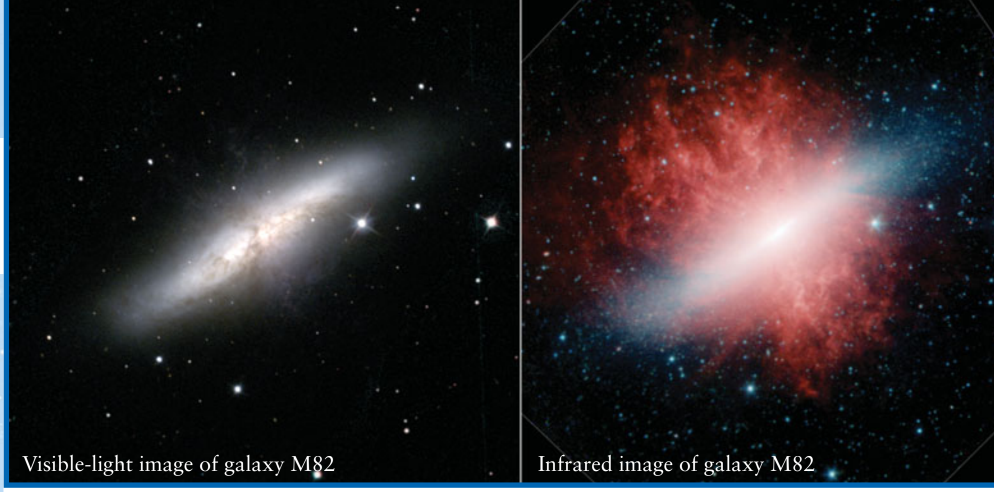
52. Use the *Starry Night Enthusiast™* program to examine the temperatures of several relatively nearby stars. First display the entire celestial sphere (select **Guides > Atlas** in the **Favourites** menu). You can now search for each of the stars listed below. Open the **Find** pane, click on the magnifying glass icon at the left side of the edit box at the top of the Find pane, select Star from the menu that appears, type the name of the star in the edit box and click the **Enter** (**Return**) key. (i) Altair; (ii) Procyon; (iii) Epsilon Indi; (iv) Tau Ceti; (v) Epsilon Eridani; (vi) Lalande 21185. Information for each star can then be found by clicking on the **Info** tab at the far left of the *Starry Night Enthusiast™* window. For each star, record its temperature (listed in the **Info** pane under **Other Data**). Then answer the following questions. (**a**) Which of the stars have a longer wavelength of maximum emission λ_{max} than the Sun? Which of the stars have a shorter λ_{max} than the Sun? (**b**) Which of the stars has a reddish color?

53. Use the *Starry Night Enthusiast™* program to explore the colors of galaxies. Select **Deep Space > Virgo Cluster** in the **Favourites** menu. The Virgo cluster is a grouping of more than 2000 galaxies extending across about 9 million light-years, located about 50 million light-years from Earth. Move the cursor over one of the larger galaxies in the view (for example, the galaxy named "The Eyes" near the center of the screen) and double-click over the image to center that galaxy in the view. You can zoom in and zoom out on the cluster using the elevation buttons (an upward-pointing triangle and a downward-pointing triangle) to the left of the Home button in the toolbar. You can also rotate the cluster by moving the mouse while holding down both the mouse button (left button on a two-button mouse) and the **Shift** key on the keyboard. (**a**) Zoom in and rotate the image to examine several different galaxies. Are all galaxies the same color? Do all galaxies contain stars of the same surface temperature? (Recall from Section 1-4 that galaxies are assemblages of stars.) (**b**) Examine several spiral galaxies like the one shown in Figure 1-7. What are the dominant colors of the inner regions and outer regions of these galaxies? What can you conclude about the surface temperatures of the brightest stars in the inner regions of spiral galaxies compared to the surface temperatures of those in the outer regions?

Collaborative Exercise

54. The Doppler effect describes how relative motion impacts wavelength. With a classmate, stand up and demonstrate each of the following: (**a**) a blueshifted source for a stationary observer; (**b**) a stationary source and an observer detecting a redshift; and (**c**) a source and an observer both moving in the same direction, but the observer is detecting a redshift. Create simple sketches to illustrate what you and your classmate did.

6 Optics and Telescopes



R I **V** U X G   R **I** V U X G

WEB LINK 6.1

Modern telescopes can view the universe in every range of electromagnetic radiation, although some must be placed above Earth's atmosphere. (Visible: NOAO; Infrared: NASA/JPL-Caltech/C. Engelbracht, University of Arizona)

There is literally more to the universe than meets the eye. As seen through a small telescope, the galaxy M82 (shown in the accompanying image) appears as a bright patch that glows with the light of its billions of stars. But when observed with a telescope sensitive to infrared light—with wavelengths longer than your eye can detect—M82 displays an immense halo that extends for tens of thousands of light-years. The spectrum of this halo reveals it to be composed of tiny dust particles, which are ejected by newly formed stars. The halo's tremendous size shows that stars are forming in M82 at a far greater rate than within our own Galaxy.

These observations are just one example of the tremendous importance of telescopes to astronomy. Whether a telescope detects visible or nonvisible light, its fundamental purpose is the same: to gather more light than can the unaided eye. Telescopes are used to gather the feeble light from distant objects to make bright, sharp images. Telescopes also produce finely detailed spectra of objects in space. These spectra reveal the chemical composition of nearby planets as well as of distant galaxies, and help astronomers understand the nature and evolution of astronomical objects of all kinds.

As the accompanying images of the galaxy M82 show, telescopes for nonvisible light reveal otherwise hidden aspects of the universe. In addition to infrared telescopes, radio telescopes have mapped out the structure of our Milky Way Galaxy; ultraviolet telescopes have revealed the workings of the Sun's outer atmosphere; and gamma-ray telescopes have detected the most powerful explosions in the universe. The telescope, in all its variations, is by far astronomers' most useful tool for collecting data about the universe.

6-1 A refracting telescope uses a lens to concentrate incoming light at a focus

The **optical telescope**—that is, a telescope designed for use with visible light—was invented in the Netherlands in the early seventeenth century. Soon after, Galileo used one of these new inventions for his groundbreaking astronomical observations (see Section 4-5). These first telescopes used carefully shaped pieces of glass, or **lenses**, to make distant objects appear larger and brighter. Telescopes of this same basic design are used today by many amateur astronomers. To understand telescopes of this kind, we need to understand how lenses work.

Refracting telescopes gave humans the first close-up views of the Moon and planets

Refraction of Light

All lenses, including those used in telescopes, make use of the same physical principle: *Light travels at a slower speed in a dense substance*. Thus, although the speed of light in a vacuum is 3.00×10^8 m/s, its speed in glass is less than 2×10^8 m/s. Just as a woman's walking pace slows suddenly when she walks from a boardwalk onto a sandy beach, so light slows abruptly as it enters a piece of glass. The same woman easily resumes her original

Learning Goals

By reading the sections of this chapter, you will learn

6-1 How a refracting telescope uses a lens to form an image

6-2 How a reflecting telescope uses a curved mirror to form an image

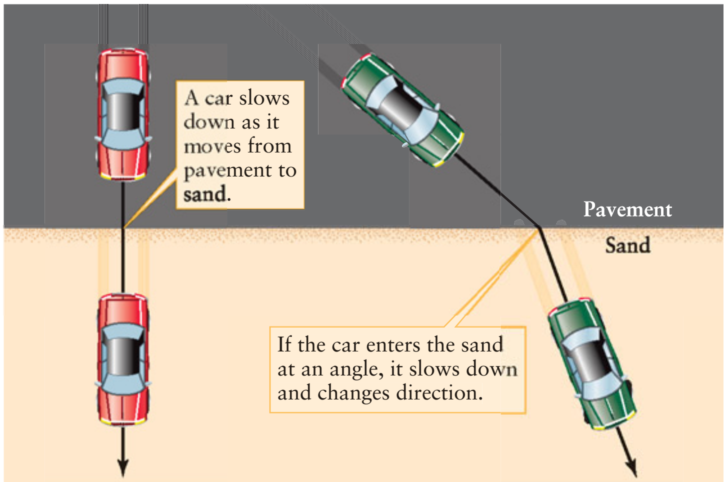
6-3 How a telescope's size and the Earth's atmosphere limit the sharpness of a telescopic image

6-4 How electronic light detectors have revolutionized astronomy

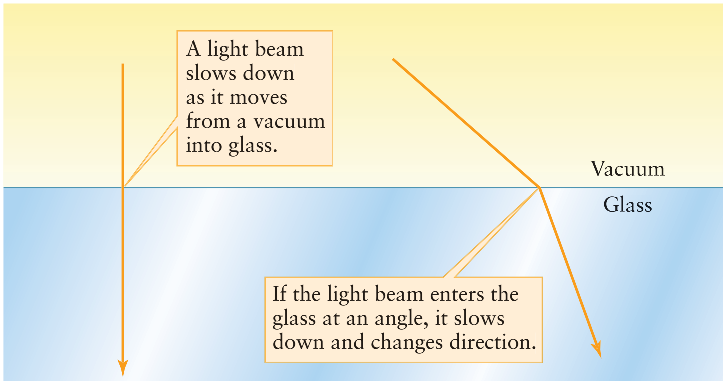
6-5 How telescopes are used to obtain spectra of astronomical objects

6-6 The advantages of using telescopes that detect radio waves from space

6-7 The advantages of placing telescopes in Earth orbit



(a) How cars behave



(b) How light beams behave

Figure 6-1

Refraction **(a)** When a car drives from smooth pavement into soft sand, it slows down. If it enters the sand at an angle, the front wheel on one side feels the drag of the sand before the other wheel, causing the car to veer to the side and change direction. **(b)** Similarly, light slows down when it passes from a vacuum into glass and changes direction if it enters the glass at an angle.

pace when she steps back onto the boardwalk; in the same way, light resumes its original speed upon exiting the glass.

A material through which light travels is called a **medium** (*plural* **media**). As a beam of light passes from one transparent medium into another—say, from air into glass, or from glass back into air—the direction of the light can change. This phenomenon, called **refraction,** is caused by the change in the speed of light.

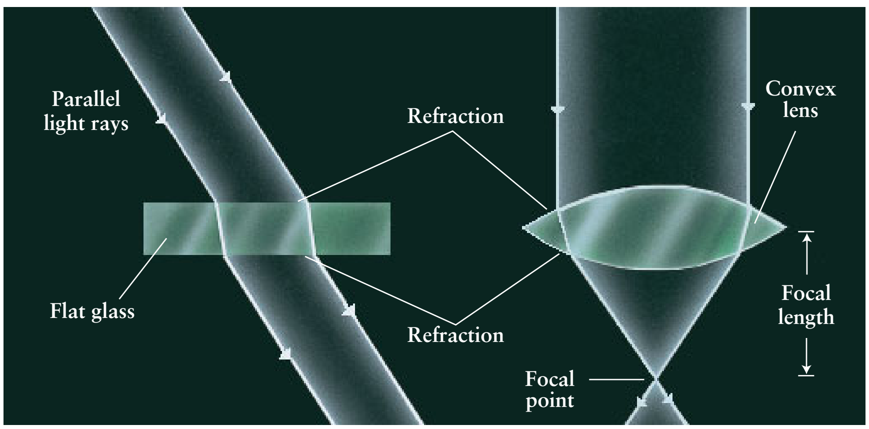
ANALOGY Imagine driving a car from a smooth pavement onto a sandy beach (Figure 6-1*a*). If the car approaches the beach head-on, it slows down when it enters the sand but keeps moving straight ahead. If the car approaches the beach at an angle, however, one of the front wheels will be slowed by the sand before the other is, and the car will veer from its original direction. In the same way, a beam of light changes direction when it enters a piece of glass at an angle (Figure 6-1*b*).

Figure 6-2*a* shows the refraction of a beam of light passing through a piece of flat glass. As the beam enters the upper surface of the glass, refraction takes place, and the beam is bent to a direction more nearly perpendicular to the surface of the glass. As the beam exits from the glass back into the surrounding air, a second refraction takes place, and the beam bends in the opposite sense. (The amount of bending depends on the speed of light in the glass, so different kinds of glass produce slightly different amounts of refraction.) Because the two surfaces of the glass are parallel, the beam emerges from the glass traveling in the same direction in which it entered.

Lenses and Refracting Telescopes

Something more useful happens if the glass is curved into a convex shape (one that is fatter in the middle than at the edges), like the lens in Figure 6-2*b*. When a beam of light rays passes through the lens, refraction causes all the rays to converge at a point called the **focus.** If the light rays entering the lens are all parallel, the focus occurs at a special point called the **focal point.** The distance from the lens to the focal point is called the **focal length** of the lens.

The case of parallel light rays, shown in Figure 6-2*b,* is not merely a theoretical ideal. The stars are so far away that light rays



(a) (b)

Figure 6-2

Refraction and Lenses **(a)** Refraction is the change in direction of a light ray when it passes into or out of a transparent medium such as glass. When light rays pass through a flat piece of glass, the two refractions bend the rays in opposite directions. There is no overall change in the direction in which the light travels. **(b)** If the glass is in the shape of a convex lens, parallel light rays converge to a focus at a special point called the focal point. The distance from the lens to the focal point is called the focal length of the lens.

from them are essentially parallel, as Figure 6-3 shows. Consequently, a lens always focuses light from an astronomical object to the focal point. If the object has a very small angular size, like a distant star, all the light entering the lens from that object converges onto the focal point. The resulting image is just a single bright dot.

However, if the object is *extended*—that is, has a relatively large angular size, like the Moon or a planet—then light coming from each point on the object is brought to a focus at its own individual point. The result is an extended image that lies in the **focal plane** of the lens (Figure 6-4), which is a plane that includes the focal point. You can use an ordinary magnifying glass in this way to make an image of the Sun on the ground.

To use a lens to make a photograph of an astronomical object, you would place a piece of film or an electronic detector in the focal plane. An ordinary film camera or digital camera works in the same way for taking photographs of relatively close objects here on Earth. Most observations for astronomical research are done in this way to produce a permanent record of the observation. Furthermore, modern image-recording technology is far more sensitive than the human eye, as we will see in Section 6-4. But many amateur astronomers want to view the image visually, and so they add a second lens to magnify the image formed in the focal plane. Such an arrangement of two lenses is called a **refracting telescope,** or **refractor** (Figure 6-5). The large-diameter, long-focal-length lens at the front of the telescope, called the **objective lens,** forms the image; the smaller, shorter-focal-length lens at the rear of the telescope, called the **eyepiece lens,** magnifies the image for the observer.

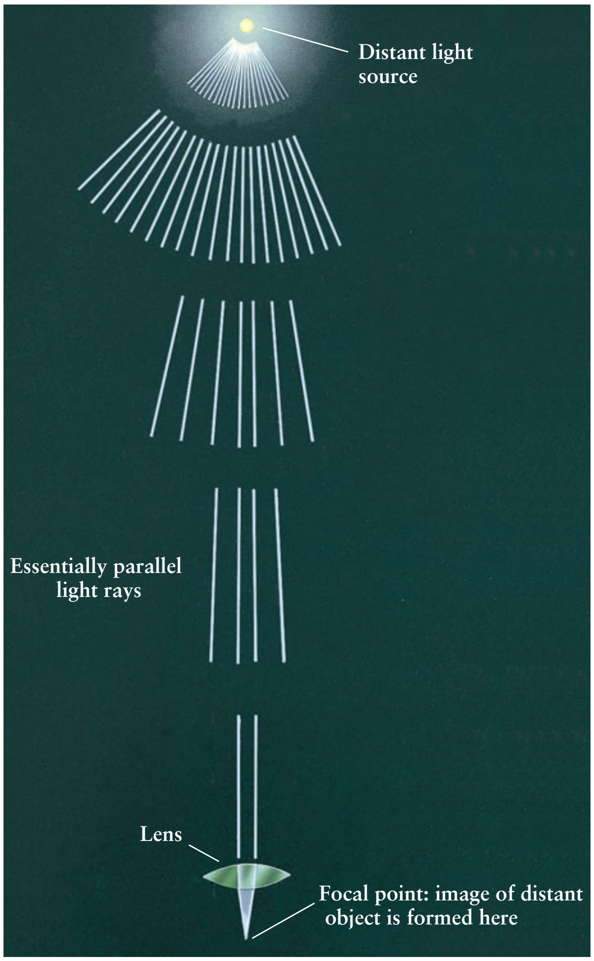


Figure 6-3

Light Rays from Distant Objects Are Parallel Light rays travel away in all directions from an ordinary light source. If a lens is located very far from the light source, only a few of the light rays will enter the lens, and these rays will be essentially parallel. This is why we drew parallel rays entering the lens in Figure 6-2*b*.

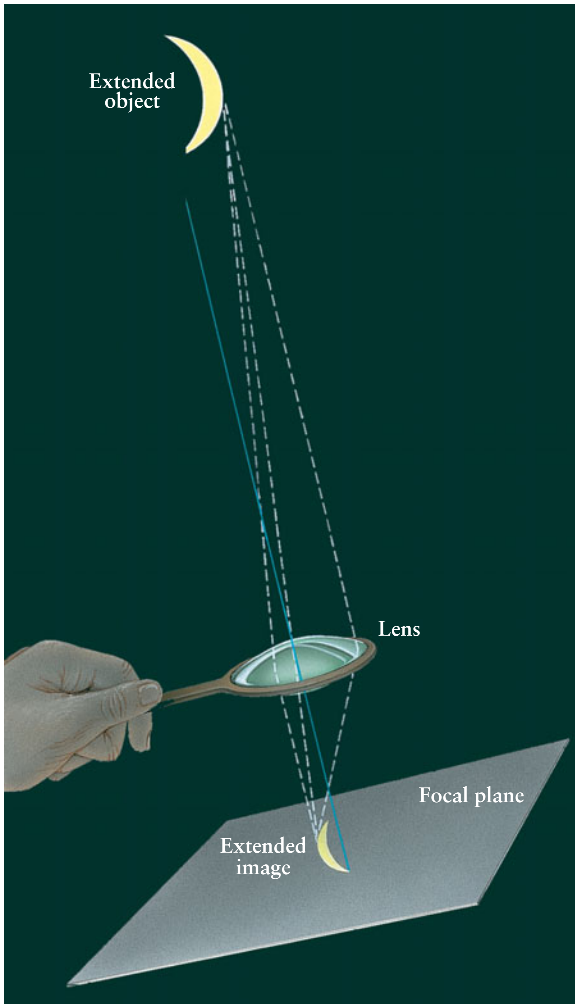
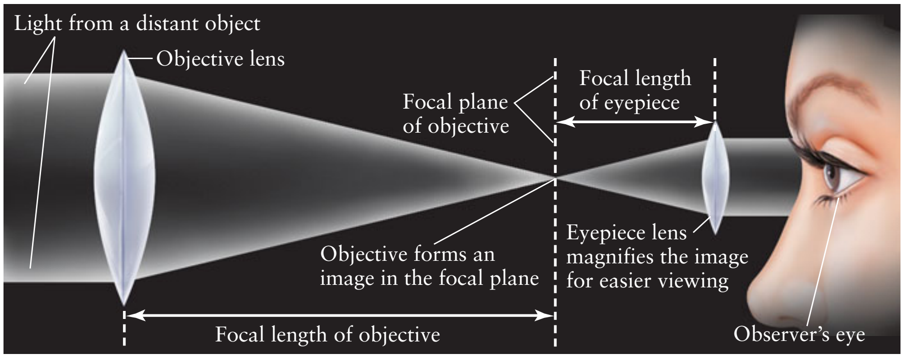


Figure 6-4

A Lens Creates an Extended Image of an Extended Object Light coming from each point on an extended object passes through a lens and produces an image of that point. All of these tiny images put together make an extended image of the entire object. The image of a very distant object is formed in a plane called the focal plane. The distance from the lens to the focal plane is called the focal length.

Light-Gathering Power

In addition to the focal length, the other important dimension of the objective lens of a refractor is the diameter. Compared with



ANIMATION 6.1

Figure 6-5

A Refracting Telescope A refracting telescope consists of a large-diameter objective lens with a long focal length and a small eyepiece lens of short focal length. The eyepiece lens magnifies the image formed by the objective lens in its focal plane (shown as a dashed line). To take a photograph, the eyepiece is removed and the film or electronic detector is placed in the focal plane.

a small-diameter lens, a large-diameter lens captures more light, produces brighter images, and allows astronomers to detect fainter objects. (For the same reason, the iris of your eye opens when you go into a darkened room to allow you to see dimly lit objects.)

The **light-gathering power** of a telescope is directly proportional to the area of the objective lens, which in turn is proportional to the square of the lens diameter (Figure 6-6). Thus, if you double the diameter of the lens, the light-gathering power increases by a factor of $2^2 = 2 \times 2 = 4$. Box 6-1 describes how to compare the light-gathering power of different telescopes.

Because light-gathering power is so important for seeing faint objects, the lens diameter is almost always given in describing a telescope. For example, the Lick telescope on Mount Hamilton in California is a 90-cm refractor, which means that it is a refracting telescope whose objective lens is 90 cm in diameter. By comparison, Galileo's telescope of 1610 was a 3-cm refractor. The Lick telescope has an objective lens 30 times larger in diameter, and so has $30 \times 30 = 900$ times the light-gathering power of Galileo's instrument.

Magnification

In addition to their light-gathering power, telescopes are useful because they magnify distant objects. As an example, the angular diameter of the Moon as viewed with the naked eye is about 0.5°. But when Galileo viewed the Moon through his telescope, its apparent angular diameter was 10°, large enough so that he could identify craters and mountain ranges. The **magnification, or magnifying power,** of a telescope is the ratio of an object's angular diameter seen through the telescope to its naked-eye angular diameter. Thus, the magnification of Galileo's telescope was $10°/0.5° = 20$ times, usually written as 20×.

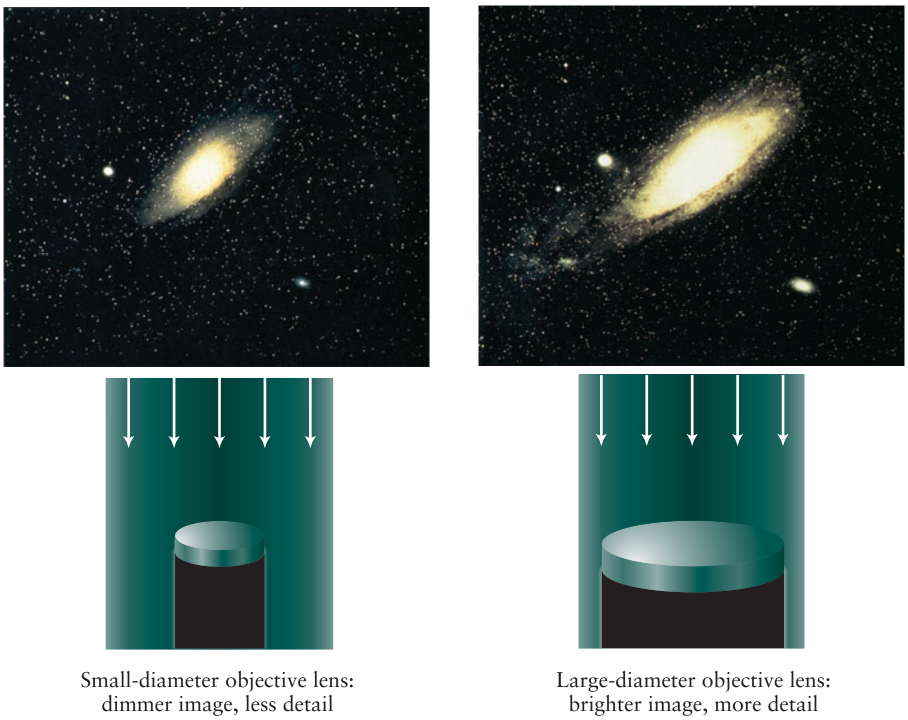


Figure 6-6 R I V U X G

Light-Gathering Power These two photographs of the galaxy M31 in Andromeda were taken using the same exposure time and at the same magnification, but with two different telescopes with objective lenses of different diameters. The right-hand photograph is brighter and shows more detail because it was made using the large-diameter lens, which intercepts more starlight than a small-diameter lens. This same principle applies to telescopes that use curved mirrors rather than lenses to collect light (see Section 6-2). (Association of Universities for Research in Astronomy)

BOX 6-1 Tools of the Astronomer's Trade

Magnification and Light-Gathering Power

The magnification of a telescope is equal to the focal length of the objective divided by the focal length of the eyepiece. Telescopic eyepieces are usually interchangeable, so the magnification of a telescope can be changed by using eyepieces of different focal lengths.

EXAMPLE: A small refracting telescope has an objective of focal length 120 cm. If the eyepiece has a focal length of 4.0 cm, what is the magnification of the telescope?

Situation: We are given the focal lengths of the telescope's objective and eyepiece lenses. Our goal is to calculate the magnification provided by this combination of lenses.

Tools: We use the relationship that the magnification equals the focal length of the objective (120 cm) divided by the focal length of the eyepiece (4.0 cm).

Answer: Using this relationship,

$$\text{Magnification} = \frac{120\text{ cm}}{4.0\text{ cm}} = 30 \text{ (usually written as } 30\times)$$

Review: A magnification of 30× means that as viewed through this telescope, a large lunar crater that subtends an angle of 1 arcminute to the naked eye will appear to subtend an angle 30 times greater, or 30 arcminutes (one-half of a degree). This makes the details of the crater much easier to see.

If a 2.0-cm-focal-length eyepiece is used instead, the magnification will be (120 cm)/(2.0 cm) = 60×. The shorter the focal length of the eyepiece, the greater the magnification.

The light-gathering power of a telescope depends on the diameter of the objective lens; it does not depend on the focal length. The light-gathering power is proportional to the square of the diameter. As an example, a fully dark adapted human eye has a pupil diameter of about 5 mm. By comparison, a small telescope whose objective lens is 5 cm in diameter has 10 times the diameter and $10^2 = 100$ times the light-gathering power of the eye. (Recall that there are 10 mm in 1 cm.) Hence, this telescope allows you to see objects 100 times fainter than you can see without a telescope.

EXAMPLE: The same relationships apply to reflecting telescopes, discussed in Section 6-2. Each of the two Keck telescopes on Mauna Kea in Hawaii (discussed in Section 6-3; see Figure 6-16) uses a concave mirror 10 m in diameter to bring starlight to a focus. How many times greater is the light-gathering power of either Keck telescope compared to that of the human eye?

Situation: We are given the diameters of the pupil of the human eye (5 mm) and of the mirror of either Keck telescope (10 m). Our goal is to compare the light-gathering powers of these two optical instruments.

Tools: We use the relationship that light-gathering power is proportional to the square of the diameter of the area that gathers light. Hence, the *ratio* of the light-gathering powers is equal to the square of the ratio of the diameters.

Answer: We first calculate the ratio of the diameter of the Keck mirror to the diameter of the pupil. To do this, we must first express both diameters in the same units. Because there are 1000 mm in 1 meter, the diameter of the Keck mirror can be expressed as

$$10\text{ m} \times \frac{1000\text{ mm}}{1\text{ m}} = 10{,}000\text{ mm}$$

Thus, the light-gathering power of either of the Keck telescopes is greater than that of the human eye by a factor of

$$\frac{(10{,}000\text{ mm})^2}{(5\text{ mm})^2} = (2000)^2 = 4 \times 10^6 = 4{,}000{,}000$$

Review: Either Keck telescope can gather *4 million* times as much light as a human eye. When it comes to light-gathering power, the bigger the telescope, the better!

INTERACTIVE EXERCISE 6.1

The magnification of a refracting telescope depends on the focal lengths of both of its lenses:

$$\text{Magnification} = \frac{\text{focal length of objective lens}}{\text{focal length of eyepiece lens}}$$

This formula shows that using a long-focal-length objective lens with a short-focal-length eyepiece gives a large magnification. Box 6-1 illustrates how this formula is used.

CAUTION! Many people think that the primary purpose of a telescope is to magnify images. But in fact magnification is *not* the most important aspect of a telescope. The reason is that there is a limit to how sharp any astronomical image can be, due either to the blurring caused by the Earth's atmosphere or to fundamental limitations imposed by the nature of light itself. (We will describe these effects in more detail in Section 6-3.) Magnifying a blurred image may make it look bigger but will not make it any clearer. Thus, beyond a certain point, there is nothing to be gained by further magnification. Astronomers put much more store in the light-gathering power of a telescope than in its magnification. Greater light-gathering power means brighter images, which makes it easier to see faint details.

Disadvantages of Refracting Telescopes

If you were to build a telescope like that in Figure 6-5 using only the instructions given so far, you would probably be disappointed with the results. The problem is that a lens bends different colors of light through different angles, just as a prism does (recall Figure 5-3). As a result, different colors do not focus at the same point, and stars viewed through a telescope that uses a simple lens are surrounded by fuzzy, rainbow-colored halos. Figure 6-7*a* shows this optical defect, called **chromatic aberration.**

One way to correct for chromatic aberration is to use an objective lens that is not just a single piece of glass. Different types of glass can be manufactured by adding small amounts of chemicals to the glass when it is molten. Because of these chemicals, the speed of light varies slightly from one kind of glass to another, and the refractive properties vary as well. If a thin lens is mounted just behind the main objective lens of a telescope, as shown in Figure 6-7*b*, and if the telescope designer carefully chooses two different kinds of glass for these two lenses, different colors of light can be brought to a focus at the same point.

Chromatic aberration is only the most severe of a host of optical problems that must be solved in designing a high-quality refracting telescope. Master opticians of the nineteenth century devoted their careers to solving these problems, and several magnificent refractors were constructed in the late 1800s (Figure 6-8).

Unfortunately, there are several negative aspects of refractors that even the finest optician cannot overcome:

1. Because faint light must readily pass through the objective lens, the glass from which the lens is made must be totally free of defects, such as the bubbles that frequently form when molten glass is poured into a mold. Such defect-free glass is extremely expensive.

2. Glass is opaque to certain kinds of light. Ultraviolet light is absorbed almost completely, and even visible light is dimmed substantially as it passes through the thick slab of glass that makes up the objective lens.

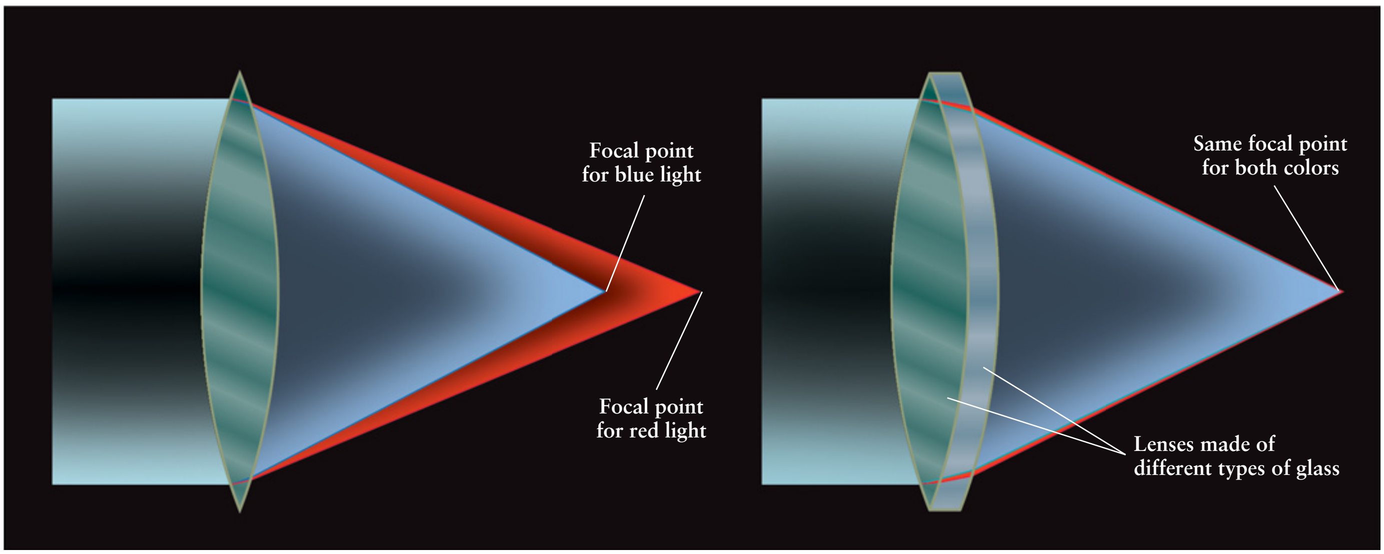
3. It is impossible to produce a large lens that is entirely free of chromatic aberration.

4. Because the lens can be supported only around its edges, it tends to sag and distort under its own weight. This has adverse effects on the image clarity.

For these reasons and more, few major refractors have been built since the beginning of the twentieth century. Instead, astronomers have avoided all of the limitations of refractors by building telescopes that use a mirror instead of a lens to form an image.

6-2 A reflecting telescope uses a mirror to concentrate incoming light at a focus

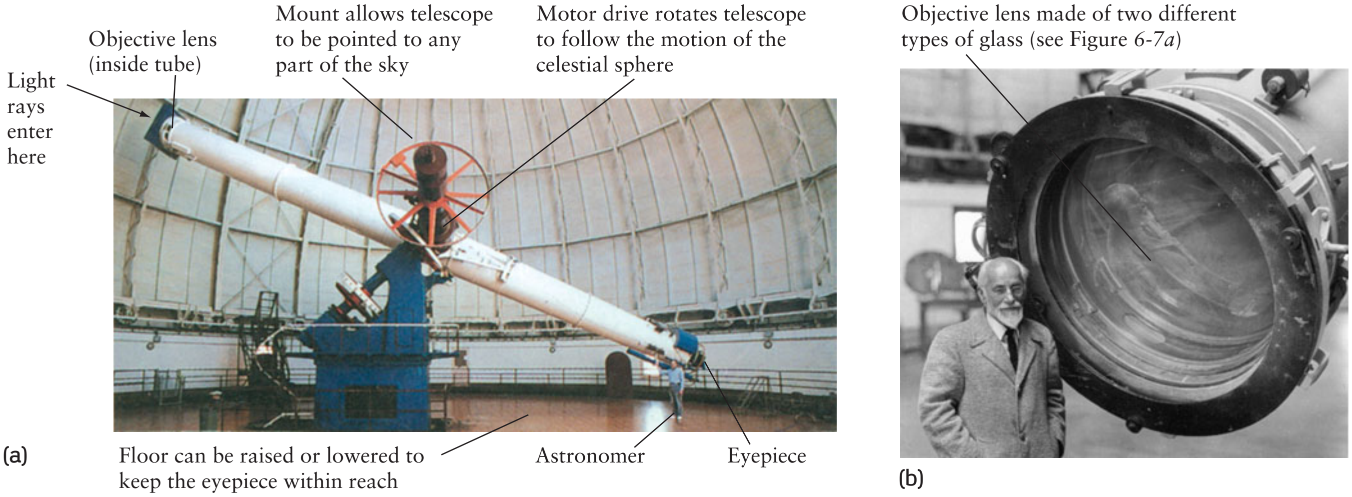
Almost all modern telescopes form an image using the principle of **reflection.** To understand reflection, imagine drawing a dashed line perpendicular to the surface of a flat mirror at the point where a light ray strikes the mirror (Figure 6-9*a*). The angle *i* between the *incident* (arriving) light ray and the perpendicular is al-



(a) The problem: chromatic aberration (b) The solution: use two lenses

Figure 6-7

Chromatic Aberration **(a)** A single lens suffers from a defect called chromatic aberration, in which different colors of light are brought to a focus at different distances from the lens. **(b)** This problem can be corrected by adding a second lens made from a different kind of glass.



(a) (b)

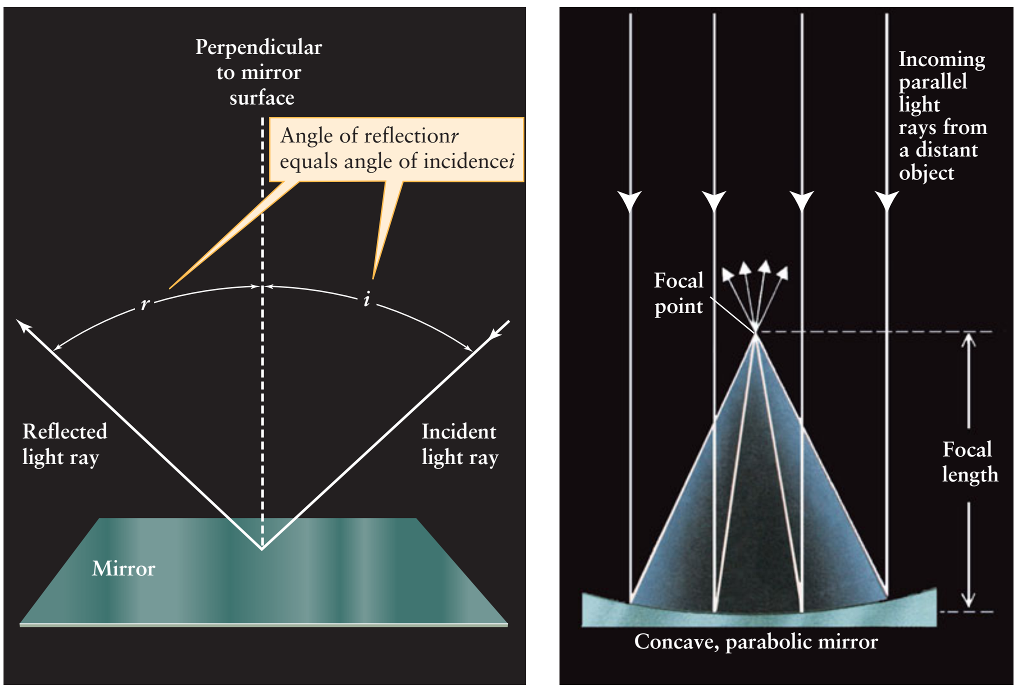
Figure 6-8 R I V U X G

A Large Refracting Telescope (a) This giant refractor, built in 1897, is housed at Yerkes Observatory near Chicago. The telescope tube is 19.5 m (64 ft) long; it has to be this long because the focal length of the objective is just under 19.5 m (see Figure 6-5). As the Earth rotates, the motor drive rotates the telescope in the opposite direction in order to keep the object being studied within the telescope's field of view. (b) This historical photograph shows the astronomer George van Biesbrock with the objective lens of the Yerkes refractor. This lens, the largest ever made, is 102 cm (40 in.) in diameter. (Yerkes Observatory)

ways equal to the angle *r* between the *reflected* ray and the perpendicular.

In 1663, the Scottish mathematician James Gregory first proposed a telescope using reflection from a concave mirror—one that is fatter at the edges than at the middle. Such a mirror makes parallel light rays converge to a focus (Figure 6-9*b*). The distance between the reflecting surface and the focus is the focal length of the mirror. A telescope that uses a curved mirror to make an image of a distant object is called a **reflecting telescope,** or **reflector.** Using terminology similar to that used for refractors, the mirror that forms the image is called the **objective mirror** or **primary mirror.**

All of the largest professional telescopes—and most amateur telescopes—are reflecting telescopes



(a) (b)

Figure 6-9

Reflection (a) The angle at which a beam of light approaches a mirror, called the angle of incidence (*i*), is always equal to the angle at which the beam is reflected from the mirror, called the angle of reflection (*r*). (b) A concave mirror causes parallel light rays to converge to a focus at the focal point. The distance between the mirror and the focal point is the focal length of the mirror.

To make a reflector, an optician grinds and polishes a large slab of glass into the appropriate concave shape. The glass is then coated with silver, aluminum, or a similar highly reflective substance. Because light reflects off the surface of the glass rather than passing through it, defects within the glass—which would have very negative consequences for the objective lens of a refracting telescope—have no effect on the optical quality of a reflecting telescope.

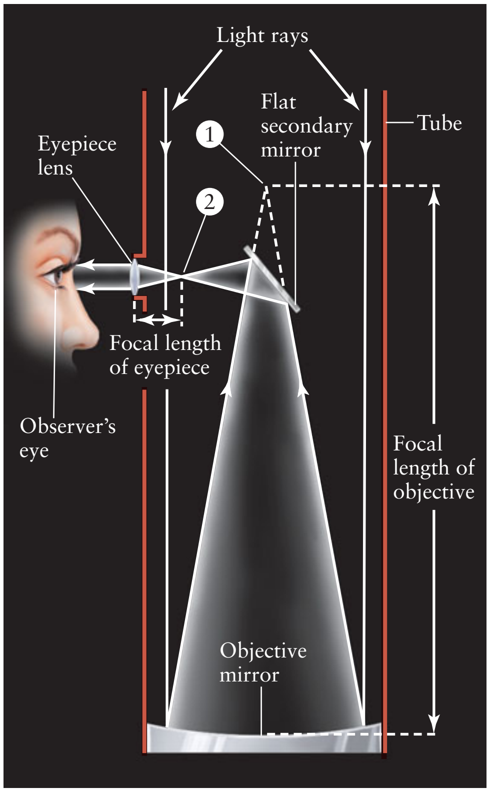
Another advantage of reflectors is that they do not suffer from the chromatic aberration that plagues refractors. This is because reflection is not affected by the wavelength of the incoming light, so all wavelengths are reflected to the same focus. (A small amount of chromatic aberration may arise if the image is viewed using an eyepiece lens.) Furthermore, the mirror can be fully supported by braces on its back, so that a large, heavy mirror can be mounted without much danger of breakage or surface distortion.

Designs for Reflecting Telescopes

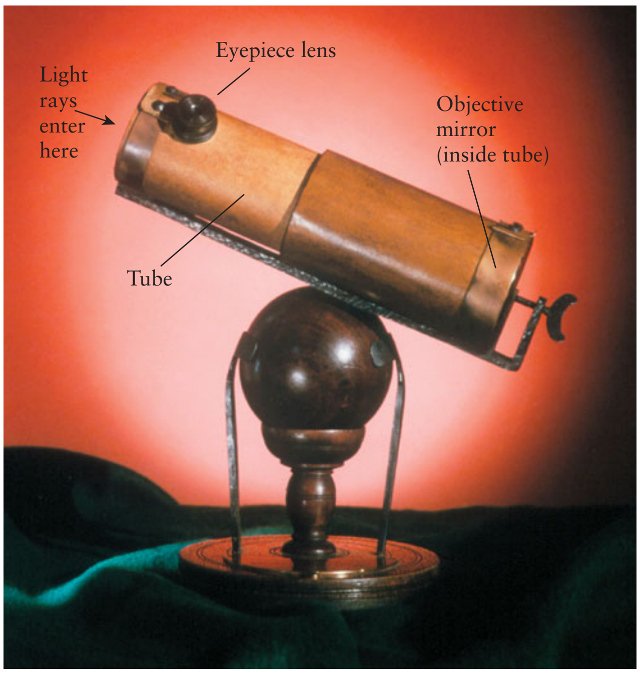
Although a reflecting telescope has many advantages over a refractor, the arrangement shown in Figure 6-9*a* is not ideal. One problem is that the focal point is in front of the objective mirror. If you try to view the image formed at the focal point, your head will block part or all of the light from reaching the mirror.

To get around this problem, in 1668 Isaac Newton simply placed a small, flat mirror at a 45° angle in front of the focal point, as sketched in Figure 6-10*a*. This secondary mirror deflects the light rays to one side, where Newton placed an eyepiece lens to magnify the image. A reflecting telescope with this optical design is appropriately called a **Newtonian reflector** (Figure 6-10*b*). The magnifying power of a Newtonian reflector is calculated in the same way as for a refractor: The focal length of the objective mirror is divided by the focal length of the eyepiece (see Box 6-1).

Later astronomers modified Newton's original design. The objective mirrors of some modern reflectors are so large that an astronomer could actually sit in an "observing cage" at the undeflected focal point directly in front of the objective mirror. (In practice, riding in this cage on a winter's night is a remarkably cold and uncomfortable experience.) This arrangement is called a **prime focus** (Figure 6-11*a*). It usually provides the highest-quality image, because there is no need for a secondary mirror (which might have imperfections).



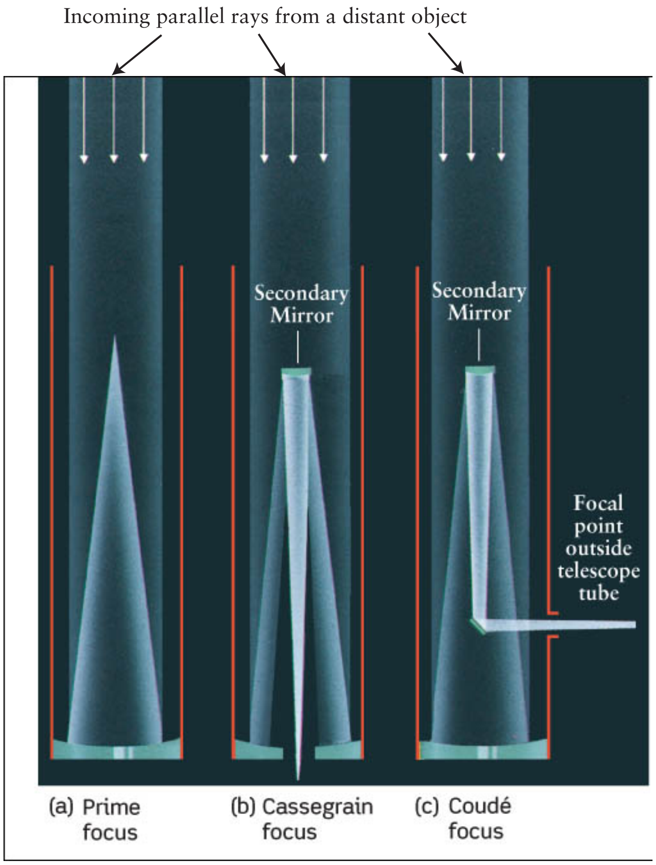
(a)



(b)

Figure 6-10 R I V U X G

A Newtonian Telescope (a) In a Newtonian telescope, the image made by the objective is moved from point 1 to point 2 by means of a flat mirror called the secondary. An eyepiece magnifies this image, just as for a refracting telescope (Figure 6-5). **(b)** This is a replica of a Newtonian telescope built by Isaac Newton in 1672. The objective mirror is 3 cm (1.3 inches) in diameter and the magnification is 40× (Royal Greenwich Observatory/Science Photo Library)



ANIMATION 6.2

Figure 6-11

Designs for Reflecting Telescopes Three common optical designs for reflecting telescopes are shown here. **(a)** Prime focus is used only on some large telescopes; an observer or instrument is placed directly at the focal point, within the barrel of the telescope. **(b)** The Cassegrain focus is used on reflecting telescopes of all sizes, from 90-mm (3.5-in.) reflectors used by amateur astronomers to giant research telescopes on Mauna Kea (see Figure 6-14). **(c)** The coudé focus is useful when large and heavy optical apparatus is to be used at the focal point. Light reflects off the objective mirror to a secondary mirror, then back down to a third, angled mirror. With this arrangement, the heavy apparatus at the focal point does not have to move when the telescope is repositioned.

Another popular optical design, called a **Cassegrain focus** after the French contemporary of Newton who first proposed it, also has a convenient, accessible focal point. A hole is drilled directly through the center of the primary mirror, and a convex secondary mirror placed in front of the original focal point reflects the light rays back through the hole (Figure 6-11*b*).

A fourth design is useful when there is optical equipment too heavy or bulky to mount directly on the telescope. Instead, a series of mirrors channels the light rays away from the telescope to a remote focal point where the equipment is located. This design is called a **coudé focus,** from a French word meaning "bent like an elbow" (Figure 6-11*c*).

CAUTION! You might think that the secondary mirror in the Newtonian design and the Cassegrain and coudé designs shown in Figure 6-11 would cause a black spot or hole in the center of the telescope image. But this does not happen. The reason is that light from every part of the object lands on every part of the primary, objective mirror. Hence, any portion of the mirror can itself produce an image of the distant object, as Figure 6-12 shows. The only effect of the secondary mirror is that it prevents part of the light from reaching the objective mirror, which reduces somewhat the light-gathering power of the telescope.

Spherical Aberration

A reflecting telescope must be designed to minimize a defect called **spherical aberration** (Figure 6-13). At issue is the precise shape of a mirror's concave surface. A spherical surface is easy to grind and polish, but different parts of a spherical mirror have slightly different focal lengths (Figure 6-13*a*). This results in a fuzzy image.

One common way to eliminate spherical aberration is to polish the mirror's surface to a parabolic shape, because a parabola reflects parallel light rays to a common focus (Figure 6-13*b*). Unfortunately, the astronomer then no longer has a wide-angle view. Furthermore, unlike spherical mirrors, parabolic mirrors suffer

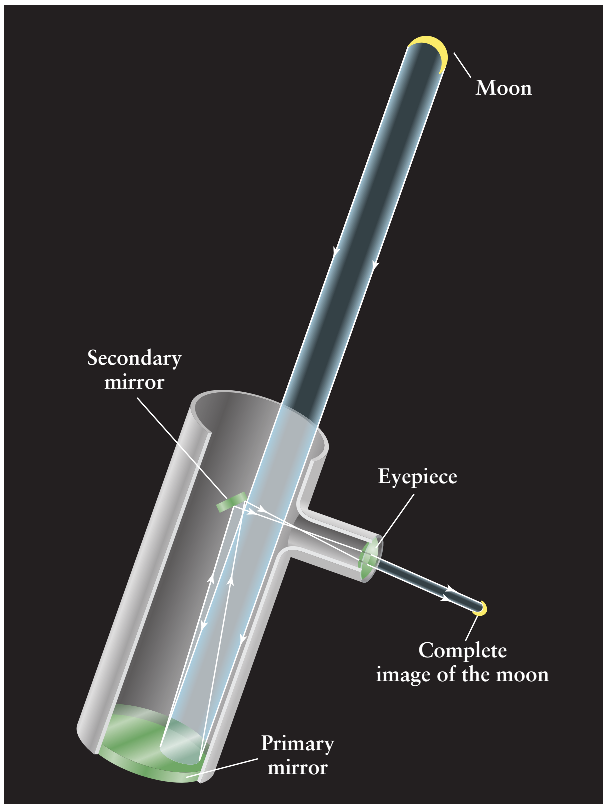


Figure 6-12

The Secondary Mirror Does Not Cause a Hole in the Image This illustration shows how even a small portion of the primary (objective) mirror of a reflecting telescope can make a complete image of the Moon. Thus, the secondary mirror does not cause a black spot or hole in the image. (It does, however, make the image a bit dimmer by reducing the total amount of light that reaches the primary mirror.)

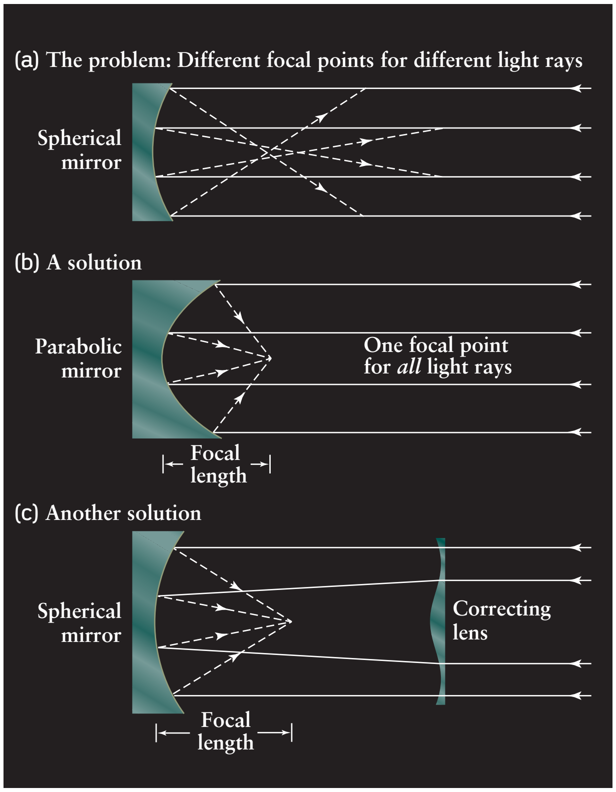


Figure 6-13

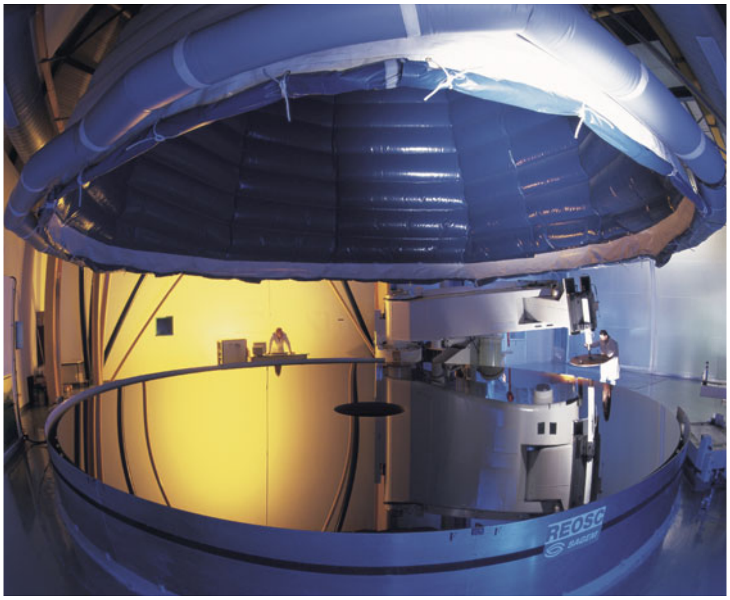
Spherical Aberration **(a)** Different parts of a spherically concave mirror reflect light to slightly different focal points. This effect, called spherical aberration, causes image blurring. This difficulty can be corrected by either **(b)** using a parabolic mirror or **(c)** using a correcting lens in front of the mirror.

from a defect called **coma,** wherein star images far from the center of the field of view are elongated to look like tiny teardrops. A different approach is to use a spherical mirror, thus minimizing coma, and to place a thin correcting lens at the front of the telescope to eliminate spherical aberration (Figure 6-13*c*). This approach is only used on relatively small reflecting telescopes for amateur astronomers.

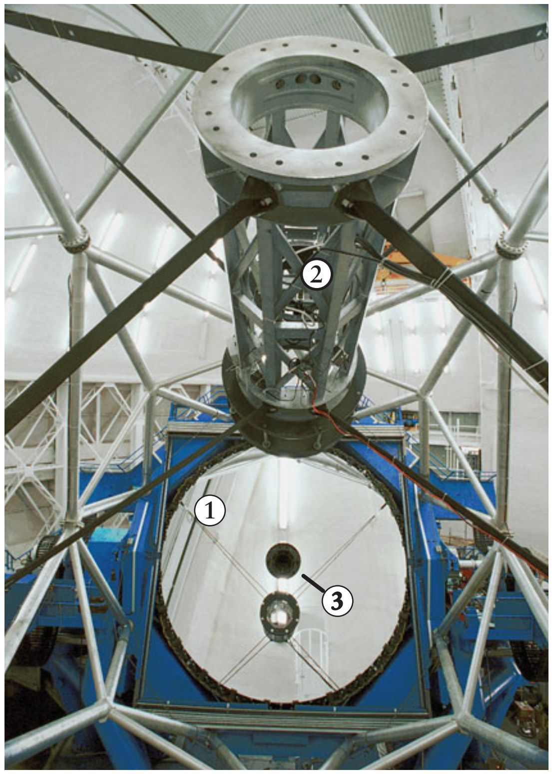
The Largest Reflectors

WEB LINK 6.2

As of 2007, there were 13 optical reflectors in operation with primary mirrors between 8 meters (26.2 feet) and 11 meters (36.1 feet) in diameter. Figure 6-14*a* shows the objective mirror of one of the four Very Large Telescope (VLT) units in Chile, and Figure 6-14*b* shows the objective and secondary mirrors of the Gemini North telescope in Hawaii. A near-twin of Gemini North, called Gemini South, is in Cerro Pachón, Chile. These twins allow astronomers to observe both the northern and southern parts of the celestial sphere with essentially the same state-of-the-art instrument. Two other "twins" are the side-by-side 8.4-m objective mirrors of the Large Binocular Telescope in Arizona. Combining the light from these two mirrors gives double the light-gathering power, equivalent to a single 11.8-m mirror.



(a) A large objective mirror



(b) A large Cassegrain telescope

Figure 6-14 R I V U X G

Reflecting Telescopes **(a)** This photograph shows technicians preparing an objective mirror 8.2 meters in diameter for the European Southern Observatory in Chile. The mirror was ground to a curved shape with a remarkable precision of 8.5 nanometers. **(b)** This view of the Gemini North telescope shows its 8.1-meter objective mirror (1). Light incident on this mirror is reflected toward the 1.0-meter secondary mirror (2), then through the hole in the objective mirror (3) to the Cassegrain focus (see Figure 6-11*b*). (a: SAGEM; b: NOAO/AURA/NSF)

Several other reflectors around the world have objective mirrors between 3 and 6 meters in diameter, and dozens of smaller but still powerful telescopes have mirrors in the range of 1 to 3 meters. There are thousands of professional astronomers, each of whom has several ongoing research projects, and thus the demand for all of these telescopes is high. On any night of the year, nearly every research telescope in the world is being used to explore the universe.

6-3 Telescope images are degraded by the blurring effects of the atmosphere and by light pollution

In addition to providing a brighter image, a large telescope also helps achieve a second major goal: It produces star images that are sharp and crisp. A quantity called **angular resolution** gauges how well fine details can be seen. Poor angular resolution causes star images to be fuzzy and blurred together.

To determine the angular resolution of a telescope, pick out two adjacent stars whose separate images are just barely discernible (Figure 6-15). The angle θ (the Greek letter theta) between these stars is the telescope's angular resolution; the *smaller* that angle, the finer the details that can be seen and the sharper the image.

When you are asked to read the letters on an eye chart, what's being measured is the angular resolution of your eye. If you have 20/20 vision, the angular resolution θ of your eye is about 1 arcminute, or 60 arcseconds. (You may want to review the definitions of these angular measures in Section 1-5.) Hence, with the naked eye it is impossible to distinguish two stars less than 1 arcminute apart or to see details on the Moon with an angular size smaller than this. All the planets have angular sizes (as seen from Earth) of 1 arcminute or less, which is why they appear as featureless points of light to the naked eye.

Adaptive optics produces sharper images by "undoing" atmospheric turbulence

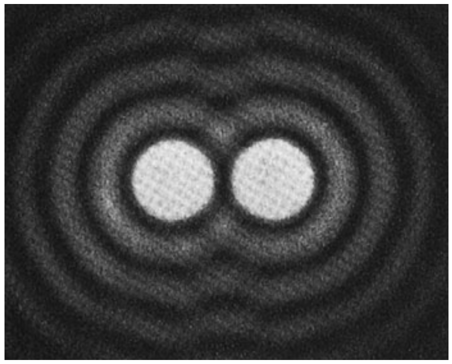
Limits to Angular Resolution

One factor limiting angular resolution is **diffraction,** which is the tendency of light waves to spread out when they are confined to a small area like the lens or mirror of a telescope. (A rough analogy is the way water exiting a garden hose sprays out in a wider angle when you cover part of the end of the hose with your thumb.) As a result of diffraction, a narrow beam of light tends to spread out within a telescope's optics, thus blurring the image. If diffraction were the only limit, the angular resolution of a telescope would be given by the formula

Diffraction-limited angular resolution

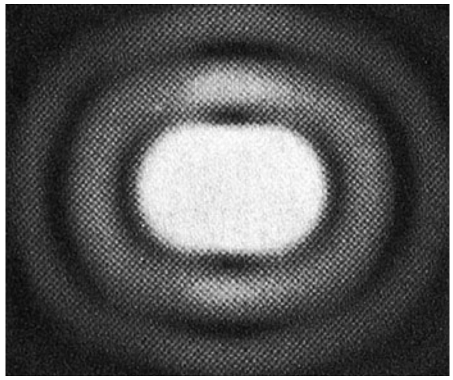
$$\theta = 2.5 \times 10^5 \frac{\lambda}{D}$$

θ = diffraction-limited angular resolution of a telescope, in arcseconds



Two light sources with angular separation greater than angular resolution of telescope: Two sources easily distinguished

(a)



Light sources moved closer so that angular separation equals angular resolution of telescope: Just barely possible to tell that there are two sources

(b)

Figure 6-15 R I V U X G

Angular Resolution The angular resolution of a telescope indicates the sharpness of the telescope's images. **(a)** This telescope view shows two sources of light whose angular separation is greater than the angular resolution. **(b)** The light sources have been moved together so that their angular separation is equal to the angular resolution. If the sources were moved any closer together, the telescope image would show them as a single source.

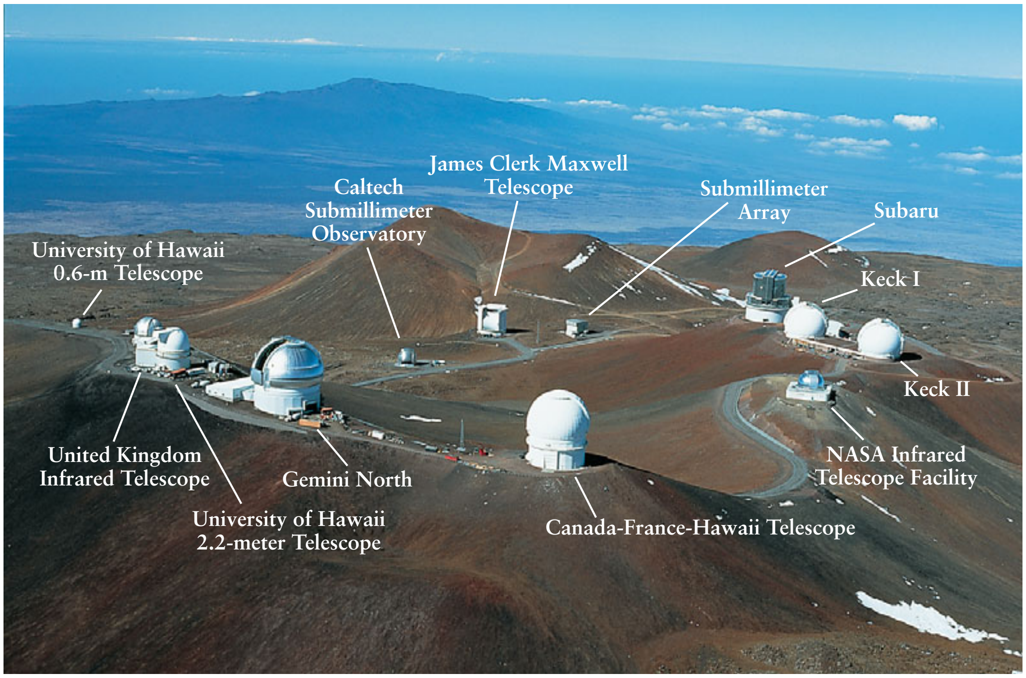
λ = wavelength of light, in meters

D = diameter of telescope objective, in meters

For a given wavelength of light, using a telescope with an objective of *larger* diameter *D reduces* the amount of diffraction and makes the angular resolution θ *smaller* (and hence better). For example, with red light with wavelength 640 nm, or 6.4×10^{-7} m, the diffraction-limited resolution of an 8-meter telescope (see Figure 6-15) would be

$$\theta = (2.5 \times 10^5)\,\frac{6.4 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m}}{8\ \text{m}} = 0.02\ \text{arcsec}$$

In practice, however, ordinary optical telescopes cannot achieve such fine angular resolution. The problem is that turbulence in the air causes star images to jiggle around and twinkle. Even through the largest telescopes, a star still looks like a tiny blob rather than a pinpoint of light. A measure of the limit that atmospheric turbulence places on a telescope's resolution is called the **seeing disk.** This disk is the angular diameter of a star's image broadened by turbulence. The size of the seeing disk varies



WEB LINK 6.3

Figure 6-16 R I V U X G

The Telescopes of Mauna Kea The summit of Mauna Kea—an extinct Hawaiian volcano that reaches more than 4100 m (13,400 ft) above the waters of the Pacific—has nighttime skies that are unusually clear, still, and dark. To take advantage of these superb viewing conditions, Mauna Kea has become the home of many powerful telescopes. (Richard J. Wainscoat, University of Hawaii)

from one observatory site to another and from one night to another. At the observatories on Kitt Peak in Arizona and Cerro Tololo in Chile, the seeing disk is typically around 1 arcsec. Some of the very best conditions in the world can be found at the observatories atop Mauna Kea in Hawaii, where the seeing disk is often as small as 0.5 arcsec. This is one reason why so many telescopes have been built there (Figure 6-16).

Active Optics and Adaptive Optics

In many cases the angular resolution of a telescope is even worse than the limit imposed by the seeing disk. This occurs if the objective mirror deforms even slightly due to variations in air temperature or flexing of the telescope mount. To combat this, many large telescopes are equipped with an **active optics** system. Such a system adjusts the mirror shape every few seconds to help keep the telescope in optimum focus and properly aimed at its target.

Changing the mirror shape is also at the heart of a more refined technique called **adaptive optics.** The goal of this technique is to compensate for atmospheric turbulence, so that the angular resolution can be smaller than the size of the seeing disk and can even approach the theoretical limit set by diffraction. Turbulence causes the image of a star to "dance" around erratically. In an adaptive optics system, sensors monitor this dancing motion 10 to 100 times per second, and a powerful computer rapidly calculates the mirror shape needed to compensate. Fast-acting mechanical devices called *actuators* then deform the mirror accordingly, at a much faster rate than in an active optics system. In some adaptive optics systems, the actuators deform a small secondary mirror rather than the large objective mirror.

One difficulty with adaptive optics is that a fairly bright star must be in or near the field of the telescope's view to serve as a "target" for the sensors that track atmospheric turbulence. This is seldom the case, since the field of view of most telescopes is rather narrow. Astronomers get around this limitation by shining a laser beam toward a spot in the sky near the object to be observed (Figure 6-17). The laser beam causes atoms in the upper atmosphere to glow, making an artificial "star." The light that comes down to Earth from this "star" travels through the same part of our atmosphere as the light from the object being observed, so its image in the telescope will "dance" around in the same erratic way as the image of a real star.

Figure 6-18 shows the dramatic improvement in angular resolution possible with adaptive optics. Images made with adaptive optics are nearly as sharp as if the telescope were in the vacuum of space, where there is no atmospheric distortion whatsoever and the only limit on angular resolution is diffraction. A number of large telescopes are now being used with adaptive optics systems.

CAUTION! The images in Figure 6-18 are **false color** images: They do not represent the true color of the stars shown. False color is often used when the image is made using wavelengths that the eye cannot detect, as with the infrared images in Figure 6-18. A different use of false color is to indicate the relative brightness of different parts of the image, as in the infrared image of a person in Figure 5-10. Throughout this book, we'll always point out when false color is used in an image.

Interferometry

Several large observatories are developing a technique called **interferometry** that promises to further improve the angular resolution of telescopes. The idea is to have two widely separated telescopes observe the same object simultaneously, then use fiber optic cables to "pipe" the light signals from each telescope to a central location where they "interfere" or blend together. This makes the combined signal sharp and clear. The effective resolution of such a combination of telescopes is equivalent to that of one giant telescope with a diameter equal to the **baseline,** or distance between the two telescopes. For example, the Keck I and

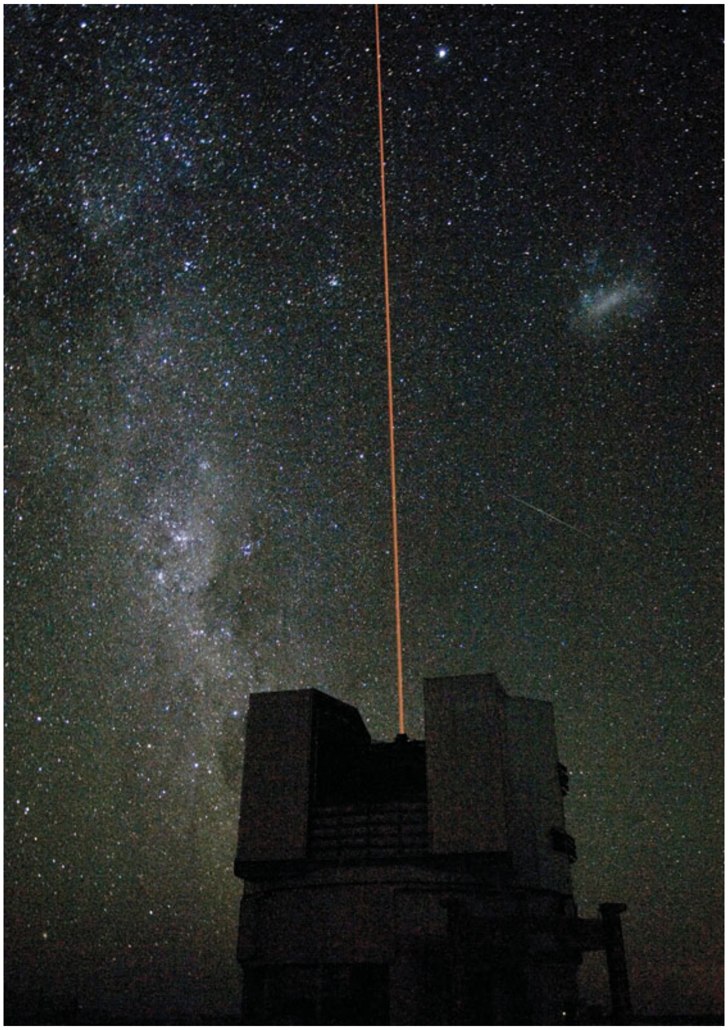


Figure 6-17 R I V U X G

Creating an Artificial "Star" A laser beam shines upward from Yepun, an 8.2-meter telescope at the European Southern Observatory in the Atacama Desert of Chile. (Figure 6-14*a* shows the objective mirror for this telescope.) The beam strikes sodium atoms that lie about 90 km (56 miles) above the Earth's surface, causing them to glow and make an artificial "star." Tracking the twinkling of this "star" makes it possible to undo the effects of atmospheric turbulence on telescope images. (European Southern Observatory)

Keck II telescopes atop Mauna Kea (Figure 6-16) are 85 meters apart, so when used as an interferometer the angular resolution is the same as a single 85-meter telescope.

Interferometry has been used for many years with radio telescopes (which we will discuss in Section 6-6), but is still under development with telescopes for visible light or infrared wavelengths. Astronomers are devoting a great deal of effort to this development because the potential rewards are great. For example, the Keck I and II telescopes used together should give an angular resolution as small as 0.005 arcsec, which corresponds to being able to read the bottom row on an eye chart 36 km (22 miles) away!

Light Pollution

WEB LINK 6.4

Light from city street lamps and from buildings also degrades telescope images. This **light pollution** illuminates the sky, making it more difficult to see the stars. You can appreciate the problem if you have ever looked at the night sky from a major city. Only a few of the very brightest stars can be seen, as against the thousands that can be seen with the naked eye in the desert or the mountains. To avoid light pollution, observatories are built in remote locations far from any city lights.

Unfortunately, the expansion of cities has brought light pollution to observatories that in former times had none. As an example, the growth of Tucson, Arizona, has had deleterious effects on observations at the nearby Kitt Peak National Observatory. Efforts have been made to have cities adopt light fixtures that provide safe illumination for their citizens but produce little light pollution. These efforts have met with only mixed success.

One factor over which astronomers have absolutely no control is the weather. Optical telescopes cannot see through clouds, so it is important to build observatories where the weather is usually good. One advantage of mountaintop observatories such as Mauna Kea is that most clouds form at altitudes below the observatory, giving astronomers a better chance of having clear skies.

In many ways the best location for a telescope is in orbit around Earth, where it is unaffected by weather, light pollution, or atmospheric turbulence. We will discuss orbiting telescopes in Section 6-7.

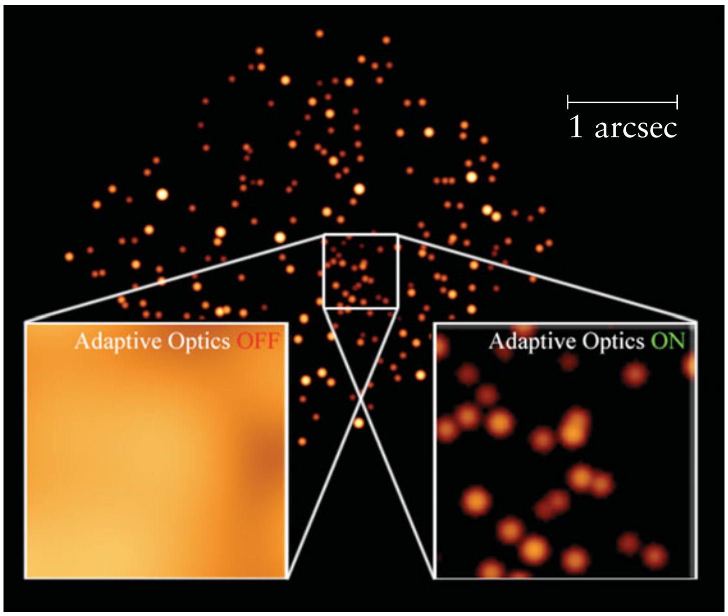


Figure 6-18 R I V U X G

Using Adaptive Optics to "Unblur" Telescope Images The two false-color, inset images show the same 1-arcsecond-wide region of the sky at infrared wavelengths as observed with the 10.0-m Keck II telescope on Mauna Kea (see Figure 6-16). Without adaptive optics, it is impossible to distinguish individual stars in this region. With adaptive optics turned on, more than two dozen stars can be distinguished. (UCLA Galactic Center Group)

6-4 A charge-coupled device is commonly used to record the image at a telescope's focus

Telescopes provide astronomers with detailed pictures of distant objects. The task of recording these pictures is called **imaging.**

Astronomical imaging really began in the nineteenth century with the invention of photography. It was soon realized that this new invention was a boon to astronomy. By taking long exposures with a camera mounted at the focus of a telescope, an astronomer can record features too faint to be seen by simply looking through the telescope. Such long exposures can reveal details in galaxies, star clusters, and nebulae that would not be visible to an astronomer looking through a telescope. Indeed, most large, modern telescopes do not have eyepieces at all.

The same technology that makes digital cameras possible has revolutionized astronomy

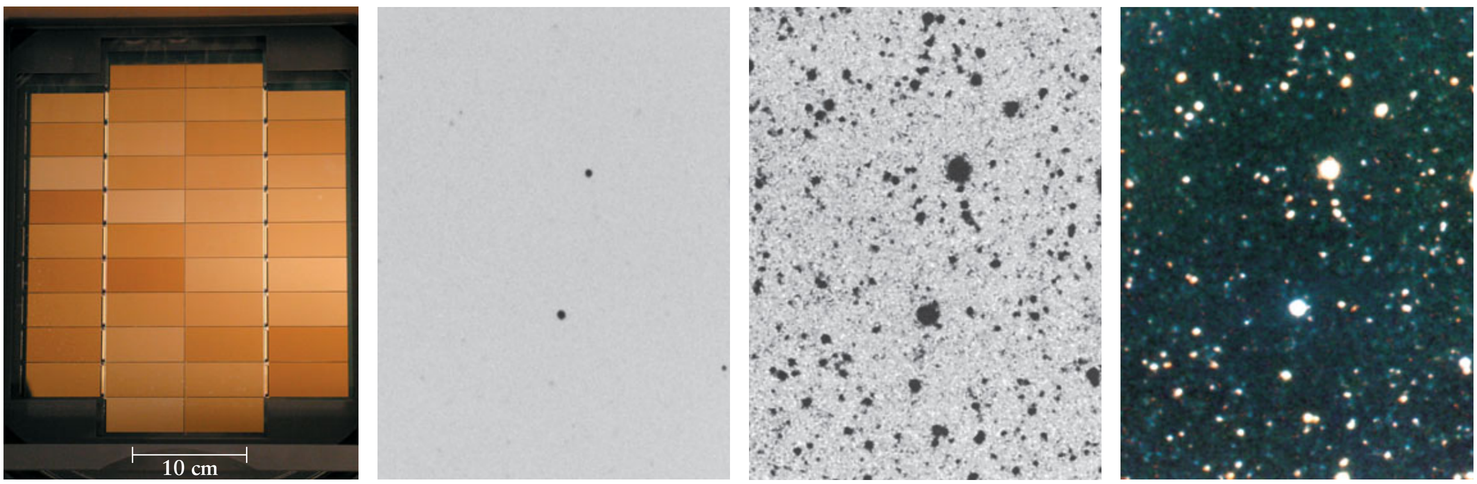
Unfortunately, photographic film is not a very efficient light detector. Only about 1 out of every 50 photons striking photographic film triggers the chemical reaction needed to produce an image. Thus, roughly 98% of the light falling onto photographic film is wasted.

Charge-Coupled Devices

The most sensitive light detector currently available to astronomers is the **charge-coupled device (CCD).** At the heart of a CCD is a semiconductor wafer divided into an array of small light-sensitive squares called picture elements or, more commonly, **pixels** (Figure 6-19*a*). For example, each of the 40 CCDs shown in Figure 6-19*a* has more than 9.4 million pixels arranged in 2048 rows by 4608 columns. They have about a thousand times more pixels per square centimeter than on a typical computer screen, which means that a CCD of this type can record very fine image details. CCDs with smaller numbers of pixels are used in digital cameras, scanners, and fax machines.

When an image from a telescope is focused on the CCD, an electric charge builds up in each pixel in proportion to the number of photons falling on that pixel. When the exposure is finished, the amount of charge on each pixel is read into a computer, where the resulting image can be stored in digital form and either viewed on a monitor or printed out. Compared with photographic film, CCDs are some 35 times more sensitive to light (they commonly respond to 70% of the light falling on them, versus 2% for film), can record much finer details, and respond more uniformly to light of different colors. Figures 6-19*b*, 6-19*c*, and 6-19*d* show the dramatic difference between photographic and CCD images. The great sensitivity of CCDs also makes them useful for **photometry,** which is the measurement of the brightnesses of stars and other astronomical objects.

In the modern world of CCD astronomy, astronomers need no longer spend the night in the unheated dome of a telescope. Instead, they operate the telescope electronically from a separate control room, where the electronic CCD images can be viewed on a computer monitor. The control room need not even be adjacent



(a) A mosaic of 40 charge-coupled devices (CCDs) (b) An image made with photographic film (c) An image of the same region of the sky made with a CCD (d) Combining several CCD images made with different color filters

WEB LINK 6.5

Figure 6-19 R I V U X G

Charge-Coupled Devices (CCDs) and Imaging (a) The 40 CCDs in this mosaic are used to record the light gathered by the Canada-France-Hawaii Telescope (see Figure 6-16). After an exposure, data from each of the 377 million light-sensitive pixels in the mosaic is transferred to a waiting computer. **(b)** This negative print (black stars and white sky) shows a portion of the sky as imaged with a 4-meter telescope and photographic film. **(c)** This negative image of the same region of the sky was made with the same telescope, but with the photographic film replaced by a CCD. Many more stars and galaxies are visible. **(d)** To produce this color positive view of the same region, a series of CCD images were made using different color filters. These were then combined using a computer image-processing program.

(a: J. C. Cullandre/Canada-France-Hawaii Telescope; b, c, d: Patrick Seitzer, National Optical Astronomy Observatories) to the telescope. Although the Keck I and II telescopes (see Figure 6-16) are at an altitude of 4100 m (13,500 feet), astronomers can now make observations from a facility elsewhere on the island of Hawaii that is much closer to sea level. This saves the laborious drive to the summit of Mauna Kea and eliminates the need for astronomers to acclimate to the high altitude.

Most of the images that you will see in this book were made with CCDs. Because of their extraordinary sensitivity and their ability to be used in conjunction with computers, CCDs have attained a role of central importance in astronomy.

6-5 Spectrographs record the spectra of astronomical objects

We saw in Section 5-6 how the spectrum of an astronomical object provides a tremendous amount of information about that object, including its chemical composition and temperature. This is why measuring spectra, or **spectroscopy,** is one of the most important uses of telescopes. Indeed, some telescopes are designed solely for measuring the spectra of distant, faint objects; they are never used for imaging.

The spectrum of a planet, star, or galaxy can reveal more about its nature than an image

Spectrographs and Diffraction Gratings

An essential tool of spectroscopy is the **spectrograph,** a device that records spectra. This optical device is mounted at the focus of a telescope. Figure 6-20*a* shows one design for a spectrograph, in which a **diffraction grating** is used to form the spectrum of a planet, star, or galaxy. This is a piece of glass on which thousands of very regularly spaced parallel lines have been cut. Some of the finest diffraction gratings have more than 10,000 lines per centimeter, which are usually cut by drawing a diamond back and forth across the glass. When light is shone on a diffraction grating, a spectrum is produced by the way in which light waves leaving different parts of the grating interfere with each other. (This same effect produces the rainbow of colors you see reflected from a compact disc or DVD, as shown in Figure 6-20*b*. Information is stored on the disc in a series of closely spaced pits, which act as a diffraction grating.)

Older types of spectrographs used a prism rather than a diffraction grating to form a spectrum. This had several drawbacks. A prism does not disperse the colors of the rainbow evenly: Blue and violet portions of the spectrum are spread out more than the red portion. In addition, because the blue and violet wavelengths must pass through more of the prism's glass than do the red wavelengths (examine Figure 5-3), light is absorbed unevenly across the spectrum. Indeed, a glass prism is opaque to near-ultraviolet light. For these reasons, diffraction gratings are preferred in modern spectrographs.

In Figure 6-20*a* the spectrum of a planet, star, or galaxy formed by the diffraction grating is recorded on a CCD. Light from a hot gas (such as helium, neon, argon, iron, or a combination of these) is then focused on the spectrograph slit. The result is a *comparison spectrum* alongside the spectrum of the celestial object under study. The wavelengths of the bright spectral lines

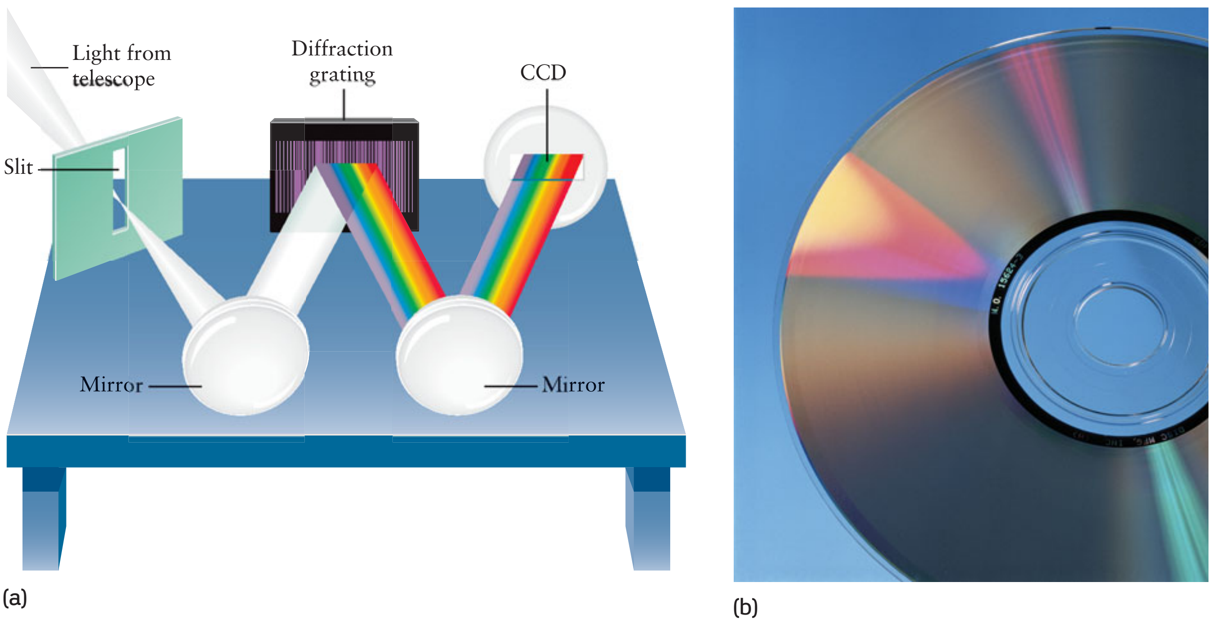
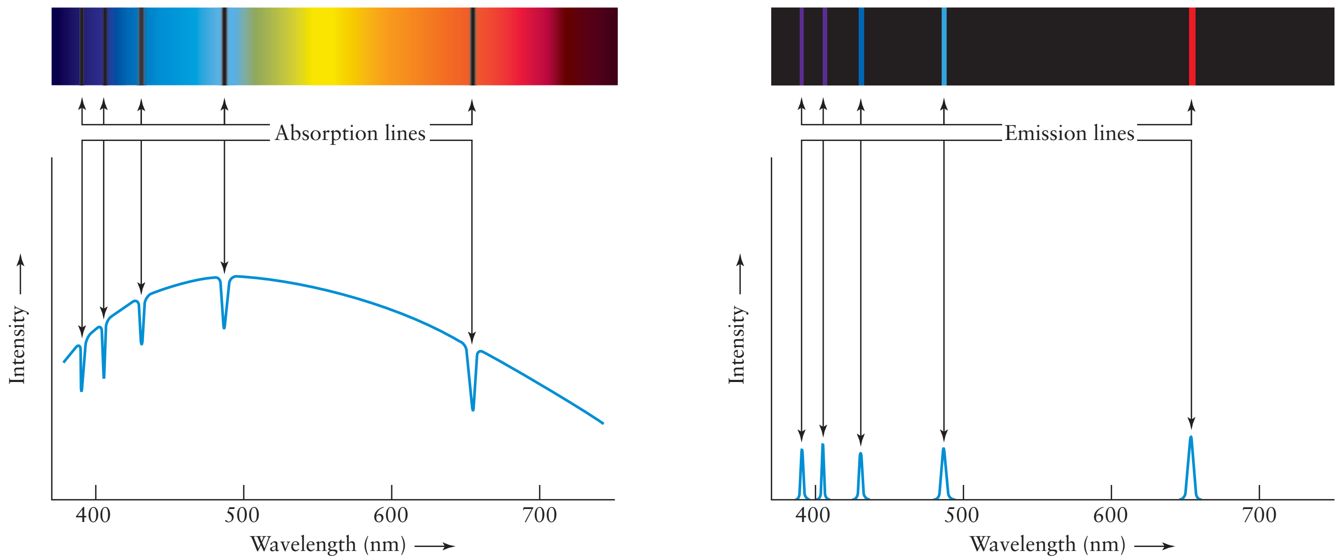


Figure 6-20 R I V U X G

A Grating Spectrograph **(a)** This optical device uses a diffraction grating to break up the light from a source into a spectrum. The spectrum is then recorded on a CCD. **(b)** A diffraction grating has a large number of parallel lines in its surface that reflect light of different colors in different direction. A compact disc, which stores information in a series of closely spaced pits, reflects light in a similar way. (Dale E. Boyer/Photo Researchers)



(a) Two representations of an absorption line spectrum

(b) Two representations of an emission line spectrum

Figure 6-21

Two Ways to Represent Spectra When a CCD is placed at the focus of a spectrograph, it records the rainbow-colored spectrum. A computer program can be used to convert the recorded data into a graph of intensity versus wavelength. **(a)** Absorption lines appear as dips on such a graph, while **(b)** emission lines appear as peaks. The dark absorption lines and bright emission lines in this example are the Balmer lines of hydrogen (see Section 5-8).

of the comparison spectrum are known from laboratory experiments and can therefore serve as reference markers. (See Figure 5-17, which shows the spectrum of the Sun and a comparison spectrum of iron.)

When the exposure is finished, electronic equipment measures the charge that has accumulated in each pixel. These data are used to graph light intensity against wavelength. Dark absorption lines in the spectrum appear as depressions or valleys on the graph, while bright emission lines appear as peaks. Figure 6-21 compares two ways of exhibiting spectra with absorption lines and emission lines. Later in this book we shall see spectra presented in both these ways.

6-6 A radio telescope uses a large concave dish to reflect radio waves to a focus

For thousands of years, all the information that astronomers gathered about the universe was based on ordinary visible light. In the twentieth century, however, astronomers first began to explore the nonvisible electromagnetic radiation coming from astronomical objects. In this way they have discovered aspects of the cosmos that are forever hidden to optical telescopes.

Observing at radio wavelengths reveals aspects of the universe hidden from ordinary telescopes

Astronomers have used ultraviolet light to map the outer regions of the Sun and the clouds of Venus, and used infrared radiation to see new stars and perhaps new planetary systems in the process of formation. By detecting radio waves from Jupiter and Saturn, they have mapped the intense magnetic fields that surround those giant planets; by detecting curious bursts of X rays from space, they have learned about the utterly alien conditions in the vicinity of a black hole. It is no exaggeration to say that today's astronomers learn as much about the universe using telescopes for nonvisible wavelengths as they do using visible light.

Radio Astronomy

Radio waves were the first part of the electromagnetic spectrum beyond the visible to be exploited for astronomy. This happened as a result of a research project seemingly unrelated to astronomy. In the early 1930s, Karl Jansky, a young electrical engineer at Bell Telephone Laboratories, was trying to locate what was causing interference with the then-new transatlantic radio link. By 1932, he realized that one kind of radio noise is strongest when the constellation Sagittarius is high in the sky. The center of our Galaxy is located in the direction of Sagittarius, and Jansky concluded that he was detecting radio waves from an astronomical source.

At first only Grote Reber, a radio engineer living in Illinois, took up Jansky's research. In 1936 Reber built in his backyard the first **radio telescope,** a radio-wave detector dedicated to astronomy. He modeled his design after an ordinary reflecting telescope, with a parabolic metal "dish" (reflecting antenna) measuring 31 ft (10 m) in diameter and a radio receiver at the focal point of the dish.

Reber spent the years from 1938 to 1944 mapping radio emissions from the sky at wavelengths of 1.9 m and 0.63 m. He found radio waves coming from the entire Milky Way, with the greatest